

**MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN**

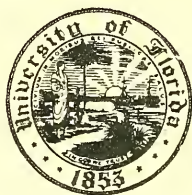
**A GRAMMAR AND READER**

---

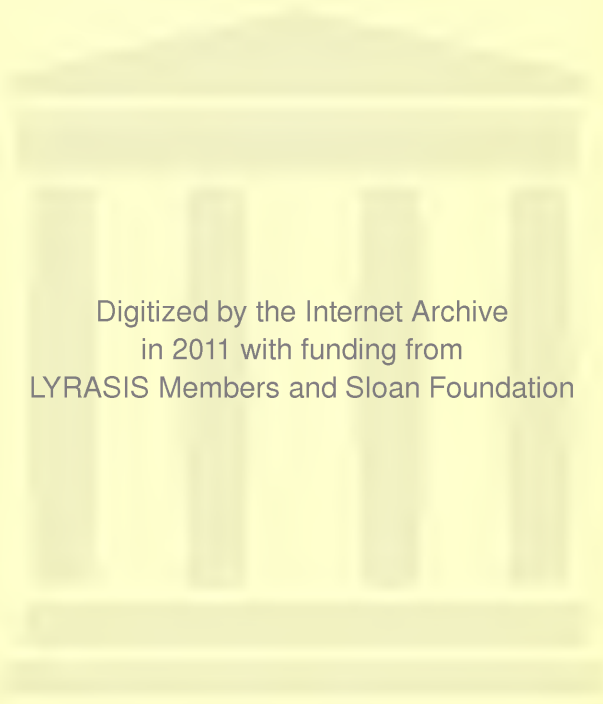
**ALFRED SENN**

---

UNIVERSITY  
OF FLORIDA  
LIBRARIES







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2011 with funding from  
LYRASIS Members and Sloan Foundation



AN INTRODUCTION TO  
MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN

# GATEWAY BOOKS

GENERAL EDITORS

ERNST FEISE

*The Johns Hopkins University*

*and*

*The Middlebury College School of German*

ROBERT O. RÖSELER

*The University of Wisconsin*

*and*

*The Middlebury College School of German*

AN INTRODUCTION TO  
MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN

A READER AND GRAMMAR

*By*

ALFRED SENN

*The University of Wisconsin*

---

*New York* W. W. NORTON & CO., INC., *Publishers*

437.02

S 4782

Copyright, 1937, by  
W. W. NORTON & COMPANY, INC.  
70 Fifth Ave., New York

*First Edition*

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

## PREFACE

---

*„Auf die ‚Intuition‘ sollte sich nur berufen,  
wer sich die Mühe genommen hat, etwas zu lernen.“  
G. Ehrismann, Geschichte der deutschen Literatur bis  
zum Ausgang des Mittelalters. 2, II, 1 p. X.*

THIS publication differs in various points from the traditional Middle High German textbook:

1) The whole presentation centers around the texts, and a minimum amount of grammar is given for the interpretation and understanding of the texts. Full understanding of the text will prove essential for literary appreciation and for philological studies.

2) In the introductory part the material is presented in lesson form, making it possible to create study units. The lessons sometimes seem to be rather long. However, many of the given grammatical items are, at least for the beginning, only of secondary importance. If they occur again later, there are footnotes with the necessary references. Thus, it should be possible to master one lesson in one class period, since the book is especially planned to help students prepare their lessons at home.

3) The book is written in English (and not in German) for at least two good reasons. The student is no longer obliged to use for his preparation two dictionaries (a Middle High German-Modern German and a German-English one) and thus has direct access to the riches of medieval German culture. The main purpose, however, was to avoid the numerous snares inherent in translating Middle High German into modern Ger-

man where too easily German words of similar phonetic structure are also taken for the semantic equivalents of the Middle High German expression. The text should always be first translated into English and then, after the meaning of a passage has been established, a translation into modern German may be attempted. The student must bear in mind that there are no words that might be called "meaningless".

4) The author has tried hard to establish the correct meaning of the words. The list at the end of the book covers the whole vocabulary of the "Selected Readings" with all the shades of meaning as they occur in this text. References enable the user to verify the given definitions, especially where (as in numerous cases) an entirely new interpretation is proposed. This part of the book is to be regarded as a basis for further studies in semasiology.

Great care was taken in establishing a good text. In the introductory part and in the *Nibelungenlied* and *Kudrun* the prevailing attitude was not to depart from the oldest or best manuscript, while the lyric parts of the "Selected Readings" were treated in such a way as to serve as an introduction into Middle High German versification. Thus, in the first part the author was guided exclusively by a grammatical interest, supplemented in the second part by a literary interest. The perfection of philology is reached when the two are harmoniously co-ordinated.

Many a user would probably like to have the grammatical paradigms gathered in one separate chapter. This would increase the size of the book considerably. However, a fairly complete index is added as a substitute.

This book should serve not only as an introduction into medieval German but also as an introduction into the history of the German language. It provides the student who is already familiar with modern German with the knowledge of an older form of that language and prepares him for the study of historical and comparative grammar. The sections dealing with

historical grammar had of necessity to be brief, since we already have the excellent book of E. Prokosch, *An Outline of German Historical Grammar* (New York, Oxford University Press, 1933). The two publications should be regarded as supplementing each other.

Some of the grammatical rules were taken from various standard works of Germanic philology, with due references made occasionally.

This book was written at Prof. R. O. Roeseler's instigation. The author is deeply indebted to Mrs. Maude Hausmann Brewster, Prof. W. F. Twaddell, and Mr. Palmer A. Hilty for their generous assistance. Also to Prof. Ernst Feise he owes a word of thanks for fruitful suggestions.

ALFRED SENN

MADISON, WISCONSIN

August, 1937





# CONTENTS

---

## GRAMMAR

	PAGE
LESSON I . . . . .	3
LESSON II. . . . .	10
LESSON III . . . . .	17
LESSON IV . . . . .	22
LESSON V. . . . .	27
LESSON VI . . . . .	34
LESSON VII. . . . .	44
LESSON VIII . . . . .	53
LESSON IX . . . . .	62
LESSON X. . . . .	72
LESSON XI . . . . .	77
LESSON XII. . . . .	84
LESSON XIII . . . . .	91
LESSON XIV . . . . .	98
LESSON XV . . . . .	107
ADDITIONAL GRAMMATICAL MATERIAL REFERRED TO IN THE <i>Selected Readings</i> . . . . .	113
VOWEL CHANGES OF THE STRONG VERBS . . . . .	119

## SELECTED READINGS

I. NIBELUNGENLIED . . . . .	121
II. KUDRUN . . . . .	212
III. DER VON KÜRENBERG . . . . .	244
IV. DIETMAR VON EIST . . . . .	246

	PAGE
V. HEINRICH VON VELDEKE . . . . .	249
VI. REINMAR DER ALTE. . . . .	251
VII. HARTMANN VON AUE . . . . .	259
VIII. WALTHER VON DER VOGELWEIDE . . . . .	266
IX. NEIDHART VON REUMENTAL . . . . .	292
X. ANONYMOUS SONGS . . . . .	295
XI. <i>From</i> SALOMON UND MARKOLF . . . . .	302

## APPENDICES

I. BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES ON MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN AUTHORS. . . . .	307
II. MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN VERSIFICATION . . . . .	308
VOCABULARY . . . . .	317
INDEX . . . . .	373

An Introduction to  
**MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN**



# LESSON I.

---

1. Medieval manuscripts show a rather irregular and often inexact way of spelling MHG words. But modern philologists, basing their conclusions on the etymology of the words and on observations of MHG rhymes, have normalized the spelling in many ways in order to make it conform to the pronunciation. Thus, in MHG there are short and long vowels. But this difference is, as a rule, not indicated in the manuscripts. We, however, mark the vowels *a, e, i, o, u* with a circumflex sign (*â, ê, î, ô, û*) to indicate that they are long. In contrast with the medieval practice we also distinguish between the short vowels *ä, ö, ü* and the corresponding long vowels *æ, œ, iu*. For other peculiarities of MHG spelling see Paul-Gierach, *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik* (1929), pp. 8-14 and Michels, *Mittelhochdeutsches Elementarbuch* (1921), pp. 41-51 and 102-116.

In recent years a growing opposition against normalized texts has arisen among scholars. This criticism is justified at least as far as so-called "critical editions" are concerned. But a beginner's book should not fail to take advantage of so valuable a guide as normalized spelling. Every student of medieval paleography knows that, e.g., the different forms of the letters *s* and *r* are due merely to calligraphic predilections of the scribes. Much more important than a normalization of spelling is the "normalization" of the grammatical forms.

## 2. Vowels:

Short vowels	<i>a e i o u ä ö ü</i>
Long vowels	<i>â ê î ô û æ œ iu</i>
Diphthongs	<i>ei ou öu (eu, öi); ie uo iie</i>

In general the vowel signs have the same phonetic value as in modern German. In particular the student should bear the following points in mind:

a) When reading, observe strictly the distinction between short and long vowels. The quantity of the vowels in MHG words is not necessarily the same as in the same words in modern German.

b) *e* is either close or open. Some scholars indicate the open pronunciation by the sign *ē* and the close one by an unmarked *e*. Others use the sign *ě* for the close quality and the unmarked *e* for the open sound. The close *e* generally originated from a Primitive Germanic (concerning this term see §13) *a* through *i*-umlaut, while the open *e* represents a Primitive Germanic *e*, which in turn came either from Indo-European *e* or (before *a* of the following syllable) *i*. An even more open *e*-sound (similar to *a* in Eng. *man*) is written either *e* or *ä*. It too came from *a* through *i*-umlaut, but at a later time. The phonetic value of MHG *e* differed very much in the various regions. It can be recognized in the rhymes and to a certain degree by comparison with modern dialects.

c) *ê* is usually a close vowel. *æ* is a long *ä*, *æ* a long *ö*, *iu* a long *ii*.

d) Of the diphthongs both components must be spoken, but in such a way as to put the main stress on the first sound. The vowel *e* in *ei* is close (*ěi*); *ou* is *o-u*, not *a-u*. The pronunciation *ěi* and *ou* has survived up to the present around Bern (Switzerland), i.e., at the far south-west corner of the German speaking territory. The pronunciation *ai* and *au*, however, existed already in MHG in the Bavarian dialect and in the Alemannic territory around the Bodensee. The diphthongs *ie*, *uo*, *üe* still survive in the whole modern Alemannic territory (mainly Switzerland and Alsace). *ie* is a real diphthong (*i-e*). Its second component (*e*) is not merely a lengthening sign as in modern German.

e) Instead of the digraph *ou* we often find *eu* and sometimes *öi*.

f) The combinations *ouw*, *öuw*, *euw*, *iuw* often appear as *ow*, *öw*, *ew*, *iw*; e.g.: *triwen* = *triuwen*.

g) The vowels *i* and *u* are often expressed by the letters *j* and *v* respectively.

### 3. Consonants:

a) *k c q, t, p, g, d, b, ch, f, h, s, sch, z (z), j, v, w, m, n, r, l*. They have essentially the same value as in modern German.

b) *k* and *c* denote the same sound, namely *k*: *k* appears at the beginning of syllables, *c* at the end. In gemination we find *ck*, e.g.: *sac-kes*, *wec-ken*. Instead of *kw* the spelling *qu* is used.

c) *ch* has the *ach*-sound in all positions.

d) *h* represents two different sounds: 1) Modern German *h* at the beginning of a syllable, e.g.: *herzen*, *nâhe*. 2) Modern German *ch* in final position (in this position, however, the spelling *ch* is more common; cf. below §4 b) and in the combinations *ht*, *hs*; e.g.: *ih* and *ich*, *doh* and *doch*; *naht*, *niht*. In no case is the letter *h* used merely to denote the length of the preceding vowel as in modern German.

e) *f* and *v* in modern German designate the same sound (compare *voll* and *füllen*). In early MHG, however, *f* (voiceless) was used for a somewhat stronger sound than *v* (voiced). In initial position, however, both signs were used indifferently: *vrouwe* and *frouwe*. Originally, *v* was confined to words which had had an *f* (from IE *p*) in Primitive Germanic (G. *Fuß*: Eng. *foot*; G. *Vater*: Eng. *father*) and *f* to those, where the labial spirant was a German innovation caused by the shift of Germanic (English) *p* to OHG *f* or *ff* (G. *schaffen*: Eng. *shape*). The consonant *v* is often represented by the symbol *u*.

f) Both *pf* and *ph* stand for the same sound, namely modern German *pf*; e.g.: *phliget* = *pfliget*.

g) The symbol *s* (as in *des, solt, gewis, sîn*) represents both voiced and voiceless sounds under the same positional circumstances as in modern German. But the MHG *s* represented a sound similar to Eng. *zh* (as in *pleasure*) or *sh*. *sl, sm, sn, sp, st, sw* (as in *beslozzzen, slüzzzelîn, smal, snel, spalten; bist, ist, muost*) sounded like *shl, shm, shn, shp, sht, shw* and appear in modern German as *schl, schm, schn, schp* (written *sp*), *scht* (written *st*), *schw* in initial position. In medial or final position *st, sp* is now pronounced as *s-t, s-p* in literary German (*Kiste, Haspel; bist, ist, muß, Wurst*) while the southern (e.g., Swiss, Alsatian, Swabian) dialects still preserve the medieval pronunciation. MHG *-rs-* appears as *-rsch-* in modern German; e.g.: MHG *bars, birsen, burse, kirse, (zer)knürsen, kürsenære, hêrsen* = G. *Barsch, pirschen, Bursche, Kirsche, knirschen, Kürschner, herrschen*. In all other positions MHG *s* became modern German *s* in the second half of the 13th century.

h) MHG *sch* is identical with modern German *sch*. But very often we find it spelled *sc* or *sk*.

i) Medieval *z* represents two phonetic values: 1) the combined sound *ts* (like German *z*): *herzen*; 2) a voiceless *s*, like German *ss* or *ß*: *daz, beslozzzen, slüzzzelîn*. In agreement with general grammatical practice, we use the sign *z* to indicate the voiceless *ß*-sound and the regular *z* (or *tz*, if doubled) for the affricate. In later manuscripts the *ß*-sound is already expressed in the modern German way, namely, by *-ss-* or *-s*.

#### 4. Interchange of voiced and voiceless consonants.

a) The stops *b, d, g* appearing in medial position change to *p, t, c*, if in the inflection they come at the end of a syllable: *stoubes:stoup; nîdes:nît; tages:tac; neigen:neic-te*.

b) A corresponding interchange occurs also between medial *v* and *h* and final *f* and *ch* respectively: *zwelve:zwelf; hôher:hôch*.



c) This regular interchange was very often neglected by scribes of the post-classic period, but may easily be reconstructed by means of comparison. Furthermore, even during the classical period a voiced consonant in final position remained unchanged if immediately followed (i.e., not separated by a rest) by a voiced consonant, a nasal or a vowel. Interchange between medial *d* and final *t* was most strictly observed, even in later manuscripts.

#### 5. Simplification of double consonants.

a) Double consonants are simplified at the end of a syllable: *gewis*:genitive *gewisses*; *man*:*mannes*; *val*:*valles*; *stam*:*stammes*; *bran-te*:*brennen*; *stal-te*:*stellen*.

*tz, ck* are simplified to *z, c*: *blic*:*blickes*; *saz*:*satzes*; *saz-te*:*setzen*.

b) *-ll-* is often simplified to *-l-* in diminutive words like *slüzzelîn* < *slüzzel-lîn*.

#### 6. Accentuation.

a) MHG has essentially the same accent-system as modern German. In uncompounded words the chief stress falls upon the first syllable: *mînem*, *herzen*, *slüzzelîn*. In compound words whose second element is a noun or an adjective, the root-syllable of the first element has the main stress: *herzen-lîche*, *Kriem-hilt*. In compound verbs (and nouns and adjectives derived from them) the second element has the chief accent: *be-hüeten*, *ver-sprechen*; *ge-wis*, *be-slozzen*, *ver-lorn*.

b) Dissyllabic words, in addition to their chief accent, may also have a weaker stress (secondary accent) on the second syllable. A secondary stress is always to be found in trisyllabic and polysyllabic words, especially in nominal compounds. The position of this secondary accent fluctuates to a certain extent. A secondary stress usually falls on the suffixes *-ære*, *-unge*, *-nisse*, *-sal*, *-inne*, *-în*, *-lîn* (e.g., *slüzzelîn*), and if there is a combination of two derivative suffixes, the later syllable gets a stronger

secondary accent than the preceding one. Thus, the words *senedære* and *senedærinne* both have their main stress on the syllable *se-*. Furthermore, *senedære* has a secondary stress on *-dæ-*, while *senedærinne* has two secondary accents, a stronger one on *-inn-* and a weaker one on *-dæ-*.

c) In verse both the syllables with the main accent and those with a secondary accent may receive the metrical stress.

### 7. Capital letters.

Only proper names and the first word of a stanza or paragraph are capitalized.

### 8. Read and memorize:

a) <i>Du bist mîn, ich bin dîn:</i>	˘×˘   ˘×˘
<i>des solt du gewis sîn.</i>	˘×˘×˘   ˘
<i>du bist beslozzen</i>	×˘×˘×
<i>in mînem herzen.</i>	×˘×˘×
<i>verlor^n ist daz slûzzelîn:</i>	×˘   ˘×˘×˘
<i>du muost och immer dar inne sîn.</i>	×˘×˘××˘×˘

This is an anonymous poem. Cf. Vogt, *Des Minnesangs Frühling*. 5. Aufl. (1930) 3, 1-6 and p. 259-263.

#### Modern German translation:

“Du bist mein, ich bin dein:  
Dessen sollst du gewiß sein.  
Du bist eingeschlossen  
in meinem Herzen.  
Verloren ist das Schlüsselein:  
So mußt du halt immer da drinnen sein.”

b) <i>Tougen minne diu ist guot.</i>	˘×˘×˘×˘
<i>si kan geben hôhen muot.</i>	˘×˘×˘×˘
<i>der sol man sich vlîzen.</i>	˘×˘×˘×
<i>swer mit trîwen der niht phliget,</i>	˘×˘×˘×˘×
<i>dem sol man daz wîzen.</i>	˘×˘×˘×

This is also an anonymous poem. Cf. Vogt, *ibid.* 3, 12-16 and p. 263.

Modern German translation:

“Heimliche Liebe, die ist gut.  
Sie kann einen veredeln.  
Nach ihr soll man eifrig streben.  
Jedem, der es mit ihr nicht aufrichtig meint,  
soll man das als schwere Schuld anrechnen.”

## LESSON II.

---

9. a) *Nieman kan mit gerten  
kundes zuht beherten:  
den man zêren bringen mac,  
dem ist ein wort als ein slac.  
dem ist ein wort als ein slac,  
den man zêren bringen mac:  
kundes zuht beherten  
nieman kan mit gerten.*
- b) *Hüetet irwer zungen:  
daz zimt wol den jungen.  
stôz den rigel für die tür.  
lâ kein bæse wort dar für.  
lâ kein bæse wort dar für.  
stôz den rigel für die tür.  
daz zimt wol den jungen.  
hüetet irwer zungen.*

(Continued in §17 A)

The text of this so-called *palindrome* as given here is identical with the one given by Wilmanns-Michels, *Walther von der Vogelweide*. 4. Aufl. II (1924), pp. 318-320. In the medieval manuscript (*Die große Heidelberger Liederhandschrift. In getreuem Textabdruck herausgegeben von Fridrich Pfaff. 1909*), however, there are a few quite different forms due to the Alemannic copyist, as the manuscript was written in Zürich. Instead of *mac, slac* we find there *mag, slag*. The imperatives *hüetet* and *lât* appear consistently as *hüetent* and *lant* respectively. *zêren* in a) lines 3 and 6 appears in its older form *zeron*.

In spite of my being on principle opposed to such alterations I use here the "normalized" text for pedagogical reasons.

### Explanation of words:

Well known words which occur in modern German with the same meaning are omitted here. In this lesson and the following we explain the MHG words both in German and English.

MHG	GERMAN	ENGLISH
a) <i>nieman</i>	niemand	nobody
<i>kan</i> (cf. §33 b)	weiß	knows how to, is able to
<i>gerte</i>	Gerte	switch
<i>zuht</i>	gute Erziehung	good breeding

MHG	GERMAN	ENGLISH
<i>beherren</i>	sichern	to guarantee
<i>zêren = ze êren.</i> cf. §20		
<i>êre</i>	ehrenhaftes Benehmen	respectable conduct
<i>mac</i> (cf. §33 e)	mag, kann	can, is able to
<i>als</i>	wie	like
<i>slac</i>	Schlag	blow, lash
b) <i>hüetet!</i>	hütet!	watch out for! watch over!
<i>iuwer</i>	eure	your
<i>daz</i>	das	this, that
<i>zimt wol den jungen</i>	steht den Jungen gut an	is becoming for young people
<i>stôz!</i>	stoße!	push! put up!
<i>rigel</i>	Riegel	bolt
<i>für</i>	vor	before
<i>lâ . . . für!</i>	laß . . . hinaus!	let . . . escape!
<i>dar</i>	dort(hin)	there

10. Not all the words that have the same form as in modern German have also the same meaning. Therefore, when translating from MHG into modern German, make sure that you know the real meaning of the MHG words, just as when you translate into English. For instance, MHG *phlegen* is the modern German word *pflügen*. But it must not be translated by this word. Cf. §8 b, line 4.

11. MHG nouns have two numbers: singular and plural; three genders: masculine, feminine, neuter; four cases: nominative, genitive, dative, accusative.

12. *der, diu, daz*

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Sing. Nom.	<i>der</i>	<i>diu</i>	<i>daz</i>
Gen.	<i>des</i>	<i>der, dere</i>	<i>des</i>
Dat.	<i>dem, deme</i>	<i>der, dere</i>	<i>dem, deme</i>
Acc.	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>daz</i>

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Plur. Nom.	<i>die</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>diu</i>
Gen.	<i>der, dere</i>	<i>der, dere</i>	<i>der, dere</i>
Dat.	<i>den</i>	<i>den</i>	<i>den</i>
Acc.	<i>die</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>diu</i>

This word is used:

a) as a **demonstrative pronoun**; e.g.:

*des* in §8 a, line 2: gen. sing. of *daz*.

*diu* in §8 b, line 1: nom. sing.

*der* in §8 b, lines 3 and 4: gen. sing. of *diu*.

*dem* in §8 b, line 5: dat. sing. of *der*.

*der* in §17 A e, lines 1 and 8: gen. plur. of *daz*.

b) as a **definite article**; e.g.:

*daz slüzzelîn, den rigel, die tür, die bæsen, den sin.*

The use of the definite and the indefinite article in MHG does not always agree with the modern German practice.

c) as a **relative pronoun**; e.g.: *den* in §9 a, lines 3 and 6: acc. sing. of *der*. In such cases its meaning is "he who", G. "derjenige, welcher". Cf. §24, line 5 and §32 A, line 28. In other cases its meaning is just "who; which; that".

13. To understand the diversity of MHG declensions, we have to bear in mind that Middle High German (written between 1100 and about 1450 or 1500), although more archaic than modern German, is a relatively modern form of German. It developed from Old High German (750-1100). Old High German (abbreviated *OHG*) is characterized by full vowels in the terminations. In MHG these full vowels are weakened to a uniform slurred *e*, and thus the differences between the case forms are often destroyed. But OHG, too, had already gone through important changes of sounds and forms. Together with its sister-language Old English, it had developed from an earlier stage called Primitive Germanic (*Urgermanisch* in German). This Primitive Germanic language is the mother-tongue of all the modern

Germanic languages, to which, beside German, belong also Dutch, English, Frisian, Danish, Norwegian, and Swedish. The Primitive Germanic period lasted approximately from 500 B.C. to 200 A.D. We have no written record from that period. The oldest literary document of importance in any Germanic language is the Gothic Bible translation of the fourth century. Gothic is an older sister of OHG and Old English. Certain features of Gothic are more archaic than their corresponding forms in OHG. Primitive Germanic in turn is a daughter-language of Primitive Indo-European (abbreviated *IE*), and a sister of Latin, Greek, Sanskrit, etc.

Note: Note the difference between *Germanic* (sometimes called *Teutonic*) and *German*.

In the IE language nouns, like verbs, consisted of root, suffix, and ending. Root and suffix together form the *stem*. The case endings of IE nouns were, with a few exceptions, the same for all classes and genders. Therefore, the distinction of the various declensions lies not in the ending, but in the form of the original suffix. If the original stem ended in a vowel (*o, jo, â, i, u*) we speak of a vowel stem. If, however, the original stem ended in a consonant we have a so-called consonant stem. In their development from Primitive Indo-European through Primitive Germanic and Old High German to Middle High German, however, words and sounds have changed to such an extent that we should not be able to recognize the original stems of the MHG nouns if we did not possess their equivalents in Old High German and Gothic.

14. MHG nouns are divided into two classes. Nouns whose *stems* originally ended in a vowel belong to the so-called **strong declension**. Those whose *stems* end in *-n* belong to the **weak declension**. Many modern German nouns belong to a declension different from that of their MHG equivalents. The "mixed" declension of modern German did not exist in MHG.

The strong declension comprises feminine *ô*-stems, masculine and neuter *a*- and *ja*-stems, masculine and feminine *i*-stems. The weak declension consists of masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns.

In this grammar we use the following abbreviations to indicate the declension and gender of nouns:

*stm* = strong masculine; *stn* = strong neuter; *stf* = strong feminine.

*wm* = weak masculine; *wn* = weak neuter; *wf* = weak feminine.

*ô*, *a*, *ja*, *i* added in round brackets refer to the various stems of the strong declension.

### 15. The *ô*-declension: MHG *gebe* "gift".

		MHG	OHG	GOTHIC	PRIMITIVE GERMANIC
Sing.	Nom.	<i>gebe</i>	<i>gebâ</i>	<i>giba</i>	* <i>gebôð</i>
	Gen.	<i>gebe</i>	<i>gebâ (-u, -o)</i>	<i>gibôðs</i>	* <i>gebôðz</i>
	Dat.	<i>gebe</i>	<i>gebû (-o)</i>	<i>gibai</i>	* <i>gebai</i>
	Acc.	<i>gebe</i>	<i>gebâ</i>	<i>giba</i>	* <i>gebôn</i>
Plur.	Nom.	<i>gebe</i>	<i>gebâ</i>	<i>gibôðs</i>	* <i>gebôðz</i>
	Gen.	<i>geben</i>	<i>gebônno</i>	<i>gibô</i>	* <i>gebôn</i>
	Dat.	<i>geben</i>	<i>gebôm (-ôn, -on)</i>	<i>gibôm</i>	* <i>gebômiz</i>
	Acc.	<i>gebe</i>	<i>gebâ</i>	<i>gibôðs</i>	* <i>gebôðz</i>

Note: An asterisk preceding a word indicates that this special word-form does not occur in any known document or inscription, but is merely a hypothetical reconstruction. *z* in Primitive Germanic forms stands for a voiced *s*-sound.

From this tabulation we see how the almost uniform MHG case terminations are derived from very different older endings. The long stem vowel *ô* which gives this declension its name is not to be found at all in MHG. In OHG we find the stem vowel *ô* in the gen. and dat. plural. The further back we go, the more often we find this stem vowel. In the Primitive Germanic paradigm all cases, except the dat. sing., show *ô*. Because Primitive Germanic *ô* came from IE *â*, this declension is often called the *â*-declension. The Primitive Germanic form \**gebôð* (nom. sing.) goes back to an IE form \**ghebhâ*.



In MHG a very large number of feminine nouns with the termination *-e* belong to this class; e.g.: *êre*, *gerte*, *minne*, *triuwe* (*triuwe*).

For the nom. sing. form cf. §140 c.

16. The *a*-declension: MHG *tac* "day" and *wort* "word".

Because Primitive Germanic *a* came from IE *o*, this declension is often called *o*-declension.

a) Masculine nouns:

	MHG	OHG	GOTHIC	PRIMITIVE GERMANIC
Sing. Nom.	<i>tac</i>	<i>tag</i>	<i>dags</i>	* <i>dagaz</i>
Gen.	<i>tages</i>	<i>tages</i>	<i>dagis</i>	* <i>dagesa</i>
Dat.	<i>tage</i>	<i>tage</i>	<i>dagā</i>	* <i>dagai</i>
Acc.	<i>tac</i>	<i>tag</i>	<i>dag</i>	* <i>dagān</i>
Plur. Nom.	<i>tage</i>	<i>taga</i>	<i>dagōs</i>	* <i>dagōz</i>
Gen.	<i>tage</i>	<i>tago</i>	<i>dagê</i>	* <i>dagôn</i> , <i>-ên</i>
Dat.	<i>tagen</i>	<i>tagum (-un)</i>	<i>dagam</i>	* <i>dagomiz</i> or <i>-moz</i>
Acc.	<i>tage</i>	<i>taga</i>	<i>dagans</i>	* <i>daganz</i>

The stem vowel *a* (= IE *o*) appears in the nom. sing. of Primitive Germanic \**dagā-z* (= IE \**dhogho-s*).

To this class belong: *rigel* (see c), *slüzzel* (see c), *sin*, *muot*. In agreement with §5 a, *sin* has *-nn-* in all cases except nom. and acc. sing.: *sinnes*, *sinne*, *sinnen*. In regard to *-c* in *tac*, in contrast with *tages*, etc., see §4 a.

b) Neuter nouns:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	<i>wort</i>	<i>wort</i>
Gen.	<i>wortes</i>	<i>worte</i>
Dat.	<i>worte</i>	<i>worten</i>
Acc.	<i>wort</i>	<i>wort</i>

The nom. and acc. plur. was *wort* in OHG, *wau'rda* (pronounce: *worda*) in Gothic (nom. and acc. sing.: *wau'rd*), \**wordô* in

Primitive Germanic (nom. and acc. sing.: *\*wordan*). All other cases were formed like those of the masculine *a*-stems.

To this class belong: *kint* (*kindes*), *slüzzelîn*.

c) Monosyllabic words (masculines or neuters) ending in *-l* or *-r* and having a short root-vowel (e.g.: *stil* m. "stem", *spil* n. "game") usually lose the vowel *-e-* of the termination (gen. *stils spils*, dat. *stil spil*; plur. *stil spil*, *stiln spiln*). Nouns with the suffixes *-el*, *-er*, *-em*, *-en* act the same way if their root-vowel is long, and often even if their root-vowel is short (e.g.: *rigel*, *slüzzel*; *wazzel* n. "water").

**Exercise:** Memorize the poem of this lesson.

## LESSON III.

---

(Continued from §9)

- 17 A. c) *Hüetet iuwer ougen*      d) *Hüetet iuwer ôren,*  
*offenbâr und tougen.*                      *oder ir sît tôren.*  
*Acc Pl, lât si guote site spehen*              *lât ir bæsiu wort dar in,*  
*Acc Pl, und die bæsen übersehen.*              *daz gunêret iu den sin.*  
*lât si guote site spehen*                      *daz gunêret iu den sin,*  
*offenbâr und tougen.*                      *lât ir bæsiu wort dar in,*  
*hüetet iuwer ougen.*                      *oder ir sît tôren.*  
*hüetet iuwer ôren.*

- 
- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>c) <i>offenbâr</i> adv.<br/> <i>tougen</i> adv.<br/> <i>lât!</i> (cf. §32 B b)<br/> <i>guote</i> (cf. §17 B)<br/> <i>site</i><br/> <i>spehen</i><br/> <i>übersehen</i></p>                   | <p>in der Öffentlichkeit<br/> im verborgenen<br/> lasset!<br/> gute<br/> Sitte, Benehmen<br/> ausschauen nach<br/> übersehen</p> | <p>in public<br/> in seclusion<br/> let! allow!<br/> good<br/> behavior<br/> to look out for<br/> to take no notice of</p> |
| <p>d) <i>ir sît</i><br/> <i>tôre</i><br/> <i>lât ir . . . in</i></p> <p><i>gunêret</i> = 3rd sing.<br/> pres. tense of<br/> <i>ge-unêren</i><br/> <i>iu</i> (dat.; cf. §22)<br/> <i>sin</i></p> | <p>ihr seid<br/> Tor m., Narr<br/> lasset ihr hinein</p> <p>sittlich verderben<br/> euch<br/> Sinn</p>                           | <p>you are<br/> fool<br/> if you allow . . . to<br/> enter</p> <p>to corrupt<br/> (to) you<br/> mind</p>                   |

- e) *Hüetet wol der drîer,  
leider alze frîer.  
zungen ougen ôren sint  
dicke schalchaft, zêren blint.  
dicke schalchaft, zêren blint  
zungen ougen ôren sint.  
leider alze frîer  
hüetet wol der drîer.*

Walther von der Vogelweide.

e) <i>wol</i> adv.	gut	well
<i>drîer</i> gen. of <i>drî</i>	drei	three
<i>leider</i>	leider	alas! unfortunately, I am sorry to say
<i>alze frîer</i>	allzu frei	much too free, by
<i>frîer</i> is gen. in apposition to <i>drîer</i>		far too free
<i>sint</i>	sind	are
<i>dicke</i> adv.	oft	often
<i>schalc-haft</i>	bösartig	wicked
<i>blint</i>	blind	blind

### 17 B. The *ja*-declension: masculines.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	<i>hirte</i> "shepherd"	<i>hirte</i>
Gen.	<i>hirtes</i>	<i>hirte</i>
Dat.	<i>hirte</i>	<i>hirten</i>
Acc.	<i>hirte</i>	<i>hirte</i>

The *ja*-stems differ from the *a*-stems only in having *-e* in the nom. and acc. sing. The Primitive Germanic nom. sing. was \**chirdijaz* (= Gothic *hai'rdeis*, pronounce: *herdis*), nom. plur. \**chirdijôz* (= Gothic *hai'rdjôs*, pronounce: *herdjôs*). In MHG the *-j-* has entirely disappeared.

To this class belongs *site*. This word is masculine in MHG and used very often in the plural: *die site*. Thus, in §17A c, lines 3-6 *guote site* and *die bæsen (site)* is acc. plur.

18. The *i*-declension.

	a) MASCULINE NOUNS:		b) FEMININE NOUNS:	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>gast</i> "guest"	<i>geste</i>	<i>kraft</i> "strength"	<i>krefte</i>
Gen.	<i>gastes</i>	<i>geste</i>	<i>kraft</i> or <i>krefte</i>	<i>krefte</i>
Dat.	<i>gaste</i>	<i>gesten</i>	<i>kraft</i> or <i>krefte</i>	<i>kreften</i>
Acc.	<i>gast</i>	<i>geste</i>	<i>kraft</i>	<i>krefte</i>

The *i*-declension consists of nouns whose stem in IE ended in *-i*. It corresponds to the Latin and Greek *i*-declension (nom. sing.: Latin *hosti-s*). In OHG and MHG this *i* caused umlaut, changing preceding *a* into *e*, *u* into *ü*, etc. However, in some singular forms the stem vowel *i* had disappeared in Primitive Germanic, and such forms, consequently, have no umlaut.

The OHG paradigm of *gast* is:  
 singular: *gast, gastes, gaste, gast*;  
 plural: *gesti, gest(i)o, gestim (-n), gesti*.

The OHG paradigm of *kraft* is:  
 singular: *kraft, krefti, krefti, kraft*;  
 plural: *krefti, kref(i)o, krefim (-n), krefti*.

To group a) belongs: *slac* (plur. *slege*). Concerning the *-c* in *slac* see §4 a.

To group b) belong: *zuht* (gen. and dat. sing. *zuht* or *zühte*; plur. *zühte, zühten*), *tür* (gen. and dat. sing. *tür* or *türe*; plur. *türe, türen*).

## 19. The weak declension.

	a) MASCULINE	b) FEMININE	c) NEUTER
Sing. Nom.	<i>tôre</i>	<i>zunge</i>	<i>herze</i>
Gen.	<i>tôren</i>	<i>zungen</i>	<i>herzen</i>
Dat.	<i>tôren</i>	<i>zungen</i>	<i>herzen</i>
Acc.	<i>tôren</i>	<i>zungen</i>	<i>herze</i>

	a) MASCULINE	b) FEMININE	c) NEUTER
Plur. Nom.	<i>tôren</i>	<i>zungen</i>	<i>herzen</i>
Gen.	<i>tôren</i>	<i>zungen</i>	<i>herzen</i>
Dat.	<i>tôren</i>	<i>zungen</i>	<i>herzen</i>
Acc.	<i>tôren</i>	<i>zungen</i>	<i>herzen</i>

To a) belongs also: *der junge*.

To c) belong also: *ouge* "eye", *ôre* "ear".

d) The weak ending *-en* appears frequently in the form *-in*.

## 20. Prepositions.

*in* and *mit* are used as in modern German.

*ze* with the dative = G. *zu*.

*für* (= G. *vor*) with the accusative answers the question "whereto?"

## 21. *drî* or *drîe* "three".

The numeral *drî* or *drîe* "three" is used for the nom. and acc. of both the masculine and the feminine gender, while the neuter gender has a form of its own for these two cases, namely: *driu*. The genitive (*drîger* or *drîer*) and dative (*drin* or *drîn* or *drîen*) forms, however, are used for all three genders indiscriminately.

## 22. Observations:

a) *kein bæse wort* (nom. and acc. sing.) = G. *kein böses Wort* = Eng. *no bad word*.

*bæsiu wort* is neuter plural (nom. acc.).

b) *daz gunêret iu den sin* = G. *das verdirbt euch den Sinn* = Eng. *this corrupts your mind*.

c) *oder* in §17 A d, lines 2 and 7 means "otherwise".

## 23. Exercise:

a) Memorize the poem of this lesson.

b) What forms of the auxiliary verb *to be* occur in §§8, 9, and 17 A?

c) Note that the verb *hiitet* in §9 b and §17 A c, d, e governs the genitive. Where is the evidence for the statement that *iwwer zungen* (§9 b), *iwwer ougen* (§17 A c), *iwwer ôren* (§17 A d) are plural forms?

d) Determine the case of every noun in §§9 and 17 A.

e) Analyze all the sentences in §§9 and 17 A: indicate subject, object, and predicate.

f) Give all the words in §§9 and 17 A to which the rule of §4 a applies.

## LESSON IV.

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 24. <i>Unrehtiu gir, unrehte bejagen,<br/>und nâch vluste unrehtez klagen,<br/>daz ist wan der tôren ahte.<br/>der tôren sint drîer slahte: .<br/>5 die niht sinne hânt gewonnen,</i> | $\times\acute{\times}\acute{\times} \times\acute{\times}(\times)\acute{\times} \times $<br>$\acute{\times}\acute{\times}(\times)\times\acute{\times}\acute{\times} \times $<br>$\acute{\times}\acute{\times}\acute{\times}\acute{\times}\acute{\times} \times $<br>$\times\acute{\times}\acute{\times} \acute{\times}\acute{\times}\acute{\times} \times $<br>$\acute{\times}\acute{\times}\acute{\times}\acute{\times}\acute{\times} \times $ |
|---|--|

### Explanations:

The sign  $\acute$  indicates an accented syllable (*Hebung*) whether it be long or short.  $\times$  indicates an unaccented syllable. Where there are more than one unaccented syllable in one *Senkung* (cf. §43 a), in reading, one short vowel may be syncopated; e.g.: in line 1 read *bjagen* instead of *bejagen* and in §32 A, line 23 *dann* instead of *danne*.

- Line 1. **unreht** *adj.* wrong, unjust, unfair, improper. Cf. §43 c  
**gir** *stf* (i) greed  
**bejagen** *inf.* to pursue, to acquire
2. **nâch** *prep.* with *dat.* after  
**vlust** *stf* (i) G. *der Verlust* loss  
**klagen** *inf.* used as a neuter noun to complain, to lament
3. **wan** *adv.* only. It precedes the word or part of the sentence which it emphasizes. See also §32 A, line 28  
**ahte** *stf* (ô) manner, way
4. **sint** there are  
**slahte** *stf* (ô) kind, sort; **drîer slahte** G. *dreierlei*. See §30
5. **niht**. See §29  
**sinne** *plur.* of **sin** (§16 a) sound mind  
**hânt**. See §26  
**gewonnen** *past participle* of **gewinnen** (§32 A, line 15) to get, to obtain



<i>die erwizzen noch enkunnen;</i>	˘x˘x˘x˘x˘x˘
<i>die andern wellent wizzen niht,</i>	x˘x˘x˘x˘x˘x˘
<i>die sint noch vürbaz enwiht;</i>	˘x˘x˘x˘x˘
<i>sô sint die dritten sinne vol,</i>	x˘x˘x˘x˘x˘x˘
10 <i>die kunnen unde wizzen wol</i>	x˘x˘x˘x˘x˘x˘
<i>und tuont daz hohste dabî,</i>	x˘x˘x˘x˘x˘
<i>swie ez in allen kunt sî.</i>	˘(x)x˘x˘x˘x˘

(Continued in §32 A)

- Line 6. **enwizzen**, **enkunnen**. For the prefix **en-** see §29  
**wizzen**. See §33 a  
**kunnen**. See §33 b  
 In lines 6 and 10 both verbs **wizzen** and **kunnen** have not exactly identical, but similar meanings. In both instances this double expression helps to emphasize the most important part of the sentence, i.e., the negation in 6 and the adverb **wol** in 10.
7. **ander** *adj.* the second  
**wellent**. See §27
8. **enwiht** *adj.*, only in predicative position (cf. O. Behaghel, *Deutsche Syntax*. §100 D) useless, of no use, good-for-nothing  
**vürbaz** (accent on the second syllable) *adv.* more; **vürbaz enwiht** more useless, worse
9. **sô** *adv.* on the other hand. See also §32 A, line 16  
**ditte** *adj.* the third  
**vol** *adj.* (*gen. volles*) full of (*with gen.:* **sinne**)
10. **unde** the same as
11. **und** and  
**tuont**. See §28  
**hohst** *superlative form of hoh* high, excellent  
**dabî** (accent on the second syllable) G. *dabei* refers to the preceding statement (line 10) that they know everything perfectly well
12. **swie** *conj.* in whatever manner (it may be), how(so)ever  
**ez**. See §31 d  
**in**. See §31 d  
**allen**. See §42  
**kunt** (**-des**) *adj.* known  
**sî**. See §25 b

**Translation :**

“ Excessive greed, pursuit of improper aims, and, after a loss, unjustified lament, such is the way of fools only. (4) There are *three* kinds of fools: Those who are not of sound mind: these people do not realize what they are doing. The second group do not want to realize (what they are doing): these people are even worse. On the other hand, the third kind are of sound mind: these people know perfectly well (what they are doing) and, thus, act to the best of their knowledge.”

**25. Present tense of *sîn* or *wesen* “ to be ”.**

a) Indicative: (*ich*) *bin*, (*du*) *bist*, (*er, si, ez*) *ist*; (*wir*) *birn* or *sîn*, (*ir*) *birt* or *sît*, (*si*) *sint*.

b) Subjunctive: *sî*, *sîst*, *sî*; *sîn*, *sît*, *sîn*.

c) Imperative: Sing. *wis* or *bis*; Plur. *weset* or *sît*.

d) Past participle: *gewesen* or (less often) *gesîn*.

e) This verb shows anomalous formation. Concerning the origin of the form *bin* see §46. For the three different roots (*es-*, *bheu-*, *wes-*) employed in the paradigm of this verb cf. Prokosch, *An Outline of German Historical Grammar* p. 65. Cf. also Kudrun 134, 1.

**26. Indicative present of *hân* “ to have ”.**

*hân*, *hâst*, *hât*; *hân*, *hât*, *hânt*.

**27. Present tense of *wellen* = G. *wollen*.**

a) Indicative: (*ich*) *wil*, (*du*) *wil* or *wilt*, (*er*) *wil*; (*wir*) *wellen* or *weln*, (*ir*) *wellet* or *welt*, (*si*) *wellen* or *weln* or *wellent*.

b) Subjunctive: *welle*, *welles(t)*, *welle*; *wellen*, *wellet*, *wellen*.

c) The modern German verb *wollen*, which developed from MHG *wellen*, is treated like a so-called preterit-present (§123 b). Originally, however, it did not belong to that group. Its present indicative was formerly an *optative* (cf. Gothic *wiljau* and Latin *velim*). About the term optative see Prokosch, *An Outline of German Historical Grammar* p. 66–69.

28. Present tense of *tuon* "to do".

a) Indicative: (*ich*) *tuon*, (*du*) *tuost*, (*er*) *tuot*; (*wir*) *tuon*, (*ir*) *tuot*, (*si*) *tuont*.

b) Subjunctive: *tuo*, *tuost*, *tuo*; *tuon*, *tuot*, *tuon*.

c) Imperative: Sing. *tuo*; Plur. *tuot*.

d) Past participle: *getân*.

## 29. Negation.

In *enwizzen* and *enkunnen* (line 6) the initial syllable *en-* is a negative particle meaning "not". This negative particle is always unaccented (proclitic) and immediately precedes the finite verb with which it is incorporated. *en- . . . noch en-* (as in line 6) means "neither . . . nor".

The negation was strengthened by adding the negative pronoun *niht* (from original *ni-wiht* "not a thing") meaning "nothing"; e.g.: *er gât* "he goes" — *er engât* and *er engât niht* "he does not go". Later the original negative particle *en-* was dropped and *niht* alone sufficed: *er gât niht* "he does not go" = G. *er geht nicht*. *niht* alone with its original meaning "nothing" appears in line 7. Also alone, but already with the modern meaning "not", it occurs in §32 A, lines 19 and 25. The direct object which in a positive sentence stands in the accusative is usually changed into a genitive form if this sentence is denied by means of *niht*. In such instances *niht* is the real accusative object and the genitive is a genitive partitive depending on *niht*. Cf. line 5 of our selection where *sinne* is gen. plur. However, in §32 A, line 25 we find *die sêle* in the accusative.

30. *drier slahte* "of three kinds".

*drier* (§21) being a genitive, we should expect *slahten* (plur.) instead of *slahte*. This form *slahte* is originally a gen. sing., but in such stereotyped forms as *maneger slahte*, *einer slahte*, *ander slahte*, *welher slahte*, *guoter slahte*, etc., the speaker regarded it

as an adverbial expression, and then, by analogy, created the new forms *zweier slahte*, *drier slahte* instead of *zweier slahten*, *drier slahten*.

There are, however, a few *ô*-stems with *-e* in the gen. plur. Cf. Michels §210 Anm. 3 or Paul-Gierach §126 Anm. 6 and §251.

### 31. Personal pronouns.

	a) FIRST PERSON	b) SECOND PERSON	c) REFLEXIVE PRON.
Sing. Nom.	<i>ich</i>	<i>du (dû)</i>	
Gen.	<i>mîn</i>	<i>dîn</i>	<i>sîn m., ir f.</i>
Dat.	<i>mir</i>	<i>dir</i>	<i>im m., ir f.</i>
Acc.	<i>mich</i>	<i>dich</i>	<i>sich</i>
Plur. Nom.	<i>wir</i>	<i>ir</i>	
Gen.	<i>unser</i>	<i>iurwer</i>	<i>ir</i>
Dat.	<i>uns</i>	<i>iu (iuch Nib. 106, 4; 336, 4)</i>	<i>in</i>
Acc.	<i>uns (unsich)</i>	<i>iuch</i>	<i>sich</i>

#### d) THIRD PERSON

	MASCULINE	NEUTER	FEMININE
Sing. Nom.	<i>er "he"</i>	<i>ez "it"</i>	<i>si, sî, siu, sie "she"</i>
Gen.	<i>es, sîn</i>	<i>es (sîn)</i>	<i>ir, ire</i>
Dat.	<i>im, ime</i>	<i>im, ime</i>	<i>ir, ire</i>
Acc.	<i>in</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>sie, si, sî, siu</i>
Plur. Nom. Acc.		<i>si, sî, sie, siu</i>	
Gen.		<i>ir, ire</i>	
Dat.		<i>in</i>	

e) The genitive forms *mîn*, *dîn*, *sîn*, *ir*; *unser*, *iurwer*, *ir* are used in place of possessive adjectives and have then the meaning "my, your, his, her, its; our, your, their". See §84.

## LESSON V.

---

32 A.

(Continued from §24)

<i>manic tōre ist des muotes,</i>	˘×˘×˘×˘×˘
<i>ob er vil vrōude und vil guotes</i>	×˘×˘×˘×˘×˘×˘
15 <i>gewinnen und behalten kan,</i>	×˘×˘×˘×˘×˘
<i>sô dunket er sich ein wîse man.</i>	×˘×××˘×˘×˘
<i>swaz vrōude er hât, swie rîche er ist,</i>	×˘××× ˘×˘××˘

- Line 13. **manic** (-ges) *adj.* many a; **manic tōre** many a fool  
**muot** *stm* (a) mind; opinion, belief; **er ist des muotes** he thinks, believes (that . . .)
14. **ob** *conj.* if  
**vil** much. See §36 a  
**vrōude** *stf* (ô) pleasure  
**guot** *stn* (a) property, fortune
15. **behalten** to keep, to retain
16. **sô** (also in lines 20 and 24) in a concluding sentence: then; but often not to be translated. See also §24, line 9  
**er dunket sich** (= G. *er dünkt sich*) **ein wîse man** he thinks himself a wise man; **er dunket sich** is a parallel expression to **er ist des muotes** (line 13), both having about the same meaning. The construction of line 13 is interrupted by lines 14 and 15. But in line 16, instead of the expected continuation **sô si er ein wîse man**, a new verb is introduced, and the sentence started in line 13 remains unfinished.  
**wîse** *adj.* wise  
**man.** See §34
17. **swaz** *pron.* with the *gen. sing.* (also in line 21) what(so)ever.  
 See §91 b  
**rîche** *adj.* rich, wealthy

<p>und ist der vil heilige Krist  sîn vriunt niht alters eine,  20 sô hilfet ez allez kleine,  swaz er vriunde und guotes hât.  swenne er vriunde und guot lât,  ist im diu sêle danne ungenesen,  sô ist er ie ein tôre gewesen.  25 swer die sêle niht ernert,  der ist ein tôre, swie er vert.  ez enhât nieman wîsen muot,  wan der gotes willen tuot.</p>	<p>˘x˘x˘x˘x˘   x˘x˘x˘x˘˘   x˘x˘x˘x˘˘   ˘x˘x˘x˘x˘   ˘x˘x˘x˘x˘   x˘x˘x˘x˘(x)˘x˘x˘   x˘x˘x˘x˘x˘x˘   ˘x˘˘x˘x˘˘   x˘x˘x˘x˘ ˘x˘˘   x˘x˘˘ ˘x˘x˘˘   ˘x˘˘x˘x˘˘ </p>
--	--

Der Stricker.

- Line 18. **und** conj. here meaning: in spite of that, yet, still, however  
**vil** adv. very. See §36 b  
**heilig** (-ges) adj. holy  
**Krist** *stm* (a) G. **Christus** Christ, used for " God ".
19. **sîn** pron. G. **sein** his. See §31 c  
**vriunt** *stm* (a) friend  
**eine** adj. alone; **alters eine** all alone
20. **hilfet** 3rd sing. pres. of **helfen** to help  
**allez**. See § 42  
**kleine** acc. sing. n. little, not much. See §43 b
21. **swaz** with gen. plur. as many (friends) as (he may have)
22. **swenne** conj. whenever  
**und**. The accent on this copula stresses its meaning emphatically. In contrast with this cf. unaccented **und** in the preceding verse.  
**lân** to leave behind, to renounce. See §32 B
23. **im**. See §31 d. For the translation cf. §22 b  
**sêle** *stf* (ô) soul  
**danne** adv. then, at that time. See first footnote to §24  
**ungenesen** adj. not saved
24. **ie** adv. always
25. **swer** pron. whoever. See §91 b  
**ernert** 3rd sing. pres. ind. of **ernern** to save
26. **vert** 3rd sing. pres. ind. of **varn** to be doing (nicely)
28. **got** *stm* (a) God. See §35  
**wille** *wm* the will

**Translation :**

“ Many a fool thinks he is a wise man, if he knows how to obtain great happiness and a great fortune and to retain them. (17) Whatever pleasure he may have and however rich he may be, if, however, Christ the Holiest is not his one and only friend (= his friend all alone), all the friends and the fortune he may have are of no avail whatsoever. (22) Even though he renounce both his friends *and* his fortune, but if at the same time his soul is not saved, he has not ceased to be a fool. (25) He who does not save his soul is a fool no matter how well he may be doing. *Nobody* possesses wisdom except the one who fulfills God's commandments.”

32 B. Present tense of *lân* = G. *lassen*.

a) Indicative: *lân, lâst, lât; lân, lât, lânt*.

b) Imperative: *lâ; lât*.

c) Past Participle: *gelân* and *lân*.

In Alemannic the form *lânt* is used for the entire plural indicative and imperative.

## 33. Indicative present of the so-called preterit-presents (See §§123 b and 161).

a) *wizzen* “to know”: *weiz, weist, weiz; wizzen, wizzet, wizzen* (§161 a).

b) (*ich*) *kan* “I know”, (*du*) *kanst*, (*er*) *kan*; (*wir*) *kunnen* or *künnen*, (*ir*) *kunnet* or *künnnet*, (*si*) *kunnen* or *künnen* (§80).

c) (*ich*) *darf* “I need”, (*du*) *darft*, (*er*) *darf*; (*wir*) *durfen* or *dürfen*, (*ir*) *durfet* or *dürfet*, (*si*) *durfen* or *dürfen* (§161 d).

d) (*ich*) *sol* (*sal*) “I shall, must”, (*du*) *solt* (*salt*), (*er*) *sol* (*sal*); (*wir*) *suln* or *süln*, (*ir*) *sult* or *sült*, (*si*) *suln* or *süln* (§122 A).

e) (*ich*) *mac* “I can, I am able to”, (*du*) *maht*, (*er*) *mac*; (*wir*) *mugen* or *mügen* (also: *megen*, *magen*), (*ir*) *muget* or *müget*, (*si*) *mugen* or *mügen* (*megen*, *magen*) (§133).

f) (*ich*) *muoz* "I must", (*du*) *muost*, (*er*) *muoz*; (*wir*) *müezen*, (*ir*) *müezet*, (*si*) *müezen* (§79).

g) *gan*. §123 a.

h) *tugen*. §161 b.

i) *turren*. §161 c.

34. *man* = G. *Mann* "man".

The declension of this noun is irregular.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom. Acc.	<i>man</i>	<i>man</i> (or <i>manne</i> )
Gen.	<i>man</i> or <i>mannes</i>	<i>manne</i> or <i>man</i>
Dat.	<i>man</i> or <i>manne</i>	<i>mannen</i> or <i>man</i>

35. Note that MHG *got*, in contrast with G. *Gott*, has usually only one *t* throughout the whole paradigm. Cf. Paul-Gierach §28. Note also that the plural is *gote*. But cf. §131, lines 13 and 18.

36. *vil*.

a) Indeclinable neuter noun. It was originally the nom.-acc. form of an adjective (the other case forms of which have disappeared) and has the meaning "plenty; multitude". It is used with the genitive partitive. Compare the English expression *plenty of . . .*

*vil* is to be translated either "much" or "many": *vil vröude* "much pleasure", *vil guotes* (line 14) "much property", *vil der êren* "many honors".

b) *vil* is also used as an adverb with the meaning "very", defining adjectives or adverbs: *der vil heilige Krist*.

37. Declension of adjectives.

In MHG the adjectives are declined as strong or weak. They have three genders and the same cases as nouns. Furthermore, all adjectives have an uninflected form.



a) Paradigm: *blind* (uninflected form).

	MASCULINE		FEMININE		NEUTER	
	Strong	Weak	Strong	Weak	Strong	Weak
<i>Sing.</i>						
Nom.	blind-er	blind-e	blind-iu	blind-e	blind-ez	blind-e
Gen.	" es	" }	" er(e)	" }	" es	" en
Dat.	" em(e)	" }	" er(e)	" }	" em(e)	" en
Acc.	" en	" }	" e	" }	" ez	" e
<i>Plur.</i>						
Nom.	" e	" }en	" e	" }en	" iu	" }
Gen.	" er(e)	" }	" er(e)	" }	" er(e)	" }en
Dat.	" en	" }	" en	" }	" en	" }
Acc.	" e	" }	" e	" }	" iu	" }

In the same way are declined: *unreht*, *heilic(g)*, *guot*, *kunt(d)*, *junc(g)*, *frî*, *schalchaft*, *vol (voller)*.

b) A large number of adjectives have *-e* in their uninflected form, e.g.: *mære* "famous", *bæse* "bad", *kleine* "small, little", *eine* "alone". Otherwise their paradigm is identical with the one given under a); e.g.: *bæser*, *bæsiu*, *bæsez*. Some words have their uninflected form both with and without *-e*, e.g.: *wis* and *wîse*, *rîch* and *rîche*.

These adjectives were *ja-* or *i-*stems in Primitive Germanic. But in MHG, as stated before, they do not essentially differ from the other adjectives.

c) In agreement with §16 c, adjectives ending in *-el*, *-er*, *-em*, *-en* (e.g., *michel* "big") and monosyllabics with a short root-syllable ending in *-l*, *-r* (*hol* "hollow", *bar* "naked") drop the vowel *-e-* of the termination. Thus, we find in §24, line 7: *andern* instead of *anderen*. Note also *michelme* instead of *micheleme*.

38. Adjectives, when used in their weak form, may become nouns, e.g.: *den jungen* (§9 b, lines 2 and 7) = dat. plur.

39. The strong and weak forms of adjectives are employed in

much the same manner as in modern German. Adjectives used with the definite article follow the weak declension, and those without the definite article follow the strong declension. However, exceptions to this rule are frequent. Thus, in §32 A, line 16 we find the expression *ein wise man* in contrast with G. *ein weiser Mann*.

40. There are also differences between G. and MHG in the use of the uninflected or the inflected forms. In MHG the uninflected form is used (as in modern German) in predicative position for the nom. sing. or plur. of any gender; e.g.:

*tougen minne diu ist guot.*

*zungen ougen ôren sint dicke schalchaft, zêren blint.*

*sô sint die dritten sinne vol.*

But sometimes the inflected form is used in predicative position.

41. When used **attributively**, adjectives either precede or follow their noun and agree with it in number, gender, and case. However, in the nom. sing. of all genders (and acc. sing. neuter) the uninflected form may be used if the adjective precedes the noun. Furthermore, the uninflected form may take the place of any case form of the attributive adjective following the noun, without regard to number or gender. Therefore, the expression "a good man" may be rendered in four different ways:

*ein guoter man*

*ein guot man*

*ein man guoter*

*ein man guot.*

Similarly "a good lady":

*ein guotiu vrouwe*

*ein guot vrouwe*

*ein vrouwe guotiu*

*ein vrouwe guot,*

"a good child":

*ein guotez kint*

*ein guot kint*

*ein kint guotez*

*ein kint guot.*

42. *al* "all, entire, every".

The inflected forms are: *aller* m., *alliu* (often with umlaut

*elliu*) f., *allez* n.; nom. and acc. plural: *alle* m. and f., *alliu* and *elliu* n. *al* is declined like a strong adjective. But, if immediately preceding the article or a pronoun, its uninflected form (*al*) may be used for any case form. Cf. *mänigiu* Nib. 101, 4.

#### 43. Observations:

a) MHG poetry was created to be read aloud to an audience. Therefore, it is often indispensable for the correct understanding of a text to understand fully its rhythm. In the selection given in §§24 and 32 A the *cesura* plays an important rôle, especially where it appears in place of a rhythmic *Senkung* (the space between two metrical stresses filled by one or more unaccented syllables). In such instances the *cesura* helps to stress emphatically the word immediately following, e.g.: *drier* (line 4), *nieman* (line 27). We may call that "rhetorical *cesura*". Emphatic stress falls also on *hæhste* (line 11) which has two accents without an unaccented syllable between them.

b) It is characteristic of MHG poetry that blunt expressions were regarded as unsuitable and, therefore, avoided or softened, usually accompanied by a tinge of irony. Thus, *lützel*, *wênic*, *kleine*, the meaning of all of which is "little, not much", are used to express the meaning "nothing", as in line 20. Similarly the adverb *selten* "rarely" was used in the sense of "never". When reciting, the MHG poet accompanied such passages with gestures or even grimaces that made the hidden meaning of the word clear enough to the audience.

c) The prefix *un-* is unaccented if the following syllable is accented in the non-compound form, e.g., *un-re'ht*, *un-mæ're*, *un-fu'oge*, *un-da'nc*, *un-ge'rne*, *un-mâ'zen*, *un-triu'we*, etc. It is accented if the next syllable has no stress of its own, e.g., *u'n-verda'get*, *u'n-gefii'ege*, *u'n-gelii'cke*, *u'n-gene'sen*, etc.

## LESSON VI.

---

44. *Frouwe, nû versinne  
dich, obe ich dir ze ihte mære sî.  
aines friundes minne  
diu entouget niht, dâ ensî ain anderiu bî.  
5 minne tougt niht aine.  
si sol wesen gemaine.  
sô gemaine, daz si gê  
durch zwai herzen und niht mê.*

---

### Words:

- Line 1. **frouwe** *wf* lady (of noble rank), noble-woman  
**nû** *adv.* now  
**sich versinnen** *stv* (III a) to make up one's mind
2. **obe** *conj.* = **ob** whether  
**iht** *stn* (a) something  
**mære** *adj.* worth while, dear; **ob(e) ich dir z(e) ihte mære sî**  
whether I do at all matter to you. See §61 b
3. **friunt** *stm* loving person, sweetheart, lover. This word may be  
used both for the knight and the lady. See §60 a  
**minne** *stf* (ô) love
4. **tougen** *wv* to be useful, to be good, to be of value. See §54  
**ensî.** See §57  
**dâ** and **bî** belong together: **dabi**
6. **gemeine** *adj.* joint, common cause. Cf §45
7. **daz** *conj.* G. **daß** that  
**gên** *stv* to go. See §§56 and 82 d
8. **durch** *prep.* with *acc.* through  
**zwei** two. See §60 b and f  
**mê** *adv.* more. See §88 b

- Bin ich dir unmære?  
 10 des waiz ich niht: ich minne dich.  
 ainez ist mir swære:  
 du sihest hin bî mir und über mich.  
 daz solt du vermîden.  
 ich mag niht erliden  
 15 grôze liebi âne grôzen schaden.  
 hilf mir tragen. ich hân ze vil geladen.

Walther von der Vogelweide.

From Karl Löffler, *Die Weingartner Liederhandschrift in Nachbildung* (1927), p. 163. Cf., however, Wilmanns-Michels, *Walther von der Vogelweide II* (1924), p. 211-213.

- 
- Line 9. **unmære** *adj.* "Do you not care for me at all?" Cf. §43 c
10. **minnen** *ww* to love
11. **swære** *adj.* painful; **swære sîn** to give pain to, to make suffer, to hurt
12. **hin sehen** *stv* (V) to look away. See §61 c  
**bî** *prep. with dat.* by, past  
**über** *prep. with acc.* over, above  
 Translation of this line: "You avoid my glance by looking past me and over my head."
13. **vermîden** *stv* (I) to avoid. Translation: "You must not do that."
14. **mag** = **mac**  
**erliden** *stv* (I) to bear, to endure
15. **grôz** *adj.* great  
**liebi** = **liebe** *stf* (ô) love. See §59  
**âne** *prep. with acc.* without  
**schade** *wm* damage, injury
16. **tragen** *stv* (VI) to carry  
**laden** *stv* (VI) to lay a load on, to load. See §61 a  
**ze vil** too much

45. The manuscript containing the text of §44 was written at Konstanz on the Bodensee shortly before 1300. In agreement with §2 d, we find here the spellings *aines*, *ain*, *aine*, *gemaine*, *zwei* instead of *eines*, *ein*, *eine*, *gemeine*, *zwei*, and, in agreement with §3 i, *wais*, *aines*, *das*, *grosse*, *grossen* instead of *weiz*, *einez*, *daz*, *grôze*, *grôzen*. On the other hand, the vowel *a* has a special symbol in this manuscript, while *e* and *ê* are not distinguished from each other.

As can be noted, the spelling has been partly normalized in this lesson.

#### 46. Verbs.

In Primitive Indo-European there were two classes of verbs: *athematic* and *thematic*. In the athematic verbs the endings were added directly to the root without any connecting syllable. In the thematic verbs a connecting syllable (Greek *thema*) was inserted between the simple root and the ending proper. Verbs of the athematic class are often called *mi*-verbs because the first person singular ended in *-mi*. Similarly the thematic verbs are called *ô*-verbs because the first person singular ended in *-ô*. Nearly all the verbs, which originally belonged to the *mi*-conjugation, passed over into the *ô*-conjugation in the Primitive Germanic period. MHG has only preserved a few traces of the *mi*-conjugation, namely, those forms that end in *-n* in the first person singular of the indicative present. Cf. §§25, 26, 28, 32 B, 56, 71. Final *-i* had disappeared in Primitive Germanic and later on *-m* in final position had changed to *-n*. Original *-ô* had become *-u* in OHG, and this *-u* was weakened to *-e* before the beginning of the MHG period (cf. §13).

47. In MHG, as in modern German and in other Germanic languages, the verbs are divided into two main classes — **strong** and **weak** — according to the formation of the preterit tense. The verbs treated in §§25–28, 32 B, 56, and 71, however, representing remnants of an older order, do not belong to either class.

Note these abbreviations: *wv* = weak verb;  
*stv* = strong verb.

48. The MHG verb has the following independent forms:

- a) Two numbers: singular and plural.
- b) Three persons in both singular and plural.
- c) Two tenses: present and preterit.
- d) Two complete moods in both present and preterit: indicative and subjunctive, in addition to an imperative which is used only in the present tense.
- e) An infinitive formed from the present tense.
- f) Two participles: a present participle with active meaning and a past participle with either active or passive meaning.

49. **The present tense.**

There is a difference in the formation of the present tense between strong and weak verbs. The terminations are the same (with one exception) for both conjugations, but the stem is treated differently.

50. **Weak verbs.**

a) While in OHG there were three classes of weak verbs, this distinction has almost entirely disappeared in MHG. The formation of the present tense is uniform. The root-vowel remains unchanged throughout the whole present tense.

b) *loben* "to praise".

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
Sing. 1	( <i>ich</i> ) <i>lobe</i>	<i>lobe</i>	
2	( <i>du</i> ) <i>lobest</i>	<i>lobest</i>	<i>lobe</i>
3	( <i>er</i> ) <i>lobet</i>	<i>lobe</i>	
Plur. 1	( <i>wir</i> ) <i>loben</i>	<i>loben</i>	
2	( <i>ir</i> ) <i>lobet</i>	<i>lobet</i>	<i>lobet</i>
3	( <i>si</i> ) <i>lobent</i>	<i>loben</i>	

Present participle: *lobende*

## 51. Strong verbs.

There are seven classes of strong verbs. In the present tense they have the same terminations as the weak verbs, except for the imperative singular. In some verbs the root-vowel remains unchanged throughout the whole present tense. The majority, however, show alternations of the root-vowel between the singular and the plural forms. The infinitive and the subjunctive always have the same root-vowel as the plural of the indicative.

## 52. Classification of the strong verbs. (Cf. §169.)

- I. The verbs of this class have the vowel *i* in the infinitive and throughout the whole present tense, e.g., *miden* "to avoid", *liden* "to suffer". See §94.
- II. *ie* in the plural, *iu* in the singular, e.g., *vliegen* "to fly": *ich vliuge, wir vliegen; vliuc! vlieget!* A few verbs of this class have either *û* or *iu* throughout the whole present tense. See §166.
- III. To this class belong all strong verbs having a medial nasal or liquid + a consonant.
  - a) nasal: *binden* "to bind". No change of vowel.
  - b) liquid: *helfen* "to help". *e* in the plural, *i* in the singular, e.g., *ich hilfe, wir helfen*.
- IV. To this class belong strong verbs whose stems end in a single nasal or liquid, and a few others in which a liquid precedes the root-vowel; e.g., *nemen* "to take", *brechen* "to break". *e* in the plural, *i* in the singular: *ich nime briche, wir nemen brechen*.
- V. To this class belong strong verbs having *e* (in a few cases *i*) in the infinitive, and whose stems end in a single consonant other than a liquid or a nasal; e.g., *sehen* "to see". *e* in the plural, *i* in the singular: *ich sihe, wir sehen*. The words with an *i* in the infinitive (e.g., *sitzen*) have this



vowel throughout the whole present tense; their imperative sing. has usually *-e*, e.g., *sitze!*

- VI. To this class belong the strong verbs having *a* in the infinitive (except those that belong to class VII), e.g., *varn* "to ride", *tragen* "to carry". They have *e* in the 2nd and 3rd singular indicative (umlaut caused by an original *i*-sound in the following syllable). Otherwise the vowel of the infinitive remains throughout the whole present tense: *ich trage, du tregest, wir tragen*. See also §77 e.
- VII. The so-called reduplicating class (See §78). Verbs of this class have *ie* in the preterit. In the infinitives the following vowels occur: *a, â, ei, ô, uo, ou*. These verbs retain the root-vowel of the infinitive unchanged throughout the whole present tense, except for occasional (not regular) umlaut in the 2nd and 3rd singular indicative; e.g., *slâfen* "to sleep": *ich slâfe, er slâfet or slæfet, wir slâfen*.

53. Present tense of the strong verbs: *mîden* "to avoid", *nemen* "to take".

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
Sing. 1	<i>mîde, nîme</i>	<i>mîde, neme</i>	
2	<i>mîdest, nîmest</i>	<i>mîdest, nemest</i>	<i>mît! nîm!</i>
3	<i>mîdet, nîmet</i>	<i>mîde, neme</i>	
Plur. 1	<i>mîden, nemen</i>	<i>mîden, nemen</i>	
2	<i>mîdet, nemet</i>	<i>mîdet, nemet</i>	<i>mîdet! nemet!</i>
3	<i>mîdent, nement</i>	<i>mîden, nemen</i>	

Present participle: *mîdende, nemende*.

54. The rule of syncopy mentioned in §16 c applies also to both the weak and the strong verbs. Furthermore, the 3rd sing. ind. often drops the vowel of the termination. Compare *entouget* (§44, line 4) and *tougt* (ibid., line 5); see *zimt* (§9 b, 2 and 7; §62, 10), *sîht* (§62, 6), *ennimt* (§62, 8).

55. a) The root-vowel *i* of class I of the strong verbs < OHG *i* < Primitive Germanic *i* < IE *ei*.

b) Both MHG *ie* and *iu* of class II developed from IE *eu*. In the Primitive Germanic period this *eu* had changed to *iu* (pronounce *i-u*) when the next syllable contained *i*, *i̇*, or *j*, but remained *eu* otherwise. Later on, but still before the OHG period, the remaining *eu* changed to *eo* (*a-umlaut* or *Brechung*). *iu* was still a diphthong in OHG but became a long unlauded monophthong in MHG, while OHG *eo* had soon changed to *io*, which in its turn became MHG *ie*.

c) Classes III-V had originally *e* in their root-syllable. In Primitive Germanic, however, *e* became *i* under the following circumstances:

1) Before a nasal + consonant. Therefore, class III a has *i* throughout the whole present tense. IE *bhendh-* > MHG *bind-en*.

2) When the next syllable originally contained an *i*, *i̇*, or *j*. Thus, we get the following development of the 2nd and 3rd sing. ind.:

2nd sing. IE *\*nemesi* > Primitive Germanic *\*nimizi* > OHG *nimis*  
(later *nimist*) > MHG *nimest*. (Cf. §13).

3rd sing. IE *\*nemeti* > Primitive Germanic *\*nimidi* > OHG *nimit* >  
MHG *nimet*.

When the following syllable contained no *i*, *i̇*, or *j*, the vowel *e* remained unchanged; e.g.:

3rd plural ind. IE *\*nemonti* > Primitive Germanic *\*nemandi* >  
OHG *nemant* > MHG *nement*.

Due to this rule, we find *e* in the plural of the indicative and in the whole subjunctive. A glance at the OHG paradigm will explain that.

OHG *neman* "to take"

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Sing. 1	<i>nimu</i>	<i>neme</i>
2	<i>nimis(t)</i>	<i>nemês(t)</i>
3	<i>nimit</i>	<i>neme</i>
Plur. 1	<i>nemamês, nemêm</i>	<i>nemêm</i>
2	<i>nemet</i>	<i>nemêt</i>
3	<i>nemant</i>	<i>nemên</i>

d) The *i* (of classes III–V) and *iu* (of class II) in the 1st sing. ind. are not due to the influence of any vowel in the following syllable, but were introduced by analogy from the 2nd and 3rd singular.

56. Present tense of *gân* or *gên* “to go”.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
Sing. 1	<i>gân, gên</i>	<i>gê, gâ</i> (Alem. <i>gange</i> )	
2	<i>gâst, gêst</i>	<i>gêst, gâst</i> ( <i>gangelst</i> )	<i>ganc, gâ, gê</i>
3	<i>gât, gêt</i>	<i>gê, gâ</i> ( <i>gange</i> )	
Plur. 1	<i>gân, gên</i>	<i>gên, gân</i> ( <i>gangen</i> )	
2	<i>gât, gêt</i>	<i>gêt, gât</i> ( <i>ganget</i> )	<i>gât, gêt</i>
3	<i>gânt, gênnt</i>	<i>gên, gân</i> ( <i>gangen</i> )	

Present participle: *gânde, gênnde*.

57. The negative particle *en-* or *-ne* together with the subjunctive of the verb in a dependent clause has the meaning “if not, unless”. Thus, §44, line 3–4: “love is not good, unless it is mutual”. Constructions of this kind occur very often, e.g., *mich enmac getræsten niemen, si entuo (e)z* “nobody can console me, unless she does it”. Note that the word order in this kind of subordinate clauses is the same as in main clauses.

58. In a conditional sentence the subordinate clause which formulates the condition may be expressed in form of a direct question, i.e., by placing the subject after the verb. The conditional and the main clauses often follow one another in simple juxtaposition, e.g., in §17 A d, 3–6. In other instances the conditional and the main clauses are somewhat more strictly coordinated: if the conditional clause comes first, the main clause is introduced by the adverb *sô*, as, e.g., in §32 A, 20 and 24.

However, lines 9–10 of §44 do not constitute a conditional sentence, as is usually believed, but are a sequence of entirely independent sentences.

59. *liebi* (§44, 15) is a form taken by the copyist from the Alemannic dialect. Abstract nouns derived from adjectives and

having no plural, such as MHG *schæne* "beauty" from *schæne* "beautiful", *menege* "multitude" from *manec* "many a", *liebe* "love" from *liep* "dear", *sterke* "strength" from *starc* "strong", entered the *ô*-declension only in MHG. In OHG they had had the termination *-i* throughout the whole singular (*scônî, menigî, liebî, sterkî*). The Alemannic dialect kept these nouns separated from the old *ô*-stems up to the present; compare Alem. *Schöni, Liebi, Höchi* "height" with *Ehr, Buess, Lehr*. An old secondary ending *-în* (cf. OHG *scônîn*) appears in *menigîn* (Kürenberg 7), *vinsterîn* "darkness".

#### 60. Cardinal numerals.

a) *ein* is either a numeral or an indefinite pronoun or indefinite article. When used as indefinite pronoun (meaning "one person, someone; one thing"), its nom. sing. usually appears as *einer, einiu, einez*, e.g., *einez ist mir swære* "one thing hurts me". When used as adjective (numeral, article), it has only one form *ein* for all three genders, e.g., *ein tôre* "a fool", *ein wîse man* "a wise man", *ein anderiu* = G. *eine andere* "another (f.) person"; see also §41. *ein* occurs also in the acc. sing. fem. instead of *eine*. The other cases are taken from the strong declension (see §37), when *ein* is used as indefinite pronoun or article. As a numeral *ein* follows the weak declension, when preceded by the definite article, e.g., *die einen hant* (acc.) "the one hand". The numeral *ein* in attributive position has sometimes the meaning "lone", e.g., *eines friundes minne* (§44, line 3) "the love of one person (without response)".

As a predicative attribute (cf. Paul-Gierach §203) the weak form *eine* has the meaning "alone": see §32 A, line 19, and §44, line 5. In apposition to the genitive of a personal pronoun we find a strong form with the same meaning, e.g., *mîn eines hant* "the hand of me alone". Cf. *mîn selbes* Nib. 335, 3 and §106.

b) The numeral *zwêne* "two" has different forms for each gender in the nom. and acc. cases.

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom. Acc.	<i>zwêne</i>	<i>zwô</i>	<i>zwei</i>
Gen.	<i>zweier, zweiger</i>		
Dat.	<i>zweîn, zweien</i>		

c) Concerning the numeral *drî* see §21.

d) The numerals 4-12 are either indeclinables: *vier, fünf* (*finf*), *sehs, siben, ahte, niun, zehen, einlif* (*eilf*), *zwelf*; or adjectives with one common form for the masculine and feminine gender: *viere, fünve, sehse, sibene, ähte, niune, zehene, zwelve*, and a separate form for the neuter gender: *vieriu, fünviu, sehsiu, sibeniu, ähtiu, zeheniu*.

e) *zweinzec* "twenty", *drîzec* "thirty", *vierzec* "forty", etc., are indeclinable substantives.

f) The numerals 1-19 are usually used attributively. If declined they agree with the counted object in case and gender, e.g., *zwei herzen; hiietet wol der drîer leider alze frîer*. But often they are treated as substantives having the counted object in the gen. plur., e.g., *zwelf küener man* "twelve bold men". In such cases the numeral usually comes after the counted object, e.g., *starker rigele viere* "four strong bolts", *guoter videlære drî* "three good violinists".

### 61. Observations:

a) The expression *ich hân ze vil geladen*, where the object (*mir*) is omitted, = G. *ich habe mir zu viel aufgebürdet* is still used at the present in German dialects, as may be seen from the *Schweizerisches Idiotikon* III, col. 1059.

b) Final *-e* is often elided in poetry if the following word begins with a vowel. Thus, *obe ich* and *ze ihte* in §44, 2, must be read *ob ich* and *zihte*.

c) *hin* in *du sihest hin* (§44, 12) which in modern German is called a separable prefix is an adverb of place indicating a direction with the concrete meaning "away, off, forward" in MHG.

## LESSON VII.

---

62.            *Junger man, wis hôhes muotes*  
                *dur diu reinen wolgemuoten wîp.*  
                *fröwe dich lîbes unde guotes,*  
                *und wirde dînen jungen lîp.*  
5 *ganzer fröide hâst du niht,*  
                *sô man die werdekeit von wîbe an dir niht siht.*  
                *Er hât rehter fröide kleine,*  
                *der si von guoten wîben niht ennimt*

---

### Explanation of words:

- Line 1. **hôher muot** cheerful disposition, high spirits
2. **dur** *prep.* with *acc.* on account of, because of  
**rein** or **reine** *adj.* virtuous, immaculate  
**wolgemuot** and **wol gemuot** *adj.* amiable  
**wîp(b)** *stn* (a) woman in general (as contrasted with **man**)
3. **sich fröwen** *with gen.* to take pleasure in a th., to enjoy  
**lîp** (b) *stn* (a) 1) life; 2) body
4. **wirden** *wo* to make worthy  
**dînen.** See §84 b
5. **ganz** *adj.* entire, complete  
**fröide** = **vröude.** See §32 A, 14 and §2 e
6. **sô** *conj.* if  
**man** *pron.* = G. **man**  
**werdekeit** *stf* (i) nobleness, nobility  
**von** *prep.* with *dat.* (coming) from  
**sehen** *stv* (V) to see. For the form **siht** cf. §54
7. **reht** *adj.* right, true  
**kleine** *with genitive partitive.* See §§32 A, 20 and 43 b
8. **ennimt** = **en-nimt.** See **nemen** §53 and §54

*offenbâr, stille und eine,*  
 10 *und als ez der mâze danne zînt.*  
*dar an gedenke, junger man,*  
*und wirb nâch herzeliebe: dâ gewinnest an.*  
*Ob du es danne niht erwirbest,*  
*du muost doch iemer deste tiurre sîn.*  
 15 *dazt an fröiden niht verdirbest,*

- 
- Line 9.** **offenbâr** (see §17 A c, 2) has two metric stresses and is followed by a cesura. See §§6 c and 43 a. Here **still(e) und eine** forms a unit contrasting **offenbâr**.  
**stille** *adj.* secret, in seclusion. Regarding the **-e** of this word cf. §61 b
- 10.** **und** = G. **und zwar** that is to say  
**als** *conj.* = G. **so wie** according to how  
**mâze** *stf* (ô) moderation, decorum, propriety, mental balance, equipoise. This was regarded as the chief virtue in the ethics of medieval knighthood.  
**zemen** *stv* (IV) to be becoming, to appear decent
- 11.** **gedenken** (*wv*) **an** to think of, to keep in mind. See §66  
**dar an** = G. **daran** instead of **an das**
- 12.** **werben** *stv* (III b) to strive hard; **nâch** *with dat.* for a thing  
**herzeliebe** *stf* (ô) heart-felt love, true love  
**dâ** *adv.* there. It refers, however, to the preceding sentence and may, therefore, be translated as "by that".  
**gewinnest an** *2nd sing. indic. of an gewinnen stv* (III a) to profit by a th.
- 13.** **ob** *conj.* if. Here: but even if  
**erwerben** *stv* (III b) to accomplish one's purpose; **niht erwerben** to fail in one's purpose
- 14.** **muost.** See §§33 f and 63  
**iemer** *adv.* always  
**deste** = G. **desto** all the (more so)  
**tiure** *adj.* valuable, precious, of high personal value. "The experience makes a young man richer whether he succeeds or fails". For the form **tiurre** see §74 c
- 15.** **dazt** = **dazt du**  
**verderben** (*stv* III b) **an** *with dat.* to lose, to be done out of, to have to live without



*daz kumt allez von der frowen dîn.*

*dû wirst alsô wol genuot,*

*daz dû den andern wol behagest, swie sî dir tuot.*

*Ist aber daz dir wol gelînget,*

20 *sô daz ein guot wîb dîn genâde hât,*

*hei waz dir danne frôiden bringet,*

*sô si sunder wer vor dir gestât.*

. . . . .

*von sô rehter herzeliebe muost du frôiden pflegen.*

25 *Sich, nu hab ich dich gelêret,*

Line 16. **komen** *stv* (IV) to come. See §70

**dîn.** See §84 b

17. **werden** *stv* (III b) to become. See §68

**alsô** *adv.* so much, to such a degree

18. **behagen** *wv* to please

**tuon** *with dat.* to behave, to act with (a person)

19. **aber** *adv.* on the other hand

**gelingen** *stv* (III a), *impersonal verb*: **mir gelînget** I succeed

20. **genâde** *stf* (ô) mercy

**dîn** *gen. of du* "you" depending on **genâde hân** "to have mercy on."

21. **hei** hey; exclamation of delight

**waz** *pron. with gen.* how much (of), how many; **waz** in this sentence is accusative. The entire verse 22 is the subject of verse 21.

**bringen** to bring. See §69

22. **sunder** *prep. with acc.* without

**wer** or **were** *stf* (ô) resistance. See §72

**gestât.** See §§66 and 71

24. **pflegen** *stv* (V) *with gen.* to possess, to have. See §65 c

25. **sich** *imperative of sehen.* Cf. §4 b

**hab** = **habe** (I) have. See §67

**gelêret** *p.p. of lêren* *wv* to teach. See §64



*des ich selber leider nie gepflac.  
 ungelücke mir verkêret,  
 daz ein sælig man volenden mac.  
 doch tuot mir der gedinge wol  
 30 und der wille, den ich hân, daz ichz noch erwerben sol.*

Walther von der Vogelweide.

From Fridrich Pfaff, *Die große Heidelberger Liederhandschrift*, col. 436-437. Cf. Wilmanns-Michels, *l. c.*, p. 328-329.

Line 26. **des**. See §12 c

**nie** *adv.* never, at no time

**gepflac** *1st sing. preterit of (ge)pfliegen stv (V) with gen. to possess, to enjoy.* See §§65 c and 66

27. **ungelücke** *stn (ja)* bad luck, misfortune. See §§73 and 75 c  
**verkêren** *ww* to distort, to twist the wrong way, to transform into the contrary

28. **daz**. See §12 c

**sælic** (g) *adj.* lucky

**vole'nden** *ww G. vollenden* to complete, to accomplish

29. **gedinge** *wm* hope, trust  
**wol tuon** to give pleasure

30. **ichz** = **ich ez**  
**sol**. See §63

### 63. The future tense.

In MHG there is no special form for the future. The future simple is generally expressed by the present tense form often supplied with an adverbial modification, such as, *danne, morgen*, etc. Sometimes periphrastic expressions are used, e.g., the auxiliary verbs *sol, wil, muoz* + infinitive. But often it is doubtful whether such combinations are really periphrases of the future tense. However, the future meaning of lines 14, 24, and 30 in §62 is fairly obvious.

The modern German periphrase by means of *werden* + infinitive was not yet known in classical MHG. It appeared only toward the end of the MHG period.

## 64. The periphrastic perfect.

Combined with the present of *hân* or *sîn*, the past participle is used to form a periphrastic perfect tense, e.g., *nu hab ich dich gelêret* — now I have taught you.

Similarly a pluperfect is formed with the preterit of *hân* or *sîn*. Cf. §113, lines 1 and 16.

65. The preterit tense of stv IV and V (*nemen; geben, sehen*).

		a) INDICATIVE		b) SUBJUNCTIVE		
		IV	V	IV	V	
Sing.	1	<i>nam</i>	<i>gap</i>	<i>sach</i>	<i>næme</i>	<i>gæbe</i>
	2	<i>næme</i>	<i>gæbe</i>	<i>sæhe</i>	<i>næmest</i>	<i>gæbest</i>
	3	<i>nam</i>	<i>gap</i>	<i>sach</i>	<i>næme</i>	<i>gæbe</i>
Plur.	1	<i>nâmen</i>	<i>gâben</i>	<i>sâhen</i>	<i>næmen</i>	<i>gæben</i>
	2	<i>nâmet</i>	<i>gâbet</i>	<i>sâhet</i>	<i>næmet</i>	<i>gæbet</i>
	3	<i>nâmen</i>	<i>gâben</i>	<i>sâhen</i>	<i>næmen</i>	<i>gæben</i>

c) The only difference between stv IV and stv V lies in the formation of the past participle where verbs of class IV have *o* and those of class V *e* in the stem-syllable, e.g., *genomen, gegeben, gesehen*.

*pflegen* has two forms of the past participle: *gepflogen* and *gepflegen*.

d) Note the difference of length of the stem-vowels between indicative sing. 1 and 3 in contrast with all the rest. Furthermore, note the identity of the stem-vowel in the 2nd sing. indicative and the whole subjunctive. Compare with the OHG forms:

Indicative: *gab, gâbi, gab; gâbum, gâbut, gâbun*.

Subjunctive: *gâbi, gâbis(i), gâbi; gâbîm, gâbît, gâbîn*.

Past participle: *gigeban, ginoman*.

66. The prefix *ge-* is used not only to form the past participle as in modern German. It may also be added to any form of the verb, even to the infinitive. Such a compound expresses

the verbal act with a *perfective* value. Many Germanic and Slavic languages have some kind of a *perfective aspect* in their verbal system. But in almost every language the perfective aspect is of different character. In MHG perfective verbs often indicate that the original meaning of the verb is limited to a short moment, or they express the beginning of an action or the entrance into a state (*ingressive*), while the unprefixd verb expresses the duration of this action or state (*imperfective* or *durative aspect*). Thus, *stân* means "to stand, to be standing", but *gestân* "to begin to stand". *gestât* in §62, line 22 may best be translated "she appears". In negative sentences the prefix *ge-* is very often used to stress the negation, e.g., *nie gepflac* in §62, line 26. But also in positive sentences the function of the prefix *ge-* may be merely to emphasize a statement or a command, e.g., *dar an gedenke* (§62, line 11).

#### 67. *haben* "to have".

Beside the form *hân* given in §26, there is also a form *haben* with a present *habe, habest, habet, haben, habet, habent*, etc. Cf. §50. But this form very often has the meaning "to hold". *hab ich* (§62, line 25) instead of *habe ich* shows elision of the *-e*. Cf. §61 b.

#### 68. *werden*.

This verb belongs to class III b of the strong verbs. But the singular of the present indicative is: *ich wirde, du wirst, er wirt* and *wirdet*. Otherwise its conjugation is regular. Past participle: *worden* (without the prefix *ge-*).

#### 69. *bringen*.

The present tense is like that of a strong verb of class III a. But the preterit is *brâhte* (weak) and the past participle *brâht* (without the prefix *ge-*).

#### 70. *komen* or *kömen* "to come".

This verb belongs to class IV of the strong verbs, but shows

irregular forms due to phonetic changes. The verb had been *queman* (sing. 1 *quimu*) in OHG. In the sound-combination *qu* (= *kw*) the *w* had disappeared after changing the following vowel somewhat. Thus, in MHG we find these forms for the present indicative:

Sing.: 1 *kume, kome*; 2 *kum(e)st, küm(e)st, kom(e)st*; 3 *kum(e)t küm(e)t, kom(e)t*.

Plur.: 1 *komen, kumen*; 2 *komet, kumet*; 3 *koment, kument*.

Past participle: *komen* (without the prefix *ge-*).

Preterit: *quam quâmen* or *kam kâmen* or *kom kômen*.

#### 71. *stân* or *stên* "to stand".

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
Sing. 1	<i>stân, stên</i>	<i>stâ, stê</i> (Alem. <i>stande</i> )	
2	<i>stâst, stêst</i>	etc., cf. §56.	<i>stant, stâ, stê</i>
3	<i>stât, stêt</i>		
Plur. 1	<i>stân, stên</i>		
2	<i>stât, stêt</i>		<i>stât, stêt</i>
3	<i>stânt, stênt</i>		

Present participle: *stânde, stênde*.

Past participle: *gestanden*, sometimes *gestân*.

72. *ô*-stems with a short root-vowel followed by *r* or *l* drop final *-e*, especially in the nom. and acc. sing. Thus, we find *wer* instead of *were* in §62, 22.

#### 73. The *ja*-declension of neuter nouns.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
Nom.	<i>bilde</i> "picture"	<i>gelücke</i> "luck"	<i>bilde</i>
Gen.	<i>bildes</i>	<i>gelückes</i>	<i>bilde</i>
Dat.	<i>bilde</i>	<i>gelücke</i>	<i>bilden</i>
Acc.	<i>bilde</i>	<i>gelücke</i>	<i>bilde</i>

#### 74. Formation of the degrees of comparison.

a) The comparative degree of adjectives is formed by adding

the suffix *-er*, and the superlative degree by adding the suffix *-est*. Where the stem-vowel is susceptible to umlaut, it is usually (not always) umlauted. Compare:

*kreftic* "strong" — *kreftiger* — *kreftigest*; *der kreftigste*  
*grôz* "great" — *græzer* — *græzest*; *der græzeste, græste*  
*lanc* "long" — *langer* and *lenger*  
*starc* "strong" — *sterker*.

b) The vowel *e* of the superlative degree is often dropped, especially in the inflected forms.

c) The suffix *-er* of the comparative degree had developed from *-ere* (< OHG *-iro*). But when the stem of the adjective ended in *r*, *l*, *n* the old suffix *-ere* could change to *-re*. Thus, the comparative degree of *tiure* is either *tiurer* or *tiurre* (§62, 14).

d) Comparative and superlative forms are strong and weak. Only the nom. sing. of the comparative degree is always *-er* (except for the words mentioned under c), e.g., *er ist lenger* and *der, diu, daz lenger*.

### 75. Observations:

a) Note short *du*, *si* in unaccented position, but long *dû*, *sî* where these pronouns have emphatic meaning. See the contrast *dû* and *sî* in §62, 18.

b) Note the rhythm of the following verses:

9. ˘×˘|˘(×)×˘×  
 13. ˘×(×)˘×˘×˘×  
 17. ˘×˘×˘×˘  
 18. ×˘×˘×˘×˘×|×˘×˘  
 19. ˘××˘×˘×˘×  
 20. ×˘×˘×˘×˘×˘

c) The word *g(e)lücke* "luck" (*ungelücke* "bad luck") was originally foreign to the Upper German dialects (Alemannic, Bavarian). It came from the northwestern part of Germany in the wake of the civilization of medieval knighthood. In genuine Upper German words

*u* before *ck* could not be umlauted. The genuine Alemannic word for "luck" was *geve'lle stn* (*ja*).

The occurrence of *ungelücke* in this text (written by a copyist in the Alemannic city of Zürich shortly after 1300) combined with the fact that also *liebe* in *herzeliebe* (§62, 12), as we have learned in §59, is foreign to the Alemannic dialect, proves the existence of a literary language relatively independent of the local dialects.

## LESSON VIII.

---

76. *Herzeliebe frowe mir,  
got gebe dir hiute und iemer guot!  
kunde ich wol gesprechen dir,  
des hete ich willeclîchen muot.*  
5 *waz sol ich dir sagen mê,  
wan daz dir nieman holder ist danne ich? dâ von ist mir wê.  
Si verkêrent mir, daz ich*
- 

### Explanation of words:

- Line 1. **herzeliep** (b) *adj.* very dear. Modified by **mir**
2. **hiute** *adv.* today  
**guot** *stn* (a) blessings. See §82 b
3. **ge-sprechen** *stv* (IV) *with dat. of the person* to talk to a person, to address a person  
**wol** *adv. of guot* well, in the proper way. It apparently indicates that the poet would like to find an even better expression than just **herzeliebe**.  
**kunde**. See §§80 c and 82 a
4. **hete**. See §§81 and 82 a  
**willeclîch** *adj.* eager  
**des** *gen. of the demonstrative daz* depending on **willeclîchen muot** for that. See §82 a
5. **sagen** *vw* to say
6. **holt** (d) **sîn** *with dat.* to be fond of, to like  
**danne** *conj. of comparison* than  
**dâ von** = G. *davon* from that  
**mir ist wê** I suffer
7. **verkêren** *vw with dat.* to find fault with a person (for)

*sô nidere wende mînen sanc.*

*daz si niht versinnent sich,*

10 *waz minne sî, des haben undanc!*

*die getraf diu liebe nie,*

*die dâ nâch dem guote und nâch der schœne minnent: wê, wie  
minnent die!*

*Ich vertrage, als ich vertruoc*

*und iemer mêre wil vertragen.*

15 *dû bist schœne und hâst genuoc.*

Line 8. **nidere** *adv.* low, humble (See §87 a). Here: to a person of low rank. In this poem the poet is addressing a girl of lower social rank and not a noble-woman. Cf. Nib. 47, 1

**wenden** *vv* to direct, to address

**sanc** (-ges) *stm* (a) song

**mînen**. See §84 b

9. **sich versinnen** *stv* (III a) to understand, to realize

10. **des** *gen.* of **daz** for that.

**undanc** *stm* (a) indignation. Cf. §43 c. **haben undanc** is an exclamation of curse: confound them! See §82 b

**minne** when contrasted with **liebe** means: love(-affair), amour. See §82 e

11. **ge-treffen** *stv* (IV) to hit, to meet

**liebe** in contrast with **minne** means: true love, being in love; **liebe** is here treated as if it were a person

12. **guot** *stn*. See §32 A, 14

**minnen nâch** *with dat.* to make love for the sake of

**schoene** *stf* (ô) beauty. See §59

**wê** *exclamation* oh my! gracious!

13. **vertragen** *stv* (VI) to know how to take (a reproach; referring to lines 7-8), to be indulgent (toward). The object is omitted. Therefore: **ich vertrage** I don't care

14. **iemer mêre** G. **immerdar** for ever

15. **schoene** *adj.* beautiful

**genuoc** (g) *adj.* neuter enough, very much (cf. §43 b). **du hâst**

**genuoc** you are rich enough; referring to **guote** in line 12.

His girl, too, is both rich and beautiful in his eyes.



*waz mugen si mir dâ von gesagen?*

*swaz si redent, ich bin dir holt*

*und nâme din' glesin vingerlîn für einer küniginne golt.*

*Bî der schæne ist dicke haz.*

20 *ze der schæne nieman sî ze gâch.*

*liebe tuot dem herzen baz.*

*diu schæne gât der liebe nâch.*

*liebe machet schæne wîp.*

*des enmac diu schæne niht getuon: si machet niemer lieben lîp.*

16. **ge-sagen** *ww* to say, to tell. See §§66 and 85 a. He claims that he alone is the best judge of the qualities of his girl.
17. **reden** *ww* to speak, to say
18. **nemen** (*stv* IV) . . . **für** *with acc.* to prefer (a th.) to (a th.).  
See §82 a  
**glesin** *adj.* of glass  
**vingerlîn** *stn* (a) (finger-)ring  
**küniginne** *stf* (ô) queen  
**golt** (-des) *stn* (a) gold. See §85 b
19. **bî** *prep. with dat.* with, near to, close to  
**haz** (*gen. hazzes*) *stm* (a) cf. G. **häßlich** ugliness
20. **ze** *prep. with dat.* to, toward  
**gâch** (**gâher**) *adj.* impetuous, hasty, rash; **ze gâch** too hasty, too impetuous; **gâch sîn** *with dat.* to strive eagerly for a th.  
See §82 b
21. **baz** *adv. comparative of wol* better; **wol tuon** *with dat.* to do good, to give pleasure to a p.
22. **nâch gân** *with dat.* G. **nachstehen** to be inferior to, to rank below, to be below (a p., a th.)
23. **machen** *ww* to make  
**schæne wîp** may be either acc. plur. with uninflected adjective or acc. sing. Translation: "Love makes a woman (or: women) beautiful."
24. **ge-tuon.** *Infinitive.* See §§66 and 85 a  
**niemer** *adv.* never, at no time  
**liep** (b) *adj.* lovely, dear, agreeable  
**lîp** *stm* (a) Here: person

- 25 *Hâst du triuwe und stætekeit,*  
*sô bin ich des ân angest gar,*  
*daz mir iemer herzeleit*  
*von dînen schulden widervar.*  
*hâst aber du der zweier niht,*  
 30 *sone müezest du mir niemer werden. ôwê danne, ob daz geschiht.*  
 Walther von der Vogelweide.

From Fridrich Pfaff, *l.c.*, col. 459-460.

Cf. Wilmanns-Michels, *l.c.*, pp. 209-211.

- Line 25. Lines 25-30 are the girl's answer  
**triuwe** *stf* (ô) sincerity  
**stætekeit** *stf* (i) faithfulness, fidelity
26. **des** *genitive*: cf. G. **des-halb** referring to lines 27-28  
**ân** *prep.* with *acc.* without  
**angest** *stf* (i) fear  
**gar** *adv.* entirely, absolutely
27. **iemer** *adv.* ever, at any time  
**herzeleit** (-des) *stn* (a) bitter grief, great distress
28. **von dînen schulden** on account of you. See §84  
**widervarn** *stv* (VI) to happen (to a p.). Cf. §54
30. **sone** = **sô ne**. See §83  
**müezest**. See §§79 a and 82 d  
**werden** with *dat.* to fall to a p.'s share or lot  
**ôwê** = **wê** (line 12)  
**geschehen** *stv* (V) to happen, to come to pass

77. The preterit tense of class VI of the strong verbs: *tragen*, *varn*.

	a) INDICATIVE	b) SUBJUNCTIVE
Sing.	1 <i>truoc</i> <i>vuor</i>	<i>trüege</i> <i>vüere</i>
	2 <i>trüege</i> <i>vüere</i>	<i>trüegest</i> <i>vüerest</i>
	3 <i>truoc</i> <i>vuor</i>	<i>trüege</i> <i>vüere</i>
Plur.	1 <i>truogen</i> <i>vuoren</i>	<i>trüegen</i> <i>vüeren</i>
	2 <i>truoget</i> <i>vuoret</i>	<i>trüeget</i> <i>vüeret</i>
	3 <i>truogen</i> <i>vuoren</i>	<i>trüegen</i> <i>vüeren</i>

c) Past participle: *getragen, gevarn*. See *geladen* §44, 16.

d) In contrast to classes I-V, the verbs of class VI have the same stem-vowel (*uo*) throughout the singular (except the 2nd person) and the plural of the indicative.

e) A few verbs of this class have *e* as stem-vowel in the infinitive and the present tense. This *e* had been umlauted from original *a*, because of *j* that had originally been inserted between stem and ending of those forms; e.g., *heven* or *heben* "to raise, to lift" (Gothic *hafjan*), *swern* "to swear" (OHG *swerien*, Old English *swerian* < Primitive Germanic \**swarjan*). Except for the infinitive and the present tense, these verbs are conjugated like *tragen* or *varn*: preterit *huop huoben, swuor swuoren*; past participle *gehaben, geswarn*.

f) *stân* "to stand" (§71) forms its preterit and past participle according to class VI of the strong verbs: *stuont stuonden, gestanden* (sometimes: *gestân*). The original infinitive \**standen* (Gothic *standan*) had been lost and replaced by *stân*.

### 78. The preterit tense of class VII of the strong verbs.

a) This class is called "reduplicating class" (§52) because in Primitive Germanic its preterit tense was formed by reduplication, i.e., by putting before the stem a so-called reduplicating syllable consisting of the first consonant of the stem and the vowel *e*. Cf. Gothic *haldan* "to hold", *haitan* "to call", *slêpan* "to sleep" with their preterit forms: *he-hald, he-hait, se-slêp*.

b) There is no more reduplication extant in MHG. Verbs of this class have the diphthong *ie* throughout the whole indicative and subjunctive of the preterit, whatever their stem-vowel may be in the infinitive. The stem-vowel of the past participle is always the same as in the infinitive.

INFINITIVE	PRETERIT	PAST PARTICIPLE
<i>vallen</i> "to fall"	<i>viel vielen</i>	<i>gefallen</i>
<i>halten</i> "to hold"	<i>hielt hielten</i>	<i>gehalten</i>
<i>behalten</i> (§32 A, 15)	<i>behielt</i>	<i>behalten</i>
<i>slâfen</i> "to sleep"	<i>slief sliefen</i>	<i>geslâfen</i>
<i>scheiden</i> "to separate"	<i>schiet schieden</i>	<i>gescheiden</i>
<i>stôzen</i> (§9 b, 3 and 6)	<i>stiez</i>	<i>gestôzen</i>
<i>ruofen</i> "to call"	<i>rief</i>	<i>geruofen</i>
<i>loufen</i> "to run"	<i>lief</i>	<i>geloufen</i>

79. *müezen* (§33 f).

a) Present subjunctive: *müeze, müezest, müeze; müezen, müezet, müezen.*

b) Preterit indicative: Sing. 1 *muose* or *muoste*, 2 *muosest muostest*, 3 *muose muoste*; Plural 1 *muosen (muosin) muosten*, 2 *muoset muostet*, 3 *muosen (muosin) muosten.*

c) Preterit subjunctive: Sing. 1 *müese müeste*, 2 *müesest müestest*, etc., with the same terminations as the indicative.

80. *kunnen* "to know how" (§33 b).

a) Present subjunctive:

Sing. 1 *kunne künne*, 2 *kunnest künnest*, 3 *kunne künne*;  
Plural like indicative.

b) Preterit indicative:

Sing. 1 and 3 *kunde konde*, 2 *kundest kondest*;  
Plural 1 and 3 *kunden konden*, 2 *kundet kondet.*

c) Preterit subjunctive:

Sing. 1 and 3 *kunde* or *künde*, 2 *kundest kündest*, etc.

81. *hân* "to have" (§§26 and 67)

a) Present subjunctive: *habe, habest, habe*, etc.

## b) Preterit indicative:

Sing. 1 and 3 *hâte, hæte, hete, het, hête, hêt, hiete, hiet*;

2 *hâtest, hætest, hetest, hêtest, hietest*; but also: *hæte, hiete*.

Plural 1 and 3 *hâten, hæten, heten*, etc.; 2 *hâtet, hætet, hetet*, etc.

c) Preterit subjunctive: *hæte, hete, hête, hiete*, etc.

## 82. Use of the subjunctive.

In MHG, especially in subordinate clauses, the subjunctive is used more than in modern German.

a) The preterit subjunctive is used to designate a statement or condition contrary to fact. See §76, 18: "And I would prefer your glass-ring to the gold of a queen." In conditional sentences of this kind both the main clause and the subordinate clause have the subjunctive. See §76, 3-4: *kunde . . . , des hete ich . . .* "If I knew how to address you in the proper way, I would be very eager to do that."

b) The 3rd person (sing. and plur.) of the present subjunctive may be used in an adhortative sense, i.e., for a command or a wish addressed to a third person; e.g., §76, 2: *got gebe . . .* "May God today and always bestow his blessings upon you"; *ibid.*, 20: *nieman sî ze gâch* "Nobody must (should) strive too eagerly (for beauty)." The subject of such sentences need not be expressed if it is clearly understood; e.g., *ibid.*, 10: *des haben undanc* "May they have (my) indignation" = "confound them!"

c) A wish is expressed by the preterit subjunctive when its realization is impossible or improbable, e.g., *gesæhe ich si* "if I only could see her".

d) If the wish can be realized and is close to a command (see b), the present subjunctive is used: *ich bite si nihtes mêre wan daz si mich grüezen schône* (§86, 16) "I ask them for nothing else than that they greet me nicely." However, if such a wish is free from any adhortative sense, the present subjunctive of

the verb *müezen* (§79 a) is employed: *sone müezest du mir niemer werden* (§76, 30) "may you never fall to my lot", *lange müeze ich leben* (§86, 24) "may I live long".

e) In subordinate clauses (also in indirect discourse), as a rule, the present subjunctive is employed when the verb of the main clause is a present form, but the preterit subjunctive when the verb of the main clause is a preterit form, e.g., *daz si niht versinnent sich, waz minne sî* (§76, 10) "that they do not understand what love is". Cf. §120, 21.

f) For another use of the subjunctive in a subordinate clause see §57.

83. The negative particle *en-* (§29) appears also in the forms *-ne* and *-n* affixed to a preceding pronoun or particle, e.g., *sone* (§76, 30) = *sô-ne*.

The original form of the negative particle had been *ne* (<OHG *ni*). This particle *ne*, when unaccented, could be reduced to a mere *n* which under certain circumstances could develop to a new *en*.

#### 84. Possessive adjectives.

a) Of the genitive forms mentioned in §31 *e ir* "her; their" usually cannot be declined: *ir friunt* (nom. and acc. sing.) "her, their friend", gen. sing. *ir friundes*, dat. sing. *ir friunde*, dat. plur. *ir friunden*.

b) The forms *mîn, dîn, sîn, unser, iuwer* are used as adjectives or nouns and follow the strong declension (§37) even when preceded by the definite article, e.g., *dinen lîp* (§62, 4) acc. sing. "your body", *mînen sanc* (§76, 8) acc. sing., *von dînen schulden* (§76, 28) dat. plur. The uninflected forms are used for the nom. sing. of all genders and for the acc. sing. neuter. The rules given in §41 apply also here, e.g., *von der frowen dîn* (§62, 16) where *dîn* stands for a dative.

The dat. sing. masc. and neuter is *mînem, dînem, sînem* and *mîme, dîme, sîme*; dat. sing. fem. *mîner*, etc., and *mînre*, etc.

## 85. Observations:

a) Infinitives with the prefix *ge-* (cf. §66) occur very often in connection with the auxiliary verb *mac mugen*, e.g., §76, 16 (*gesagen*) and 24 (*getuon*).

b) Note the word order in line 18 *für einer küniginne golt* "before the gold of a queen": *für* modifies *golt*; the genitive *einer küniginne*, also modifying *golt*, stands between *für* and *golt*, and for that reason *golt* is left without an article.

## LESSON IX.

---

86. *Ir sult sprechen willekomen:  
der mære bringet, daz bin ich.  
allez daz ir habent vernomen,  
dast gar ein wint: nu frâgent mich.  
5 ich wil miete,  
und wirt mîn lôn iht guot,  
ich sage lîhte, daz iu sanfte tuot.*

---

### Explanation of words:

- Line 1. **willekomen** welcome. The poet appears in the rôle of a messenger. He brings a message for which he expects adequate reward.
2. **der** *nom. sing. masc.*  
**mære** *stm (ja)*, cf. §73, mostly used in the plural (see line 10) message, news, story
3. **vernemen** *stv (IV)* to learn, to hear. (*Present: vernime, vernemen; preterit: vernam, vernâmen, vernæme; past participle: vernomen*)
4. **dast** = **daz ist**  
**wint** (-des) *stm (a)* wind. The meaning is: "That is of little importance."  
**frâgen** *ww* to ask questions. See §97 a
5. **miete** *stf (ô)* remuneration, reward. Messengers used to get a special reward for good news. The poet thinks that he, too, is entitled to such a reward. Cf. **botenmiete** Nib. 562, 3 and 563, 4; **botenbrôt** Nib. 559, 1; 1240, 3; 1314, 2; 1315. See §97 c
6. **lôn** *stm (i)* remuneration, reward  
**iht**. Cf. §44, 2
7. **lîhte** *adv.* possibly, perhaps; **ich sage lîhte** I may (might) say  
**sanfte** *adv.* = **wol**. See §87 b; **sanfte tuon** *with dat.* to do good, to give pleasure to a p.



*sehet waz man mir êren biete.*

*Ich wil tiutschen frowen sagen*

10 *solhiu mære, daz si deste baz*

*al der werlte suln behagen.*

*âne grôze miete tuon ich daz.*

*ze rîcheme lône*

*sint si mir ze hêre.*

15 *sô bin ich gefüege und bitte si nihtes mêre*

Line 8. **waz . . . êren** belong together. Cf. §62, 21

**êre** *stf* (ô) honorable mention, appreciation. Here meant in form of a good-sized donation. The poet expects this reward from the gentlemen. Cf. line 16 for what he expects from the ladies.

**bieten** *stv* (II b) to offer. See §§82 d and 95 b

9. **tiutsch** *adj.* German

**mære sagen** *with dat.* to say things about a p. Cf. G. **jemandem etwas nachsagen** and MHG **sprechen** (Nib. 133, 4) and **jehen** (Nib. 288, 3). At the same time, however, the poet plays also with the construction **jemandem etwas sagen**. He is speaking of the ladies and to them.

10. **solch** *adj.* such (a). See §90

**si** *pron.* referring to **frowen**

11. **al**. See §42

**werlt** *stf* (i) world, people

**suln**. See §93

14. **mir** in my opinion, in my judgment

**hêre** *adj.* of high rank. Translation: "Even for a rich reward they are too high", i.e., "even the highest reward (in form of payment) would be inadequate."

15. **sô** thus, therefore

**gefüege** *adj.* accommodating

**biten** *stv* (V) *with gen.* to ask for. See §52. The forms of this verb are: **bite** or **bitte**, **biten**, **bat**, **bâten**, **bæte**, **gebeten**.

Cf. §117

**nihtes** *gen. of niht*. See §29; **nihtes mêre** (see §88 b) nothing else

- wan daz si mich grüezen schône.*  
*Tiutsche man sint wol gezogen.*  
*als engel sint diu wîb getân.*  
*swer si schildet, der ist betrogen.*  
 20 *ich enkan sîn anders niht verstân.*  
*tugent und reine minne,*  
*swer die suochen wil,*  
*der sol komen in unser lant: dâ ist wunne vil.*  
*lange müeze ich leben dar inne.*  
 25 *Ich hân lande vil gesehen*

- Line 16. **grüezen** *vv* to greet. See §82 d  
**schône** *adv.* of **schœne**. See §87 b
17. **ziehen** *stv* (II b) to bring up, to educate. See §95 b; **wol gezogen** well-bred
18. **engel** *stm* (a) angel. See §16 c  
**getân sîn** to be of the kind, of the quality of (**als**), to be such as
19. **schelden** *stv* (III b) to belittle, to depreciate, to berate  
**betriegen** *stv* (II a) to deceive, to mislead. See §95 a
20. **sîn** *gen.* on account of **niht**, referring to **swer** in line 19  
**anders** *adv.* otherwise  
**verstân** to understand. Conjugated like **stân** (§§71 and 77 f):  
**verstân, verstuont verstuonden, verstanden**
21. **tugent** (d) *stf* (i) good personal quality. See §89
22. **suochen** *vv* to seek, to go in search of
23. **sol.** See §93  
**lant** (-des) *stm* (a) land, country. Cf. §16 b  
**dâ** *adv.* here  
**wunne** *stf* (ô) great pleasure, glee, bliss  
**vil.** See §36; **wunne vil** = **vil wunne**
24. **lange** *adv.* long. See §87 a  
**leben** *vv* to live. See §82 d  
**dar inne** *adv.* G. **hierin** in(side) this, in(side) it

- und nam der besten gerne war.  
 übel müeße mir geschehen,  
 kunde ich ie mîn herze bringen dar,  
 daz ime wolde wol gevallen  
 30 frömder sitte.  
 waz hulfe mich, ob ich unrehte stritte?  
 tiutschiu zuht gât vor in allen.  
 Von der Elbe unz an den Rîn  
 und wider unz in Ungerlant

- 
- Line 26. **war nemen** *with gen.* to pay attention to, to look out for  
**gerne** *adv.* on purpose, deliberately  
**beste.** See §88 a. Here **der besten** means "the noblest people", both ladies and gentlemen. Translation: "I made it a point to look for the noblest ones."
27. **übel** *stn* (a) evil, harm  
**müeße.** Cf. §82 d
28. **kunde.** Cf. §82 a  
**dar** *adv.* (taken up by **daz** in line 29) to that point (that)
29. **wolde.** See §§92 and 82 a  
**gefallen** *stv* (VII) to please, to appeal
30. **frömde** *adj.* foreign. See §97 b  
**sitte** = site *stm* (ja) customs, habits. See §17 B
31. **waz** *pron.* what. See §91 a  
**helfen** *stv* (III b) *with acc.* to profit, to benefit, to be useful;  
**waz hulfe mich** what would it profit me? what would I gain? See §96  
**unrehte** *adv.* See §§24, 1, 43 c and 87 a  
**striten** *stv* (I a) to fight; **unrehte striten** to fight for something that is wrong. See §94. **stritte** = strite
32. **vor gân** *with dat.* to excel, to surpass, to eclipse
33. **Elbe** *stf* (ô) (the river) Elbe  
**unz an** or **unz in** (un)to  
**Rîn** *stm* (a) the Rhine
34. **wider** *adv.* again  
**Ungerlant** *stn* (a) Hungary

- 35 *sô mugen wol die besten sîn,  
die ich in der werlte hân bekant.  
kan ich schouwen  
guot gelæze und den lib,  
sem mir got, sô swiære ich wol, daz dâ diu wib*  
40 *bezzer sint danne anderswâ die frowen.*

Walther von der Vogelweide.

From Fridrich Pfaff, *l.c.*, col. 465.

Cf. Wilmanns-Michels, *l.c.*, pp. 229-232.

- Line 35. *sô demonstrative adv.*, not to be translated, employed to emphasize the territory indicated in the two previous lines and to preserve for it the claim of having "the noblest". Cf. Nib. 333, 3
- wol adv.* without any doubt, positively, certainly  
*mugen . . . sîn* may justly be
36. *bekennen* *vw* to become acquainted with, to come in contact with. *Past participle: bekant.* Translation: "Positively only in the territory extending from the Elbe to the Rhine and, in the other direction, to Hungary are there people who may justly claim to be the noblest with whom I have come in contact in the world."
37. *schouwen* *vw* to view, to inspect, to examine, to judge
38. *gelæze stn (ja)* behavior
39. *sem mir got (helfe)* solemn declaration — so help me God!  
*swern stv (VI)* to confirm by oath. See §77 e  
*dâ adv.* here
40. *bezzer adj.* better. See §88 a  
*anderswâ adv.* elsewhere. In lines 39 and 40 the adverbs *dâ* and *anderswâ* are contrasted with each other. One is tempted to see a corresponding contrast also between *wib* and *frowen*. If this is correct *wib* means "women in general (both of high and low rank)" and *frowen* only "noble-women, ladies of the aristocracy".

## 87. Formation of adverbs.

- a) Adverbs are derived from adjectives by adding the vowel

-e, e.g., *lanc* adj. *lange* adv., *unreht* adj. *unrehte* adv., *hôch* adj. *hôhe* adv., *nider* adj. *nidere* adv.

b) The adjectives mentioned in §37 b, having -e already, cannot add another -e. Thus: *kleine* adj. *kleine* adv., *lîhte* adj. *lîhte* adv. However, the adverbs of these dissyllabic adjectives never have umlaut and it is its absence which characterizes them.

*senfte* adj. *sanfte* adv.  
*schæne* adj. *schône* adv.  
*herte* "hard" adj. *harte* adv.  
*veste* "firm" adj. *vaste* adv.  
*süeze* "sweet" adj. *suoze* adv.

Polysyllabic words keep the umlaut of the adjectives also in the adverb, e.g., *edele* "noble, gentle" adj. *edele* adv.

c) In OHG the adverb had ended in -o. That is the reason why dissyllabic adverbs have no umlaut in MHG.

d) The adverbs *gar* "entirely", *vil* "much, very", *lîtzel* and *wênic* (*wêne*) "little, not much, not very", *genuoc* "enough" are petrified accusative (sing. neuter) cases.

e) The uninflected form of the adjective put into the comparative or superlative degree is used as the corresponding adverb. In these forms, too, the adverb has no umlaut. Examples:

*hôhe hôher hôhest*  
*lange langer langest*  
*schône schöner schönest.*

f) *wol* is the adverb of *guot*.

### 88. Irregular comparison.

a) A few adjectives form their comparative and superlative from a stem different from that of their positive degree:

POSITIVE DEGREE	COMPARATIVE DEGREE	SUPERLATIVE DEGREE
<i>guot</i> "good"	<i>bezzer</i> "better"	<i>bezzezt, beste</i> "best"
<i>iibel</i> "evil, bad"	<i>wirser</i> "worse"	<i>wirsest, wir(se)ste</i> "worst"
<i>lützel</i> "little, small"	<i>minner, minre</i>	<i>minnest, min(ne)ste</i>
<i>nichel</i> "big, great"	<i>mêre, mêrer</i> <i>mêrre, merre</i>	<i>meiste.</i>

To the comparative *êrer, êrre, erre* "earlier, previous, former" (derived from the adverb *êr /ê/* "previously") and superlative *êrest, êrste* "first" there is no adjective in the positive degree. See under b.

b) Adverbs.

COMPARATIVE DEGREE		SUPERLATIVE DEGREE
Adjectives	Adverbs	Adverbs
<i>bezzer</i>	<i>baz</i>	<i>beste</i>
<i>wirser</i>	<i>wirs</i>	<i>wirsest, wirste</i>
<i>minner</i>	<i>min, minner</i> <i>minre</i> "less"	<i>minnest, minste</i> "least"
<i>mêre</i>	<i>mê</i> ( <i>mêr</i> ), <i>mêre</i> "more"	<i>meist, meiste</i> "most"
<i>êrer, êrre</i>	<i>ê</i> (rarely <i>êr</i> ) "previously"	<i>êr(e)st, êrste</i>

89. *tugent* is a feminine *i*-stem (§18 b), but without umlaut.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	} <i>tugent</i>	<i>tugende</i>
Acc.		
Gen.	<i>tugende, tugent</i>	<i>tugende</i>
Dat.	<i>tugende, tugent</i>	<i>tugenden</i>

90. *solch* "such", *welch* "which" are declined like strong adjectives. Their inflected forms are: *solher solhiu solhez, welher welhiu welhez*.

91. *wer* "who", *waz* "what".

a) Sing. Nom.	<i>wer</i>	<i>waz</i>
Acc.	<i>wen</i>	<i>waz</i>
Gen.	<i>wes</i>	
Dat.	<i>wem(e)</i>	

This interrogative pronoun has no special feminine.

b) Likewise are declined the relative pronouns *swer* (< *sô wer*) "who(so)ever" and *swaz* "what(so)ever". See §32 A, lines 17, 21, 25 and §86, lines 19 and 22.

92. Preterit of *wellen* (cf. §27).

a) Indicative: *wolte* and *wolde*, etc., like §80 b.

b) Subjunctive: *wolte wolde* and *wölte wölde*, etc., like §80 c.

93. Adhortative sense (an indirect command) may be expressed not only by the present subjunctive (§82 c and d), but also by the auxiliary verb *suln* + infinitive. See §86, lines 11 and 23.

94. The preterit tense of class *I a* of the strong verbs: *striten*.

While the present tense is uniform for all verbs of class I (§52), for the formation of the preterit tense they are divided into two groups: *a*) and *b*). We give here the paradigm of *I a*:

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Sing. 1	<i>streit</i>	<i>strite</i>
2	<i>strite</i>	<i>stritest</i>
3	<i>streit</i>	<i>strite</i>
Plur. 1	<i>striten</i>	<i>striten</i>
2	<i>stritet</i>	<i>stritet</i>
3	<i>striten</i>	<i>striten</i>
	Past participle: <i>gestriten</i> .	

95. The preterit of class *II* of the strong verbs (cf. §52).

For the formation of the preterit the verbs of this class are divided into two groups: a) and b).

a) Paradigm of *II a*: *vliegen* "to fly".

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Sing.	1 <i>vlouc</i>	<i>vlüge</i>
	2 <i>vlüge</i>	<i>vlügest</i>
	3 <i>vlouc</i>	<i>vlüge</i>
Plur.	1 <i>vlugen</i>	<i>vlügen</i>
	2 <i>vlüget</i>	<i>vlüget</i>
	3 <i>vlugen</i>	<i>vlügen</i>

Past participle: *gevlogen*.

b) In OHG the diphthong *ou* had changed to *ô* when followed by one of these consonants: *t, d, z, s, h*. This phonetic change applies also to the indicative of the preterit singular of the verbs of class *II*. If they have one of the mentioned consonants at the end of their stem, they belong to *II b*, e.g., *bieten, ziehen*.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Sing.	1 <i>bôt zôch</i>	<i>büte züge</i>
	2 <i>büte züge</i>	<i>bütest zügest</i>
	3 <i>bôt zôch</i>	<i>büte züge</i>
Plur.	1 <i>buten zugen</i>	<i>büten zügen</i>
	2 <i>butet zuget</i>	<i>bütet züget</i>
	3 <i>buten zugen</i>	<i>büten zügen</i>

Past participle: *geboten, gezogen*.

For an explanation of the interchange of *h (ch)* and *g* in the paradigm of *ziehen* see §149.

96. The preterit tense of class *III b* of the strong verbs: *helfen*.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Sing.	1 <i>half</i>	<i>hulfe, hülfе</i>
	2 <i>hulfe, hülfе</i>	<i>hulfest, hülfest</i>
	3 <i>half</i>	<i>hulfe, hülfе</i>



INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plur. 1 <i>hulfen</i>	<i>hulfen, hülfen</i>
2 <i>hulfet</i>	<i>hulfet, hülfet</i>
3 <i>hulfen</i>	<i>hulfen, hülfen</i>
Past participle: <i>geholfen</i> .	

Before a combination of *l* or *r* + consonant, the vowel *u* remained without umlaut for a long time. Therefore: *hulfe* in line 31.

### 97. Observations:

a) *habent* (line 3) and *frâgent* (line 4) are Alemannic dialect forms instead of *habet* and *frâget*. The poet's native dialect was Austro-Bavarian. In his poetry, however, he avoids purely dialectal expressions. Later, Alemannic copyists often brought forms of their own dialect into the text.

b) In certain words the vowel *ê*, but not *ë* (see §2 b), changed to *ö* in Alemannic since the 13th century. *frömde* (§86, 30) is one of these words, the regular form being *fremde* or *fremede*. The appearance of *frömde* in our poem must be attributed to the Alemannic copyist. See under a).

The change of *e* to *ö* (and also of *i* to *ii*) is called *Rundung* or *rounding*.

c) **Semantic change.** The statement made in §10 that many German words have changed their meaning since the MHG period may be illustrated by MHG *miete* (line 5), *schône* (16), *tugent* (21), *gerne* (26). These words still exist in modern German but have a different meaning, namely: *Miete* "(house-)rent", *schon* "already", *Tugend* "virtue", *gern* "gladly".

## LESSON X.

---

98. a)            *Hei nu kumet iins diu zît,*  
                      *der klainen vogellînen sang.*  
                      *ez gruo<sup>n</sup>et wol diu linde brait.*  
                      *zergangen ist der winter lang.*  
5 *nu siht man bluomen wol getân.*  
                      *an der haide üebent siu ir schîn.*  
                      *des wirt vil manig herze vrô.*  
                      *des selben træstet sich daz herze mîn.*

---

### Explanation of words:

- a) Line 1. *zît stf* (i) time
2. *der is gen. plur.* Concerning the word order of this line cf. §85 b.  
*vogellîn stn* (a) little bird. See §§107 and 110  
Line 2 is explanatory apposition to *diu zît* in line 1.
  3. *gruonen wv* to be (or to grow) green or verdant  
*wol adv.* beautifully  
*linde wf* linden (tree)  
*breit adj.* vast, with extended branches
  4. *zergangen (past participle of zer-gân)* gone by, past
  5. *bluome wm or wf* flower  
*wol adv.* beautifully  
*getân.* See §86, 18; *wol getân* beautiful, pretty
  6. *an prep. with dat.* on, in  
*heide stf* (ô) heath, prairie  
*üeben wv* to show off  
*schîn stm* (a) splendor
  7. *vrô (adj.) with gen.* glad of
  8. *selp (-bes)* (the) same, (my)self. See §106  
*træsten wv refl. sich træsten with gen.* to cheer up (on account of)

- b) *Ûf der linden obene*  
*dâ sang ain klainez vogellîn.*  
*vor dem walde wart ez lûte.*  
*dô huop sich aber daz herze mîn*  
 5 *an aine stat, dâ ez ê dâ was.*  
*ich sach die rôsenbluomen stân.*  
*die manent mich der gedânke vil,*  
*die ich hin ze ainer vrowen hân.*
- c) *Ez dunkent mich wol tûsent jâr*

- b) Line 1. **ûf** *prep.* with *dat.* + following *adv.* **obene** (cf. line 5) up on, on top of. The *adv.* **obene** modifies the preposition **ûf**. This construction is still common in Alemannic at present.
2. **dâ** *adv.* there  
**singen** *stv* (III a) to sing. See §104
3. **walt** (-des) *stm* (a) wood, forest; **vor dem walde** at the edge (skirts) of the wood  
**lûte** *adv.* loud, sonorous; **ez wart lûte** it began to be noisy, i.e., from songs of birds. See §112 c
4. **dô** *adv.* then, at that time  
**heben** *stv* (VI), §77 e: **sich heben** to start (out) for  
**aber** *adv.* again. Cf. G. **abermals**
5. **stat** *stf* (i) place  
**ê** *adv.* See §88 b  
**dâ . . . dâ** *double conj.* where. Cf. line 1  
**was.** See §105
6. **rôse** *wf* and **rôsenbluome** *wm* or *wf* rose
7. **manen** *wv* with *gen.* to remind a p. of a th.  
**gedanc** *stm* thought. See §108
8. **hin ze** with *dat.* toward
- c) Line 1. **ez.** See §111  
**dunken** *wv* to seem. See §103  
**wol** *adv.* See §86, line 35  
**tûsent** (d) thousand; **wol tûsent** as many as a thousand  
**jâr** *stn* (a) year

*daz ich an liebes arme lag.  
 sunder alle min schulde  
 vrömedet er mich alle tag.  
 5 sît ich bluomen niht ensach  
 noch hôrte klainer vogellînen sang.  
 sît was al min vröide kurz  
 und ouch der jâmer alzelang.*

Dietmar von Eist.

From Karl Löffler, *l.c.*, pp. 29 and 30. Cf. Vogt, *Des Minnesangs Frühling* 33, 15-22; 34, 3-18; and pp. 305-317.

- c) Line 2. **liep** (-bes) *stm* (a) sweetheart  
**arm** *stm* (a) arm; **arme** *is dat. sing.*; we have, however, to translate it as "arms": **an liebes arme** in the arms of my sweetheart. Note that **liebes** is used without any article or pronoun.  
**ligen** *stv* (V) to lie, to rest. Cf. §52
3. **schulde** *stf* (ô) guilt, fault
4. **vrömeden** *ww* to become estranged from a p., to avoid. Cf. §97 b  
**tag**. See §109
5. **sît** *adv.* since that time, since then, ever since (then)
6. **hœren** *ww* to hear. Cf. §§99 and 102
7. **kurz** *adj.* short-lived. Cf. §43 b
8. **ouch** *adv.* on the other hand  
**jâmer** *stm* (a) Cf. G. **Jammer** bitter grief, great distress  
**alzelanc** *adj.* = **al ze lanc** far too long

99. The preterit tense of the weak verbs: **loben, leben, hœren.**

a) Indicative

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1	<i>lobete lebete hôrte</i>	<i>lobeten lebeten hôrten</i>
2	<i>lobetest lebetest hôrtest</i>	<i>lobetet lebetet hôrtet</i>
3	<i>lobete lebete hôrte</i>	<i>lobeten lebeten hôrten</i>

b) The subjunctive has the same forms as the indicative.

c) We find the ending *-de* instead of *-te* after *n* and *m*; often *nd* instead of *nnt* (*brennen: brande*) or *ndt* (*senden: sande*). After *l* *-de* is frequent in the words *solde* (preterit of *suln*. §33 d) and *wolde* (see §92).

d) Past participle: *gelobet, gelebet; gehæret* or *gehört*.

100. In OHG there had been three classes of weak verbs and this variety left its traces in MHG in the formation of the preterit and past participle. The three OHG classes were characterized in the following manner:

I. *jan*-verbs (cf. Gothic *nasjan, brannjan*), subdivided into two groups:

a) verbs with a short stem-syllable: Inf. *nerien*, pret. *nerita*, past participle *ginerit*.

b) verbs with a long stem-syllable and polysyllabic words: Inf. *brennen, hórjan*; pret. *branta, hórta*; past participle *gibrennit gibrantêr, gihôrit gihôrtêr*.

II. *ôn*-verbs: *lobôn, lobôta, gilobôt*.

III. *ên*-verbs: *lebên, lebêta, gilebêt*.

Class *I a* had umlaut throughout the entire paradigm, while on the other hand *II* and *III* had no umlaut at all. However, verbs of class *I b*, when their stem-vowel was susceptible to umlaut, had umlaut in the present tense and in the uninflected form of the past participle, but had no umlaut in the preterit and in the inflected past participle. The reason for this difference of formation lies in the fact that the verbs of class *I a* formed their preterit and past participle with a medial vowel *-i-* (> MHG *-e-*) which caused umlaut of the preceding vowel. The verbs of class *I b*, however, formed their preterit and the inflected form of the past participle without the medial vowel *-i-*. Their stem-vowel could not be umlauted in the preterit because there was no *-i-* in the following syllable. It is umlauted in the infinitive and the present tense on account of the *-j-* that had followed originally. Lack of umlaut in the preterit forms in contrast with umlaut existing in the present tense is called *Rückumlaut*.

This term was originally coined on the mistaken belief that umlaut had once existed in these forms, but had later been undone.

101. On account of the weakening of unaccented vowels (§13) classes *I a*, *II*, and *III* fused into one class in MHG, while *I b* remained alone. Later on in MHG the medial vowel *e* (<OHG *i*) was very often syncopated (without affecting the stem-vowel this time):

a) always, in agreement with §16 c, e.g., *nern nerte genert*, *spiln* (< OHG *spilôn*) *spilte gespilt*;

b) always, in stems ending in *-t* or *-d*, e.g., *ahten* (OHG *ahôn*) *ahte gaht*, *træsten trôste* (§120, 38), *bereiten bereite bereit*. The combination *-tt-* resulting in this group was simplified to *-t-*.

c) occasionally, in other words, e.g., *loben lopte gelopt*, *frâgen* (OHG *frâgên*) *frâcte gefrâct*.

102. *Rückumlaut* is still fully preserved in MHG and, to a certain extent, even in modern German, e.g.,

*hæren hôrte gehæret, gehôrt*  
*brennen brante gebrennet, gebrant*  
*kennen kante gekant, bekant, erkant*  
*træsten trôste G. getrost "confident"*  
*müezen muote*  
*füeren fuorte*  
*antwîrten antwurte*  
*wænen wânde*  
*liuhten lûhte.*

103. A few verbs have never had any medial *-i-* in their preterit and past participle, e.g.,

<i>vürhten</i> "to fear"	<i>vorhte</i>	<i>geworht</i>	} Cf. §136.
<i>würken</i> "to work"	<i>worhte</i>	<i>geworht</i>	
<i>denken</i> "to think"	<i>dâhte</i>	<i>gedâht</i>	
<i>dunken</i> (§98 c, line 1)	<i>dûhte</i>	<i>gedûht</i>	
<i>bringen</i> (§69)	<i>brâhte</i>	<i>brâht.</i>	

These last three verbs have umlaut in the subjunctive: *dachte*, *diuhete*, *brächete*.

104. The preterit tense of class *III a* of the strong verbs.

a) Indicative and subjunctive are the same as in class *III b* (§96). Umlaut is even less frequent than in *III b*.

b) The past participle has *-u-* in the stem-syllable, e.g., *gesungen*, *gefunden*. In Primitive Germanic short *u* was lowered to *o* when the following syllable contained the vowel *a*. This phonetic change is called *a-umlaut* (or "Brechung") in contrast with *i-umlaut*. This lowering of *u* to *o* could not take place when the two vowels were separated by a combination of nasal + consonant as in class *III a*.

105. Preterit tense of *sîn* or *wesen* (§25).

a) Indicative: sing. 1 and 3 *was*, 2 *wære*; Plur. 1 *wâren*, 2 *wâret*, 3 *wâren*.

b) Subjunctive: *wære*, *wærest*, *wære*, etc.

106. *selp* is either substantive or adjective. It has strong and weak forms: *selber* and *selbe*. But in the nom. the weak form is more common: *got selbe* "God himself". In the expressions *der selbe* (§98 a, line 8) and *dirre selbe* "the same" it is always weak. After the gen. of a personal pronoun it is strong: *mîn selbes lîp* "my own life", fem. *mîn selber herze* "my own heart".

107. The suffix *-lîn*, originally always preceded by an unaccented vowel, is used to form diminutive words from nouns. Whatever may be the grammatical gender of the original noun, the diminutive word is always neuter, e.g., *slüzzel* stm: *slüzzelîn* (see §5 b), *vogel* stm: *vogellîn* stn. The suffix *-lîn* has a secondary accent (§6 b). It survived in modern German in the form *-lein*, as MHG accented *î* became *ei* in modern German. Cf. Paul, *Deutsche Grammatik*. V, pp. 48-52.

108. Several nouns which usually are declined as regular *a-*

stems often have umlaut in the plural (cf. §18 a) e.g., *gedänke* (in §98 b, line 7), gen. plur. of *gedanc*; *wägene* plur. of *wagen*. These are analogical forms of late origin.

109. The *-e* of the nom. and acc. plur. of the *a*-stems (§16) and masculine *i*-stems (§18 a) was often subject to loss since the 13th century, e.g., *alle tag* (§98 c, line 4) instead of *alle tage*.

110. In §98 a, line 2 and c, line 6 we expect the form *vogellîne* instead of *vogellînen*. The latter ending for the gen. plur. of *a*-stems appears in Alemannic documents of the 13th and 14th centuries.

111. In sentences with a subject in the singular and predicative nouns in the plural the verb may conform with the latter. Such a construction is to be found in §98 c, line 1 where the verb conforms with *tûsent jâr* and not with the subject *ez*. In MHG, *ez* (as *es* in modern German) may be used as a formal subject in impersonal sentences.

Likewise *ez* is often used to anticipate the real subject. Cf. modern German: *es war einmal ein König* and *es zogen drei Burschen wohl über den Rhein*.

#### 112. Observations:

a) Concerning the spelling (especially *ai* instead of *ei*) of the selection given in §98 see §2 d, §4c, and §45.

b) The dative form *ûns* occurring in §98 a, line 1 is specifically Alemannic. Likewise *ûnser* instead of *unser*. Cf. §31.

c) In §98 a, line 2 *sang* is without an article in agreement with §85 b.

d) Expressions like *daz herze mîn* (§98 a, line 8 and b, line 4) instead of *mîn herze* are quite common in poetry.

e) In impersonal sentences with *ez* as the subject and *sîn* (*wesen*) or *werden* as verb, the adverb may be used as part of the predicate in the meaning of a neuter adjective. *ez wart lûte* (§98 b, 3) "it began to be noisy". In that passage *ez* does not refer to *vogellîn*. See also §120, 25.



## LESSON XI.

---

113.                    *Dô der sumer komen was  
und die bluomen dur daz gras  
wunneclîch entsprungen  
und die vogel sungen,  
5 dô kam ich gegangen  
ûf einen anger langen,  
dâ ein küeler brunne entsprang.  
dur den anger was sîn gang,*

---

### Explanation of words:

- Line 1. **dô** *conj.* when. Cf. §64. Note that **dô** as *adv. or conj.* has always temporal meaning: "then; when", while **dâ** has always local meaning: "here, there; where".
- sumer** *stm* (a) summer
2. **dur** *prep. with acc.* through  
**gras** *stm* (a) grass
3. **wunneclîch** *adv.* delightfully. See §118  
**entspringen** *stv* (III a) to sprout forth  
**vogel** *stm* (a) bird. See §16 a and c
5. **gegangen.** See §114
6. **ûf** *prep. with acc. or dat.* G. auf on, upon  
**anger** *stm* (a) meadow
7. **dâ** *conj.* where  
**küele** or **küel** *adj.* cool  
**brunne** *wm* spring  
**entspringen** *stv* (III a) to rise, to have its source
8. **ganc** (g) *stm* (a) way  
**nahtegal** *wf* nightingale. See §119

- dâ diu nahtegal wol sang.*  
 10 *Ûf dem anger stuont ein boun.*  
*dâ getrounde mir ein troum.*  
*ich was zuo dem brunnen*  
*gegangen von der sunnen,*  
*daz diu linde mære*  
 15 *mir dâ schaten bære.*  
*dô ich dâ gesezzen was,*  
*mîner sorge ich gar vergaz.*  
*vîl schiere entslief ich umbe daz.*

(Continued in §120)

---

Line 10. **boun** *stm* (a) tree

11. **trounen** *vv* to dream. With impersonal construction. See

§115

**troum** *stm* (a) dream

12. **zuo** *prep.* with *dat.* to

13. **von** *prep.* with *dat.* away from

**sunne** *wf* sun

15. **schate** *wm* shade

**bern** *stv* (IV) to give, to yield. Cf. §54

16. **gesezzen** *p.p.* of **sitzen** *stv* (V) to sit (down). Cf. §§116-117

17. **sorge** *stf* (ô) sorrow, grief

**vergezzen** *stv* (V) with *gen.* to forget

18. **schiere** *adv.* soon

**entslâfen** *stv* (VII) to fall asleep

**umbe** *prep.* with *acc.* on account of; **umbe daz** cf. G. **darum**  
 for that reason

114. **gân** or **gên** "to go" (§56).

a) Preterit: like in class VII of the strong verbs, i.e., *gienc*, *gienge*, *gienc*, *giengen*, *gienget*, *giengen*, etc. (§78). But beside *gienc* there is a shorter form *gie* for the first and third singular indicative.

b) Past participle: *gegangen* or *gangen*, also *gegân*.

c) *ich kam gegangen* "I came walking along" like in modern German.

#### 115. Verbal aspects.

*getrounde* (§113, 11) and *getrôste* (§120, 38) are perfective verbs (cf. §66). The action is limited to a short period and completed. However, *ge-* is not the only prefix employed to form perfectives. All other prefixes could be used for that purpose. But the choice of prefix was not at all arbitrary because every prefix had originally had its own special meaning. This original special meaning was almost entirely lost by *ge-* and to a certain degree by *er-*. In §§113 and 120 the following verbs are perfective: *entsprungen*, *entsprang*, *getrounde*, *gesezzen*, *vergaz*, *entslief*, *bedûhte*, *bescheide*, *ergê*, *wart*, *begunde*, *erschriên*, *benam*, *erschrac*, *getrôste*. The following verbs are durative (imperfective): *was*, *sungen*, *sang*, *stuont*, *bære*, *dienten*, *wære*, *leben*, *schrîen*, *lac*, *betiute*, *merkent*. From this list we see that also simple verbs (*werden*) may be perfective and, on the other hand, compound verbs (*betiute*) may be durative. Often the aspect of a verb is influenced by adverbial additions, e.g., *gedîhen* alone is durative, but perfective when combined with an adverb. In §120, lines 31-32 a subordinate clause stands in place of an adverb and the verb *gedîjen* is perfective in similar sense as *werden*.

Perfective verbs are used in reports on events and durative verbs in descriptions of situations.

#### 116. Phonetic changes effected by original *j* or *i*.

a) Already in the Primitive Germanic period *j* had changed *e* of the preceding syllable to *i* (cf. §55 c, 2), e.g., *\*setjan* > *\*sitjan* > English *sit*.

b) During the so-called West Germanic period, i.e., shortly before the beginning of the OHG period, every consonant was

doubled when it was immediately followed by *j* (partly also when followed by *l, r, w, n, m*), e.g., \**siljan* > West Germanic \**sittjan*, cf. English *sitting*. In the OHG consonant shift that took place later, beside other consonant changes, the Primitive Germanic single consonants *p* and *t* (surviving as such in English and Low German) were changed to *f* (*ff*) and *z* (*zz*) in medial and final position after a vowel, e.g., cf. English *hope, sleep, ship* and German *hoffen, schlafen, Schiff*; English *bite, foot* and German *beißen, Fuß*. The double consonants *pp* and *tt*, however, were changed to *pf* and *tz* in the same position; cf. English *apple* and German *Apfel*, English *sit* (*sitting*) and German *sitzen*.

c) During the OHG period *j* caused umlaut of such vowels as had not yet been affected, changing first of all *a* to *e*, e.g., OHG *brennen* < *brannjan*, OHG *denken* < \**dankjan*, OHG *nennen* < *namnjan*. Later on, still during the OHG period, but not yet appearing in the conservative OHG spelling, other vowels and diphthongs were affected by *j*-umlaut, e.g., OHG *hôrjan* > MHG *hœren*.

d) The same influence upon preceding vowels as by *j* was also effected by the vowel *i*. *j* (and *i*) later disappeared, but the changes effected under its influence remained. Only double consonants were simplified to a certain extent, e.g., *biten* (< *bitten* < *bidden* < *bidjan*), *ligen* (< *licken*).

117. The preterit and past participle of strong verbs had no *j* or *i* in their suffixes. Therefore, the changes caused by *j* or *i* (see preceding §) could not take place in these forms. We find *j* in the infinitive of a few verbs of classes *V* and *VI* of the strong verbs, e.g.,

V: <i>bitten</i> (also <i>biten</i> )	<i>bat</i>	<i>bâten</i>	<i>gebeten</i> .
<i>sitzen</i>	<i>saz</i>	<i>sâzen</i>	<i>gesezzen</i> .
<i>licken</i> (beside <i>ligen</i> )	<i>lac</i>	<i>lâgen</i>	<i>gelegen</i> .

VI: See §77 e.

118. The rule given in §87 a for the formation of adverbs cannot be applied to all adjectives, especially not to those ending in *-ec* (*-ic*), *-isch*. Their adverb is formed by means of a compound with *-liche* or *-lichen*. The *-e* of *-liche* may also be dropped:

Examples: *wunnec* "delightful": adv. *wunneclîch(e)*, *wunnec-*  
*lîchen*.

*sælec* "blessed" : adv. *sæleclîche*.

*ganz* "entire" : adv. *ganzlîche*. Cf. G. *gänz-*  
*lich*.

119. The rule given in §16 c applies also to weak nouns (cf. §19), e.g., *ar wm* "eagle": declined form *arn* instead of *\*aren*.  
*bir wf* "pear": declined form *birn*.

For the same reason we have *nahtegal* in §113, 8 instead of *nahtegale* which, however, did also exist.

## LESSON XII.

---

(Continued from §113)

120.

*Dô bedûhte mich zehant*  
20 *wie mir dienten elliu lant*<sup>3. 1. 1. e. e. e.</sup>  
*und wie mîn sêle wære*  
*ze himel âne swære,*  
*und doch der lîb solte*  
*hie leben, swie er wolte.*  
25 *dâ was mir sanfte und niender wê.*  
*got bescheide ez, wie ez ergê,*

---

Line 19. **bedunken** *ww* impersonal construction with *acc. of the p.* to seem

See §§103 and 115

**zehant** *adv.* immediately

20. **wie** *adv.* how. Here used as a conjunction to introduce the indirect discourse = **daz**

**dienen** *ww* to serve, to be subject to

21. **wære.** See §82 e

22. **ze himel** in heaven

**swære** *stf* (ô) trouble, worry. Cf. §59

23. **solte** had to, was forced to. See §122 A

24. **hie** *adv.* here (on earth)

25. **sanfte** *adv.* well. See §§87 b and 112 e; **mir was sanfte** I was well

**niender** *adv.* nowhere

**wê** in **mir was wê** I felt a pain

26. **bescheiden** *stv* (VII) to explain

**ergân** or **ergên** *irreg. v.* (see **gân**; §§56 and 114) to happen

Translation: "May God explain how a thing like that may happen."

wan bezzer trouen enwart nie mê.  
 Gerne wær ich iemer dâ,  
 wan ein vil unsælig krâ,  
 30 diu begunde\_erschrieten.  
 daz alle krâ gedîjen,  
 als ich in des gunne!  
 si benam mir michel wunne.  
 von ir schrienne ich erschrac.  
 35 wan daz dâ kein stein enlac,  
 ez wær gewesen ir endes tag.

- 
- Line 27. **wan** *adv.* but  
**werden** *stv* (III b) to appear, to come, to be given
28. **gerne** *adv.* with pleasure  
**wær** = **wære** with *pluperfect* meaning. §130 c
29. **wan** *adv.* but for. Introducing an elliptic expression. The meaning is: It would have been possible to stay there always if it had not been for that crow.  
**unsælic** (**g**) *adj.* accursed, damned  
**krâ** *stf* crow. See §126
30. **begunde**. See §122 B  
**erschrieten** *stv* (I) to shriek, to yell, to cry out. §121 c
31. **daz** *conj.* introducing a wish. Cf. §82 d  
**gedîjen** Alemannic form for **gedîhen** *stv* (I b) (to prosper, to thrive), to get on, to turn out. See §§121 b, 125 and 115
32. **als** *conj.* (just) as  
**gunnen** *v.* with *gen.* to wish (a p. something). See §123
33. **benemen** *stv* (IV) to take away, to rob (a p. of)  
**wunne** *stf* (**ô**) bliss, happiness
34. **schrieten** *stv* (I) to scream, to yell. See §§121 c and 124  
**erschrecken** *stv* (IV) **von** to start up with fright (at)  
 Forms: **erschrac** **erschråken** **erschrocken**
35. **wan daz** *conj.* had it not been due to the fact that  
**kein** *pron.* any. See §128  
**stein** *stm* (**a**) stone
36. **ende** *stn* (**ja**) end

*Ein vil wunderaltez wîb,  
 diu getrôste mir den lîp.  
 die begunde ich eiden.  
 40 dô begunde si mir bescheiden,  
 waz der troun betiute.  
 daz merkent wîse liute!  
 zwên und einer daz sint drî.  
 ouch sô seite si mir da bî,  
 45 daz mîn dûme mîn vinger sî.*

Walther von der Vogelweide.

From Fridrich Pfaff, *l.c.*, col. 439. Cf. Wilmanns-Michels, *l.c.*, pp. 335-337.

Line 37. **wunderalt** *adj.* extremely old

38. **træsten** *ww* to console, to comfort, to cheer up. See §§102 and 115

**lîp.** See §129

39. **eiden** *ww* to force a p. to declare upon oath

41. **betiuten** *ww* to mean

42. **merken** *ww* to remember, to bear in mind; **merkent** is Alemannic *imperative plural*  
**liute** *stm plur.* people

44. **ouch** *adv.* also, furthermore  
**seite** = **sagete**. See §127 c

45. **dûme** *wm* thumb  
**vinger** *stm* (a) finger

## 121. The preterit tense of class *I b* of the strong verbs.

a) In OHG the diphthong *ei* had changed to *ê* when followed by the consonants *h*, *w*, *r* or when it was at the end of a word. This phonetic change applies also to the indicative of the preterit singular of class *I*. The few verbs that are affected by it constitute group *b* of class *I*.



b) Paradigms: *lihen* "to lend", *dîhen* "to prosper" (cf. *ge-dîhen*).

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Sing. 1	<i>lêch dêch</i>	<i>lihe (liuwe) dige</i>
2	<i>lihe dige</i>	<i>lihest digest</i>
3	<i>lêch dêch</i>	<i>lihe dige</i>
Plur. 1	<i>lihen digen</i>	<i>lihen digen</i>
2	<i>lihet diget</i>	<i>lihet diget</i>
3	<i>lihen digen</i>	<i>lihen digen</i>

Past participle: *gelihen* (*geligen, geliuwen, geluhen*), *gedigen*.

The forms added in brackets occur less frequently beside the regular forms of *lihen*.

Like *dîhen* are conjugated:

*rîhen* (*rêch rigen gerigen*) "to file on a string, to thread",  
*zîhen* (*zêch zigen gezigen*) "to accuse of, to charge with".

For an explanation of the interchange of *h* (*ch*) and *g* see §149.

c) *schrîen* "to scream" has both *schrei* and *schrê* in the preterit singular. The plural forms are: *schriuwen, schrûwen, schrîrn*. Past participle: *geschriuwen, geschrûwen, geschrîrn*. In Middle German and Bavarian documents *schrîen* has a weak past participle: *geschrît*.

122 A. *suln* or *sûln* (§33 d).

a) Present subjunctive: *sûl, sûlst, sûl*, etc.

b) Preterit indicative: *solde* (§99 c) and *solte*, etc.

c) Preterit subjunctive: *solte* and *sölte*, etc.

122 B. *beginnen* "to begin".

a) This is a *stv* of class III a. But its preterit is irregular, namely, sing. *begunde* (weak) and (not so often) *began* (strong), but in the plural only *begunden*. Subjunctive only *begunde*. Past participle *begunnen*.

b) *begunde* with infinitive does not always mean "he began to", but very often it expresses a quick and immediate resolution to act, e.g., in lines 39 and 40 of our selection. In line 30 *begunde* intensifies the ingressive meaning inherent in *erschrien* (in contrast with simple *schrïen*).

123. *gunnen* or *günnen* (§120, 32).

a) Present indicative: Sing. 1 and 3 *gan*, 2 *ganst*; plural 1 and 3 *gunnen* or *günnen*, 2 *gunnet* or *günnet*.

Present subjunctive: *gunne* or *günne*, etc.

Preterit. The indicative is *gunde*, the subjunctive *gunde* or *günde*.

b) This verb belongs to the group mentioned in §33. All these verbs were originally preterits and acquired a present meaning later on. Therefore, they are called *preterit-presents*. Their present tense is like the preterit of strong verbs except for the 2nd singular. As a new preterit was needed it was formed like the preterit of the weak verbs, but without any medial vowel. Most of the preterit-present verbs are very defective.

124. The gerund or "inflected infinitive".

The gerund consists of a genitive and a dative case which are used as substitutes for the non-existing genitive and dative of the infinitive.

INFINITIVE

GERUND

Genitive

Dative

*nemen*

*nemennes, nemenes*

*nemenne, nemene*

*tragen*

*tragennes, tragenes*

*tragenne, tragene*

*schrïen*

*schrïennes, schrïenes*

*schrïenne, schrïene*

Both infinitive and gerund may often best be translated by English verbal nouns in *-ing*, e.g., *schrïen* "screaming", *nemen* "taking", *tragen* "carrying". The dative of the gerund is only used together with a preposition, mostly *ze*. Cf. Nib. 337, 2.

125. *h* between vowels often becomes silent. Cf. §120, 31 where *gedîjen*, Alemannic form of *gedîen* (= *gedîhen*), rhymes with *erschriên*. After the loss of such an *h* the two vowels sometimes contracted into one, e.g., *vâhen* > *vân*, *slâhen* > *slân*, *bîhel* > *bîl*, *stâhel* > *stâl*.

Similarly *w* could be lost; cf. *krâ* in lines 29 and 31 of our selection and §126.

126. Several *ô*-stems ending in *-we* lost the syllable *-we* occasionally (cf. §125), e.g.,

<i>krâwe</i> and <i>krâ</i> "crow"	<i>êwe</i> and <i>ê</i> "law, matrimony"
<i>klâwe</i> and <i>klâ</i> "claw"	<i>diurwe</i> and <i>diu</i> "(maid-)servant"
<i>brâwe</i> and <i>brâ</i> "eyebrow"	

Gen. and dat. plural: *krâ(e)n*, *klâ(e)n*, *brâ(e)n*.

127. Loss of intervocalic *g*.

a) The combination *-ige-* (< OHG *-igi-*) often became *-î-*, e.g., *du ligest*, *er liget* (of *ligen* stv V) > *lîst*, *lît*.

b) *-ege-* (< OHG *-egi-*) > *-ei-*, e.g., *du legest*, *er leget* (of *legen* wv) > *leist*, *leit*; pret. *legete* > *leite*; p.p. *geleget* > *geleit*.

c) *-ege-* (< OHG *-agi-*) > *-ei-*, e.g., *tregest*, *treget* (of *tragen* stv VI) > *treist*, *treit*. Also: *seist*, *seit*, *seite* (§120, 44), *geseit* of *sagen* wv "to say".

128. *dehein*, *nehein*.

*dehein* (*dechein*), *nehein* (*nechein*), *kein* are indefinite pronouns the original meaning of which was "any". They are declined like *ein* (§60 a). *kein* received its modern meaning "no, none" as late as around 1200. *nehein* and *dehein* were compounds of *\*neh* (related to Latin *neque* "and not") and *\*deh* with *ein* and were accented on the second syllable. From *dechein* and *nechein* developed *dekein* and *nekein*. *dekein* lost its unaccented *e* of the first syllable and *dkein* became plain *kein* by assimilation. On the other hand, *ne-* of *nekein* was regarded as negative particle and detached, and again the result was *kein*.

129. *lîp* "body, person".

The noun *lîp* "body" is very often used in combined expressions, when speaking of persons, almost as a kind of compound pronoun like English *somebody*. Examples:

*mîn lîp* = G. *ich* I

*dîn lîp* = G. *du* you

*einen lîp* a person

*mînes gastes lîp* my guest

*din getrôste mir den lîp* (§120, 38) she cheered me up.

*eins rehte guoten ritters lîp* (Nib. 8, 4) = *einen rehte guoten ritter*  
a distinguished knight.

*schæner frowen lîp* a beautiful lady. Cf. Nib. 436, 3.

## 130. Observations:

a) The use or omission of the formal subject *ez* in impersonal sentences (e.g. §120, 25) is regulated in almost the same way as in modern German.

b) Note that *wîp* (§120, 37) is a neuter noun. However, in the next line the pronoun referring to it (*din*) is feminine. Here, as often in MHG, the natural sex of the person and not the grammatical gender of the word was the deciding factor.

c) Note that final *-e* of adverbs or verbal forms may be dropped if the rhythm requires it, e.g., *wunneclîch* instead of *wunneclîche*, *wær* instead of *wære*.

## LESSON XIII.

---

131.

C

B

<i>Ich saz ûf eime steine.</i>	<i>Ich saz ûf ainem staine.</i>
<i>dô dahte ich bein mit beine.</i>	<i>dô dahte ich bain mit baine.</i>
<i>dar ûf saste ich mîn ellenbogen.</i>	<i>darûf saste ich mîn ellebogen.</i>
<i>ich hete in mîne hant gesmogen</i>	<i>ich hete in mîne hant gesmogen</i>
5 <i>daz kinne und ein mîn wange.</i>	<i>daz kinne und ain mîn wange.</i>
<i>dô dâhte ich mir vil ange,</i>	<i>dô dâhte ich mir vil ange,</i>
<i>wie man zer werlte solte leben.</i>	<i>wie man zer welte solte leben.</i>
<i>deheinen rât kunde ich mir ge-</i>	<i>dehainen rât kunde ich mir ge-</i>
<i>geben,</i>	<i>geben,</i>

---

### Explanation of words:

Line 1. **eime**. See §132

2. **dahte** (different from **dâhte**) *pret.* with Rückumlaut (§102) of **decken** *wv* to cover. *Pret.* **dahte** and **dacte**, *p.p.* **gedecket** and **gedaht** or **gedact**  
**bein** *stn* (a) leg; **bein mit beine** **decken** = G. *die Beine übereinander schlagen* to cross one's legs
3. **dar ûf** and **darûf** *adv.* (up)on it, (up)on that, there(up)on  
**saste** *pret.* with Rückumlaut (§102) of **setzen** *wv* to set, to put.  
*Pret.* **sazte** and **saste**, *p.p.* **gesetzt** or **gesazt**  
**elle(n)boge** *wm* elbow
4. **smiegen** *stv* (II a) to press
5. **kinne** *stn* (ja) chin  
**wange** *wn* cheek; **ein mîn wange** one of my cheeks
6. **ange** *adv.* (of **enge**) secretly, exclusively; **mir vil ange** G. *ganz für mich allein* deep down in my heart. Indicating deep contemplation
7. **zer werlte** or **zer welte** on earth. Cf. **ze himel** §120, 22; **zer** = **ze der**
8. **rât** *stm* (i) information  
**gegeben** *inf.* (not *p.p.*) with **ge-** §66

	<i>wie man driu ding erwurbe,</i>	<i>wie man driu ding erwurbe,</i>
10	<i>der deheinez niht verdurbe.</i>	<i>der dehainez niht verdurbe.</i>
	<i>diu zwei sint êre und varnde</i>	<i>diu zwaî sint êre unde varnde</i>
	<i>guot,</i>	<i>guot,</i>
	<i>der ietwederz dem andern</i>	<i>der ietwederz dem andern</i>
	<i>schaden tuot.</i>	<i>schaden tuot.</i>
	<i>daz dritte ist gotes hulde,</i>	<i>daz dritte ist gotes hulde,</i>
	<i>der zweier ubergulde.</i>	<i>der zwaier übergulde.</i>
15	<i>die wolde ich gerne in einen</i>	<i>die wolte ich gerne in ainen</i>
	<i>schrîn.</i>	<i>schrîn.</i>
	<i>jâ leider des mac niht gesîn,</i>	<i>jâ laider des mag niht gestn,</i>
	<i>daz guot und weltlich êre</i>	<i>daz guot und weltlich êre</i>
	<i>und gotes hulde mêre</i>	<i>und gottes hulde mêre</i>
	<i>in einen schrîn mugen komen.</i>	<i>in ainen schrîn mügin komen.</i>

9. **dinc(g) *stn*** (a) thing  
**erwerben *stv*** (III b) to acquire, to win
10. **verderben *stv*** (III b) to perish, to be ruined
11. **diu zwei** two of them  
**êre *stf*** (ô) honor  
**varnde** uninflected form of the present participle of **varn *stv*** (VI).  
**varnde guot** personal property
12. **ietweder *pron.*** each one (of two)  
**schade *wm*** damage, harm; **schaden tuon *with dat.*** to injure, to harm
13. **hulde *stf*** (ô) good graces; **gotes hulde** grace of God
14. **übergulde *stf*** (ô) a thing the value of which exceeds that of (all) other things, the most valuable of all things. The superlative meaning of this word is indicated by the genitive **der zweier**.
15. **ich wolde gerne in *with acc.*** I wanted very much (to put them) into . . .  
**schrîn *stm*** (a) chest
16. **jâ *interj.*** indeed  
**gesîn.** §66
17. **weltlich *adj.*** worldly
18. **mêre *adv.*** in addition to (it, that); ever again
19. **mügin.** See §133  
**komen** to go into, to be accommodated, to arrive at, to reach

20 *stige und wege sint in ge- stige und wege sint inge-*  
*nomen.* *nomen.*

*untriuwe ist in der sâze.*

*untriuwe ist in der sâze*

*gewalt ist ûf der strâze.*

*gewalt ist ûf der strâze.*

*fride und reht sint beidiu wunt. fride und reht sint baide wunt.*

*diu driu habent geleites niht, diu driu habent gelaites niht,*

*25 diu zwei werdent ê gesunt.*

*diu zwai werden ê gesunt.*

Walther von der Vogelweide.

C = Fridrich Pfaff, *l.c.*, col. 420-21.

B = Karl Löffler, *l.c.*, pp. 143-44.

Cf. Wilmanns-Michels, *l.c.*, pp. 71-73.

This selection is given in the two versions in which it is preserved to us. The two versions are contained in two different manuscripts (C and B). C was written in Zürich and B in Konstanz (on the Bodensee). Dialect differences of the two places are reflected by the spelling. Cf. §§9 and 45.

Line 20. *stic* (g) *stm* (a) path

*wec* (g) *stm* (a) way; **stige und wege** is a formulary expression like G. **Weg und Steg** highways and by-ways, every road

Note the difference of **in** (*dat.*) **genomen** in C and **ingenomen** in B. **nemen** *stv* (IV) to take away; **innemen** *stv* (IV) to occupy, to seize

21. **untriuwe** *stf* (ô) treachery

**sâze** *stf* (ô) ambush; **in der sâze sîn** to be on the watch, on the look-out (for a p.), to lie in ambush, in wait (for); **untriuwe** is pictured as a highwayman

22. **gewalt** *stm* (i) violence, brutality

**strâze** *stf* (ô) road

23. **fride** *stm* (ja) peace

**reht** *stn* (a) justice

**beide** *adj.* both. See §134

**wunt** (d) *adj.* wounded, injured; **fride** and **reht** are the victims of the before-mentioned highwaymen

24. **diu driu** (see §134) refers to lines 11 and 13

**geleite** *stn* (ja) safe-conduct, protection

25. **diu zwei** (see §134) refers to line 23

**gesunt** (d) **werden** to recover, to get well again

**ê** *adv.* See §88 b and cf. §135



132. Early MHG *eineme*, dat. sing. of *ein* (masc. and neuter), developed to *einem* by losing the last syllable. It did, however, also develop in the following way: *eineme* > *einme* > *eime* (assimilatory loss of *n*).

*dehein*, *nehein*, *kein* (§128) developed in the same way as *ein*.

133. *mugen*, *mügen* (§33 e).

a) Present subjunctive: *müge*, *mügest*, *müge*, *mügen* (*mügin*), *müget*, *mügen* (*mügin*).

b) Preterit indicative: *mohte* or *mahte*, *mohtes* (*t*) *mahtest*, etc.

c) Preterit subjunctive: *möhte mähte*, *möhtest mähtest*, etc.

134. Neuter forms of pronouns and adjectives.

a) Pronouns or adjectives referring to two or more words of different gender usually take the neuter gender, e.g., line 25 *diu zwei* referring to *fride* (m.) and *reht* (n.),

“ 23 *beidiu* in *C* (but *beide* in *B*).

“ 24 *diu driu* referring to *êre* (f.), *guot* (n.), and *hulde* (f.).

b) The neuter is especially used to indicate couples (husband and wife, boy and girl), e.g., *si wâren beidiu ein lîp* (*Ezzo's Song* 80) “they were both but one body”. “Each one” referring to the two members of a couple individually is also given in the neuter form, e.g., *ir ietwederz* (*Rittertreue* 652) “each one of the two”. Such use of the neuter gender is still alive in the modern Alemannic dialects. In §131, 11 *êre* and *guot* are treated as a couple and, therefore, referred to by *ietwederz*.

Furthermore, neuter pronouns or adjectives were used to designate persons when indication of the sex of the person was either not important or not wanted, e.g., *ein anderz* “someone else”, *etelîchez* “many a person”, *ein armez* “a poor person”. A survival of this order in modern German is the word *unsereins* which originally meant “one of us”, but then came to mean “a person like us”.



135. Translate lines 24-25 like this: "Those three will have (cf. §63) no protection, before these two get well." Conjunctionless sentences of this kind have usually the subjunctive form of the verb. *B* has a subjunctive *werden* (cf. §2 d). But *werdent* in *C* shows that the indicative is also correct.

### 136. Loss of *n* with compensatory lengthening.

During the Primitive Germanic period *n* disappeared before the spirant *h* (= *ch*). But as a compensation for this loss the preceding vowel was lengthened (compensatory lengthening). As a result we have the weak preterits *dâhte*, *dûhte*, *brâhte* (§103) along with the infinitives *denken*, *dunken* (*dîinken*), *bringen*. In the earliest period of Primitive Germanic those preterits had had these forms: *\*thanhta*, *\*thunhta*, *\*branhta*. Other MHG verbs that had been affected by this change are *hâhen* (< *\*hanhan*) "to hang" (pret. *hienc*) and *vâhen* (< *\*fanhan*) "to catch" (pret. *vienc*). These are strong verbs of class VII. In contrast with the preceding three verbs, they lost their *n* in the present form and not in the preterit.

### 137. Important phonetic differences between MHG and modern German.

#### a) MHG *ei ou öu* (§2 d): mod. G. *ei au eu* (äu):

*ei*: *ein ein*, (*ich*) *weiz* (*ich*) *weiß*, *bein Bein*, *kleine klein*.

*ou*: *ouch auch*, *boum Baum*, *ouge Auge*, *schouwen schauen*,  
*vrouwen Frauen*.

*öu*: *böume Bäume*, *vröude Freude*.

In modern German the spelling *ei* is preserved (except in the words *Mai* "May", *Waise* "orphan", *Kaiser* "emperor", *Rain* "ridge", *Laib* "loaf"), but represents a sound different from MHG *ei*.

#### b) MHG *î û iu*: modern German *ei au eu* (äu):

*î*: *lîp Leib*, *wîp Weib*, *zît Zeit*, *schîn Schein*, *schrîn Schrein*,  
*lîht leicht*, *mîn dîn sîn mein dein sein*, *bî bei*, *sî sei*, *lîden*  
*leiden*. The suffix *-lîn* *-lein*, as in *vingerlîn Fingerlein*,

*vogellîn Vögelein, slüzzelîn Schlüsselein*. The suffix *-lich* changed to *-lich* already in MHG.

*û*: *lât laut, âf auf, tûsent tausend, hûs Haus, mûs Maus, mâl Maul, dûme Daumen*.

*iu*: *liute Leute, triuwe Treue, friunt Freund, tiutsch deutsch, hiuser Häuser, hiute heute, iuch iuwer euch euer, bediuten bedeuten, hiulen heulen*.

The MHG combinations *îr ûr iur* appear as *eier auer euer* (*äuer*) in modern German, e.g., *gîr Geier, mâr Mauer, trâren trauern, sâr sauer, viur Feuer, tiure teuer, schiur(e) Scheuer*.

c) MHG *ie uo üe* (§2 d): mod. G. *î* (spelled *ie*) *û û*:

*ie*: *liebe Liebe, liep lieb, vier vier, viel viel, slief schlief, die die, dienen dienen*.

*uo*: *guot gut, muot Mut, bluome Blume, genuoc genug, tuon tuot tun tut, ruofen rufen, suochen suchen, truoc trug*.

*üe*: *küele kühl, güete Güte, üeben üben, hüteten hüten, grüezen grüßen*.

In closed syllables the vowels were shortened in modern German. Therefore, we have: *müezen müssen, lâzen lassen, licht Licht, wuohs wuchs*. Cf. also MHG *brâhte dâhte* and mod. G. *brachte dachte*.

d) MHG short accented vowels in open syllables appear as long vowels in modern German:

MHG *sa-gen, ta-ges, le-ben, we-sen, ne-men, li-gen, ri-gel, lo-ben*:  
mod. G. *sâ-gen, Tâ-ges, lê-ben, Wê-sen, nch-men, lie-gen, Rie-gel, lô-ben*.

From open syllables the long vowels were also introduced into the closed syllables of the same paradigm, e.g., *Tâg* after *Tâ-ges*.

e) Instead of MHG *u* and *ü* we find often *o* and *ö* in modern German, especially before nasals:

*suner Sommer, sunne Sonne, wunne Wonne, sun Sohn*.

*künic König, münch* (cf. *München*) *Mönch*.

The strong verbs with *-mm-* or *-nn-* (III a): mod. G. *geglommen, gewonnen, geschwommen, geronnen*.

- f) Rounding of MHG *e* to modern German *ö* (cf. §97 b):  
*leffel* Löffel, *helle Hölle*, *zwelif* zwölf, *schepfen* schöpfen, *leschen* lö-  
schen, *ergetzen* ergötzen, *swern* schwören, *welben* wölben.
- g) For the development of MHG *z* and *s* see §3 g and i.
- h) For further details see Bachmann, *Mittelhochdeutsches Lesebuch* §§10 and 21.

## LESSON XIV.

---

### 138. DER NIBELUNGE LIET

Cf.: Adolf Holtzmann, *Das Nibelungenlied in der ältesten Gestalt*. Stuttgart, 1857.

Friedrich Zarncke, *Das Nibelungenlied*. Leipzig, 1887. With an introduction of 137 pages and an appendix. For problems of spelling see especially pp. 382-390.

The *Nibelungenstrophe* is built on the following pattern:

$$\begin{array}{l} \times' \times' \times' \times' \times' \times' | \times' \times' \times' \times' \\ \times' \times' \times' \times' \times' \times' | \times' \times' \times' \times' \\ \times' \times' \times' \times' \times' \times' | \times' \times' \times' \times' \\ \times' \times' \times' \times' \times' \times' | \times' \times' \times' \times' \times' \times' \end{array}$$

The sign ' is used here in the sense explained in §24 (footnote), while the sign ×, in contrast with §24, indicates here a *Senkung* which may consist of one or more unaccented syllables. The *Senkung* may be missing entirely so that two accented syllables follow each other immediately. Each stanza consists of two rhyme-couplets with the rhyme *a a b b*. The rhyme is as a rule masculine (*stumpf*), i.e., monosyllabic (exception: 12, 1 and 2). Even rhymes like *sagen* and *klagen* are regarded as masculine: *sagn klagn*. Each verse is divided by a cesura. Sometimes the words standing in the cesura have rhyme (*Zäsurreim*). Cesura-rhyme is always feminine (*klingend*), i.e., dissyllabic, e.g., *mâren* and (*lobe*) *bâren*, *-zîten* and *strîten* in stanza 1, *sâzen* and *mâzen*, *môhte* and *tôhte* in stanza 332 of the *Nibelungenlied*.

Concerning versification consult Franz Saran, *Das Übersetzen aus dem Mittelhochdeutschen* (Halle, 1930) pp. 98-108. For a

better understanding of the poem, Franz Saran, *Das Nibelungenlied* (Halle, 1922) is suggested as outside reading. For a discussion of the origin and early development of the plot and motifs of the poem cf. Andreas Heusler, *Nibelungensage und Nibelungenlied* (Dortmund: Ruhfus).

139.

## KRIEMHILDE TROUM

1. *Uns ist in alten mæren      wunders vil geseit*  
*von heleden lobebæren,      von grôzer arebeit,*  
*von freude unt hôchgezîten,      von weinen unde klagen,*  
*von küener recken strîten      muget ir nu wunders hæren sagen.*

2. *Ez wuohs in Buregonden      ein vil edel magedîn,*  
*daz in allen landen      niht schæners mohte sîn,*  
*Kriemhilt geheizen.      diu wart ein schæne wîp.*  
*dar umbe muosin degene      vil verliesen den lîp.*

Stanza 1. alt *adj.* old

wunder *stn* (a) marvelous, amazing thing  
 helet (-des) or helt (-des) *stm* (a) hero  
 lobebære *adj.* covered with glory, famous  
 arebeit *stf* (i) hardship  
 hôchgezît *stf* (i) festivity, festival  
 weine *stf* (ô) weeping, shedding of tears  
 klage *stf* (ô) wailing  
 küene *adj.* bold, brave  
 recke *wm* brave warrior, valiant hero  
 strit *stm* (a) fight

2. wahren *stv* (VI) to grow

in Bu'rego'nden (with two accents) = in Burgonden in Burgundy. See §141

edel *adj.* noble, of noble birthmagedîn *stn* (a) maidenheizen *stv* (VII) to call, to name

dar umbe *adv.* G. darum on account of that; dar refers to Kriemhilt; therefore, dar umbe on account of her

degen *stm* (a) warrior, heroverliesen *stv* (II b) to lose. See §149

3. *Ir pflāgen dri künige edel unde rīch,  
 Gunther unde Gêrnôt, die recken lobelīch,  
 unt Gīselher der junge, ein wætlicher degen.  
 diu frowe was ir swester. die helde hetens in ir pflēgen.*

12. *In disen hōhen êren troumte Kriemhilde,  
 wie si zūge einen valken starc, schœn unt wilde,  
 den ir zwêne arn erkrummen. daz si daz muoste sehen!  
 ir enkunde in dirre werlde leider nimmer geschehen.*

13. *den troum si dô sagete ir muoter Uoten.  
 sine kundes niht beschaiden baz der guoten:*

Stanza 3. **pflēgen** *stv* (V) with *gen.* to have charge of

**künic** (-ges) *stm* (a) king  
**lobelīch** *adj.* praiseworthy  
**wætlich** *adj.* handsome, stately  
**swester** *stf* sister. See §142 b  
**hetens** = *heten* si  
**pflēge** *wf* guardianship, care

12. **dirre** *pron.* this. See §143

**troumen** *wv* to dream. Cf. **trounen** §113, 11. **Kri'emhi'lde**

(with two accents) is dative

**ziehen** *stv* (II b) to raise, to bring up. See §149

**valke** *wm* falcon

**starc** *adj.* strong

**wilde** *adj.* wild, untamed

**arn.** See §119

**erkrimmen** *stv* (III a) to tear to pieces

**leider** *comparative* of **leide** *adv.* (opposite: *liebe*): **mir geschieht**

**leide** something sad happens to me

**ni'mme'r** (here with two accents) *adv.* never

**enkunde.** See §147

13. **troum** *stm* (a) dream. Cf. **troun** §113, 11

**muoter** *stf* mother. See §142, b

**U'ote'n** (with two accents). See §140 a

**sine** = **si** (=Uote) **ne**

**kundes** = **kunde** **es**

**gu'ote'n** (with two accents) = **Kriemhilt**

“ *der valke, den du ziuhest,      daz ist ein edel man.*  
*in welle got behüeten!      du muost in schiere vloren hân.*”

14. “ *Waz saget ir mir von manne,      vil liebiu muoter mîn ?*  
*âne recken minne      sô wil ich immer sîn.*  
*sus schæne ich wil beliben      unz an mînen tôt,*  
*daz ich von recken minne      sol gewinnen nimmer nôt.*”

15. “ *Nune versprich ez niht ze sêre*”,      *sprach ir muoter dô.*  
“ *soltu immer herzenlîche      zer werlde werden vrô,*  
*daz kumt von mannes minne.      du wirst ein schæne wîp,*  
*ob dir got gefüegēt      eins rehte guoten ritters lîp.*”

Stanza 13. in welle. See §148

(Cont.) **behüeten** *ww* to look after, to guard, to watch over  
**vloren** *p.p.* of **vliesen** = **verliesen**. See §149; **vloren hân**  
see §148

14. **sus** *adv.* so, like this; **sus schæne** beautiful like this, as I am  
now  
**beliben** *stv* (I a) G. **bleiben** to remain, to stay  
**tôt** (-des) *stm* (a) death  
**nôt** *stf* (i) trouble, suffering

15. **nune** = **nu ne**  
**versprechen** *stv* (IV) to talk against, to refuse  
**sêre** *adv.* vehemently  
**soltu** = **solt du**. Cf. §63  
**immer** *adv.* ever  
**herzenlîche** *adv.* truly, thoroughly  
**vrô** *adj.* glad, happy  
**gefüegen** *ww* to allot, to give  
**eins** = **eines**  
**rehte** *adv.* really  
**ritter** *stm* (a) knight; **eins ritters lîp** see §129

#### 140. Names of persons.

a) Names of persons are either strong or weak. The weak inflection of names does not differ from that of other nouns. Cf. masculine names with weak inflection: *Fruote, Wate, Etzel(e)*,

*Hagene, Hetele.* All feminine names ending in *-e* are weak, e.g., *Uote, -en; Hilde, -en;* etc.

b) In the accusative singular strong masculine names have:

1) usually *-en*, e.g., *Gêrnôt Gêrnôten, Sîfrit Sîfriden;*

2) often *-e*, e.g., *Sîfride.*

In the dative singular they have often *-en* instead of *-e*.

Sometimes dative and accusative singular have no ending at all.

c) The strong feminine names belong to the *ô*-declension. But they have no ending in the nominative case, e.g., nom. *Kriemhilt*, gen. dat. acc. *Kriemhilde*. All feminine names having *-gunt, -hilt, -lint, -rîn, -trût, -burc, -heit, -rât* as their second component (cf. §151 b) are declined in this manner. Weak endings occur occasionally.

These names have preserved the original nominative form, while what we have learned to be the nominative case of the *ô*-declension (§15) was originally the accusative singular.

Abstract nouns in *-unc(g)* are treated the same way as these proper names and, beside *stunde* "time", we find *stunt* in certain expressions.

141. Many modern German names of countries were originally dative plural forms of names of people, e.g., *Burgonde* wm "Burgundian": dat. plur. *zen* (= *ze den*) *Burgonden* or *in Burgonden*, originally "among the Burgundians", then "in Burgundy"; *Nibelunc* stm "King Nibelung": nom. plur. *Nibelunge* "his sons, his people": dat. plur. *zen Nibelungen* "in the country of the Nibelungs". In such a way originated modern German names like *Bayern, Franken, Sachsen, Schwaben, Thüringen.*

#### 142. Declension of original *r*-stems.

a) Masculines: *vater* "father", *bruoder* "brother".

Sing.: gen. *vater, bruoder* and *vater(e)s, bruoders;*  
dat. and acc. *vater, bruoder.*



Plural: usually with umlaut, nom. acc. *veter*, *brüeder*;  
 gen. *veter(e)*, *brüeder(e)*;  
 dat. *veter(e)n*, *brüeder(e)n*.

b) Feminines: *muoter* "mother", *tochter* "daughter",  
*swester* "sister". They have no ending throughout the singular.  
 In the plural *muoter* and *tochter* have umlaut: *müeter*,  
*töhter*.

143. *dirre* demonstr. pron. "this".

	MASCULINE	NEUTER	FEMININE
Sing. Nom.	<i>dirre</i>	<i>ditze, diz, diz</i>	<i>disiu</i>
Gen.	<i>dises</i>		<i>dirre</i>
Dat.	<i>dise(m)e</i>		<i>dirre</i>
Acc.	<i>disen</i>	<i>ditze, diz, diz</i>	<i>dise</i>
Plur. Nom.	<i>dise</i>	<i>disiu</i>	<i>dise</i>
Gen.	<i>dirre</i>		
Dat.	<i>disen</i>		
Acc.	<i>dise</i>	<i>disiu</i>	<i>dise</i>

144. *ein* is often used as a demonstrative pronoun meaning "that well known (one)", e.g., *ein wätlicher degē* (Nib. 3, 3) "(Giselher) that handsome hero (of whom everybody has heard)". *ein* with this meaning is still used in the modern German *Kanzleisprache*, e.g., *an eine akademische Verbindung Alemannia* meaning *an die akademische Verbindung Alemannia*.

145. Note that in the expressions *von manne* (Nib. 14, 1) "about a man", *âne recken minne* (Nib. 14, 2) "without the love of a hero", *von recken minne* (Nib. 14, 4) "from the love of a hero", *von mannes minne* (Nib. 15, 3) "from the love of a man" there is no indefinite article used in MHG.

146. In stanza 1 we have a case of *double relationship* (ἀπὸ κοινοῦ): lines 2 and 3 and the first half of line 4 belong both

to *geseit* in line 1 and to *sagen* in line 4. Cf. Nib. 50 and 110, 3-4.

147. *ir enkunde* (Nib. 12, 4) is usually regarded as a subjunctive, basing on the modern German translation: "Ihr hätte nichts Traurigeres zustoßen können." But a MHG text has to be analyzed on its own ground and such an analysis should not be influenced by any translation. The modern German expression given here as translation of this passage is one indication of the strong influence of Latin syntax during the period of humanism. MHG *enkunde* in this passage is probably indicative stating a fact.

148. Stanza 13, 4 (*in.welle . . .*) is regarded by all commentators as being of the same kind as §44, line 4 (see §57, "negativ-exzipierend"). If their explanation is correct the word *in* stands for *in-n*, where the second *-n* is the negative particle *ne* or *en*: "Unless God watches over him, you will lose him soon." This explanation is supported by the fact that manuscripts *B* and *D* of the poem unmistakably have a negative particle in this line. However, in manuscript *C*, from which our text is taken, it is more probable that we have two independent sentences: the first one like those explained in §82 b, while the second one is a prophecy based on the dream and not tied up with any condition. For the meaning of *muost* with infinitive see §63. The infinitive perfect (*vloren hân*) instead of the infinitive present (*vliesen*) indicates the completion of an action and the situation resulting from it.

#### 149. Grammatical Change.

*verliesen* "to lose" is a strong verb of class *II b*. The first and third singular of its preterit is *verlôs*, but the second singular is *verliüre*, the plural *verlurn* or *verluren*, and its past participle *verlorn* or *verloren*. We see here an interchange of *s* and *r*. In modern German *r* has replaced *s* in all forms of the verb (*verlieren*, *verlor*, *verloren*), but not in the noun *Verlust* "loss".

The same thing happened to MHG *vriesen* "to be cold": *vriuse vrôs vrurn gevorn*, but modern German *frieren fror gefroren Frost*. See also MHG *was wâren* in contrast with modern German *war waren*.

Beside the alternation of *s* and *r*, there is, under identical conditions, alternation between

*v* and *b*: *heven* stv VI (beside *heben*) "to lift" *huoben* *gehaben*.

*d* and *t*: *snîden* (stv I a) "to cut" *sniten* *gesniten*.

*mîden* (stv I a) "to avoid" *miten* *gemiten*.

*sieden* (stv II b) "to boil" *sulen* *gesoten*.

*h* and *g*: *dîhen* (stv I b) *digen* *gedigen*. See §121 b with more examples.

*ziehen* (stv II b) *zugen* *gezogen*. See §95 b.

*slâhen* (stv VI) "to slay" *sluoc* (*sluogen*) *erslagen*.

See §125.

*vâhen* (stv VII) *vienc* (*viengen*). See §136.

*hâhen* (stv VII) *hienc* (*hiengen*). See §136.

This alternation between *s* and *r*, *v* and *b*, *d* and *t*, *h* and *g* is called *Grammatical Change* (in German *Grammatischer Wechsel*). It is a result of *Verner's Law*, a phonetic change that had taken place during the Primitive Germanic period. According to Verner's Law the four Primitive Germanic voiceless spirants *s*, *f*, *th*, *ch* (< IE *s*, *p*, *t*, *k*) were changed to the voiced spirants *z*, *ð*, *ð*, *g*. However, not all of the Primitive Germanic voiceless spirants were changed, but only those in medial or final position and these again only if the immediately preceding syllable had been unaccented in Pregermanic times (Cf. Prokosch, *An Outline of German Historical Grammar* pp. 36-38).

Primitive IE had so-called free accent, i.e., not all of the inflectional forms of a word (noun or verb) had the main accent on the same syllable and any syllable could be the bearer of the main stress of a word. Thus, the present tense of the strong verbs had the main accent on the stem-syllable, but the plural of the preterit, the preterit subjunctive, and the past participle

had their main accent on the suffix. Verner's Law affected these preterit and past participle forms, but left the present tense forms (and the first and third singular of the preterit indicative) unchanged. Because Verner's Law affected only part of the voiceless spirants, after its operation there existed an alternation of voiceless and voiced spirants in many words, especially in strong verbs, and this alternation is called Grammatical Change. Grammatical Change is a common Germanic feature and appears, therefore, also in English, e.g., *was* — *were*, *to lose* — *forlorn*.

Long before the MHG period both the Primitive Germanic voiceless and voiced spirants had changed considerably. Especially important was the change of Primitive Germanic *z* to West Germanic *r* (*rhotacism*). Thus, the two kinds of Primitive Germanic spirants are represented in MHG in the following way:

voiceless (not affected by Verner's Law): *s v d h*

voiced (resulting from Verner's Law): *r b t g*.

Instead of *g* we find sometimes *w* alternating with *h*, e.g., *dur* "through" (< OHG *thuru*, where *-u* came from *-w*), beside *durch* (= *durh*).

## LESSON XV.

---

150.

### SÍFRIDES JUGENT

19. *Dô wuohs in Niderlanden*    *eins edelen kinniges kint*  
— *des vater der hiez Sigemunt,*    *sîn muoter Sigelint* —  
*in einer rîchen bürge*    *wîten wol bekant,*  
*nidene bî dem Rîne:*    *diu was ze Santen genant.*

20. *Sîfrit was geheizen*    *der snelle degen guot.*  
*er versuochte vil der rîche*    *durch ellenthafsten muot.*  
*durch sînes lîbes sterke*    *suocht er fremidiu lant.*  
*hey, waz er sneller degene*    *sît zen Buregonden vant!*

---

Stanza 19. *Niderlant n. pl.* Netherlands

**kint** (d) *stn* (a) son, boy (or daughter, girl)

**burc** (g) *stf* (i) city

**wîten** *adv.* far away

**nidene** *adv.* down; **nidene bî dem Rîne** at the lower course of the Rhine

**ze Santen.** See §152 d

20. **snel** (-ller) *adj.* energetic, vigorous

**versuochen** *ww* to put (a p.) to a test, to get to know, to become acquainted with

**rîche** *stn* (ja) kingdom

**ellenthafft** *adj.* daring, venturesome, adventurous; **durch ellenthafsten muot** because of his daring nature

**sterke** *stf* (see §59) strength; here: feeling of strength

**suochen** *ww* to visit

**fremide** = **fremede** *adj.* foreign

**sît** *adv.* since, later

**vinden** *stv* (III a) to find, to meet

21. Ê daz der degen küene      vol wüehse ze man,  
 dô het er solhiu wunder      mit sîner hant getân,  
 dâ von man immer mêre      mac singen unde sagen,  
 des wir in disen stunden      müezen vil von im gedagen.

22. In sînen besten zîten,      bî sînen jungen tagen,  
 man mohte michel wunder      von Sîfriden sagen,  
 waz êren an im wüehse,      unt wie schœne was sîn lîp.  
 des heten in ze minne      diu vil wætlichen wîp.

23. Man zôh in mit dem vlîze,      als im daz wol gezam.  
 von sîn selbes tugenden      waz zuht er an sich nam!  
 des wurden sît gezieret      sînes vater lant,  
 daz man in zallen dîngen      sô rehte hêrlîchen vant.

Stanza 21. ê daz conj. before

vol adv. fully

ze man wahsen to grow up to manhood, to grow up to be a man. Cf. G. zum (with article) **Manne heranwachsen**.

See §152 c

hant (d) *stf* (i) hand. See §153

dâ von *relat. adv.* G. wovon of which, about which. See §154

stunde *stf* (ô) time, occasion; in disen stunden this time, i.e., in this poem

gedagen *vv* to pass over in silence

22. êre *stf* (ô) prestige, great esteem, glory, praise

des adv. therefore

ze minne hân to have somebody as a lover, to be somebody's sweetheart

wætlich *adj.* pretty

23. vlîz *stm* (a) care(fulness)

gezemen *stv* (IV) to be due to (a p.), to be proper; im gezam he was entitled to

sîn selbes tugende his personal good qualities

an sich nemen to acquire

zieren *vv* to adorn, to beautify

zallen = ze allen: zallen dîngen in every regard

hêrlîch *adj.* excellent, like a lord

24. *Vil selten âne huote man riten lie daz kint.*  
*in hiez mit wâte zieren sîn muoter Sigelint.*  
*sîn pflâgen ouch die wîsen, den êre was bekant.*  
*des moht er wol gewinnen beidiu liut unde lant.*

Stanza 24. **vil selten.** See §43 b

**huote** *stf* (ô) supervision, control, custody

**wât** *stf* (i) clothing, clothes

**pflagen** to take care of

**beidiu . . . unde** both . . . and; G. sowohl . . . als auch

### 151. Names of persons.

a) Before the year 1050 every German had only one name, a given name. There was no surname (family name) beside this individual name. Family names as an addition to the individual names came into vogue (apparently as an imitation of the Italian family names that had already existed for several hundred years) between 1050 and 1150, adopted first by the members of the old nobility, then by the lower aristocracy (around 1150), later by the burghers, and last (after 1200) by the serfs.

b) The number of Old German individual names that had been used before 1050 is estimated at about 7000. They were mostly compounds of two stems, e.g., *Sige-frid*, *Hilde-brand*, *Hadu-brand*, *Kriem-hilt*, *Hilde-gunt*, *Gunt-her*, *Gêr-nôt*, *Gîsel-her*, *Sige-munt*, *Sige-lint*. Very often the name of a child was composed of a stem taken from the name of the father and another one taken from the name of the mother, e.g., *Walt-bert* (husband) and *Rad-hild* (wife) named their daughter *Wald-rada*, taking the stem *Wald* from the name of the father and *rada* from the name of the mother. Of course, there existed combinations less strict than this one. Sigfrid and Kriemhilde baptize their child *Gunther* because of the friendship that existed between Sigfrid and Gunther. In like manner Gunther's and Brunhilde's child is named *Sigfrid*.



c) Even in Old Germanic times there had been a tendency to designate not only an individual person, but also his membership in a family. This was done by using a certain component in the names of all members of the family. See the names in Sigfrid's family: *Sigemunt*, *Sigelint*, *Sigefrid* (> *Sifrit*). In other cases kinship was expressed by alliteration (G. *Stabreim*), e.g., *Gunt-her*, *Gêr-nôt*, *Gîsel-her*, *Grim-hilt* (> *Kriemhilt*). Both possibilities were combined in the names of *Hildebrand's* family: *Heri-brand*, *Hilde-brand*, *Hadu-brand*.

d) In addition to the old names consisting of two stems, there existed also a great number of short forms, most of them of originally diminutive or endearing character, e.g., *Heinno*, *Heine*, *Hugo*, *Odo*, *Kuno*, *Fruote*, *Wate*. To this group belongs also *Uote*. Names of only one stem without diminutive character are: *Karl* ("man", related to *Kerl*), *Kraft*, *Ernst*, *Ida*, *Berchta*.

## 152. The preposition *ze* "at, to".

a) *ze* governs the dative. It is unaccented, its accented form being *zuo*. Often *zuo ze* are used together as one preposition. Before a vowel, *ze* usually drops its own vowel, e.g., *zeinem* = *ze einem*, *zêrste* = *ze êrste*, *zuns* = *ze uns*, *zim* = *ze im*, *zin* = *ze in*, *zir* = *ze ir*. Also: *zwâre* "indeed" beside *zewâre*, *zeme* and *zem* = *ze deme* and *ze dem*, *zen* = *ze den*, *zer* = *ze der*.

b) *ze* is used with superlatives of adverbs, e.g., *ze êrste* (G. *zuerst*), *zem êrsten* "first, (for) the first time", *ze lest* (G. *zuletzt*) "last", *ze vorderst* (G. *zuvorderst*) "in the front rank", *ze jungest* or *ze jungeste* "in the end, ultimately".

c) In predicative expressions *ze* very often takes the governed noun without an article, mostly in contrast with modern German practice, e.g., *ze man wahsen* G. *zum Manne heranwachsen*, *ze ritter machen* G. *zum Ritter machen*, *ze ritter werden* G. *Ritter werden*. Lack of an article is especially noticeable:



1) in adverbs of place with general meaning, e.g., *ze walde* "in the forest, into the forest", *ze velde* "in the field", *ze hove* "at court, to court", *ze kirchen* "in church, to church";

2) in adverbs of place where the noun used designates something unique of its kind, e.g., *ze himel(e)* "in heaven", *ze helle* "in hell, to hell".

d) *ze* is used with geographical names where modern German uses the preposition *in*, e.g., *ze Santen G. in Xanten*, *ze Rôme* "in Rome", *ze Wormze* "in Worms", *zen Burgonden* "in Burgundy", *ze Rîne* "on the Rhine, to the Rhine". MHG usage of *ze* is preserved in the Alemannic dialects of the present, e.g., *z Basel* "in Basel".

In MHG such expressions could take the place of any other grammatical case if accompanied by common words like *stat* "city", *lant* "land, country", e.g., *diu stat ze Wormze* (Nib. 1037) "the city of Worms" G. *die Stadt Worms*; *dâ zen Burgonden was ir lant genant* (Nib. 5); *diu was ze Santen genant* (Nib. 19, 4) "it was named *ze Santen*" (= Latin *ad Sanctos*).

### 153. *hant* "hand", *naht* "night".

a) *hand* was originally a *u*-stem (cf. Gothic *handus*) and, therefore, should rightly be without umlaut. However, it had entered the *i*-declension in OHG. Remnants of the old *u*-declension are gen. plur. *hande* and dat. plur. *handen*. But these forms are regularly used (and survive in modern German) only in formulaic expressions: *aller hande* "of all kinds" (G. *allerhand*), *behanden* and *ze handen* "close at hand, to hand", *ze sînen handen*. Cf. G. *vorhanden (sein)* and *abhanden (kommen)*. The gen. plur. *hande* was also used in singular sense, e.g., *einer hande* "of one kind". See §30.

b) *naht* stf (*i*) has an old form without umlaut in the expression *zen wîhen nahten* (dat. plur.: "at the time of the holy nights") which developed to modern German *Weihnachten* "Christmas". The adverb *naht(e)s* and *des naht(e)s* "at

night ” was formed in analogy with (*des*) *tages* “ during the day-time ”.

154. In MHG we often find relative clauses where we should expect clauses denoting a consequence. Cf. Nib. 21, 3 *dâ von man . . .* instead of *daz man dâ von . . .*

## ADDITIONAL GRAMMATICAL MATERIAL REFERRED TO IN THE SELECTED READINGS

---

155. Loss of intervocalic *g* (Addition to §127).

In Bavarian even *-age-* (< OHG *-aga-*, *-ago-*) changed to *-ei-*, when followed by *t* or *st*, e.g.,

*maget* "maiden, girl" > *meit*

*klagete* (pret. of *klagen*) > *kleite*, *geklaget* > *gekleit*.

MHG *maget* had been *magad* in OHG. The gen. and dat. sing. and the nom. acc. plur. had been *megidi* in OHG. According to §127 b this form became *meide* (beside *megede*) in MHG.

156. In contrast with modern German word order,

a) the finite verb often stands at the end even in a main sentence of affirmation, e.g., Nib. 44, 4.

b) the attributive genitive (if not accompanied by attributes of its own) is put between article or adjective or preposition and noun, e.g.,

*daz Guntheres lant* (Nib. 45, 4) "Gunther's land",

*daz Sigelinde kint* (Nib. 47, 1) "Sigelinde's son",

*ûz Burgonden lant* (Nib. 49, 1) "from the land of the Burgundians".

Note that in these expressions the attributive genitive has no article. Cf. §85 b.

c) The word order **noun + definite article of this noun + attributive genitive of proper name** appears in epic poems, e.g.,

*hort der Nibelunges* (Nib. 89, 1) "the treasure of Nibelung, Nibelung's treasure".

157. The *-e* of the dat. sing. of the *a*-stems (§16) and masculine *i*-stems (§18 a) was often subject to loss as early as 1200, first of all in Bavarian documents after a long syllable or the consonant *t*, e.g., *lant* instead of *lande*, *mit gewalt* instead of *mit gewalle*.

158. *reden* "to talk".

Instead of the forms *redet*, *redete*, *redeten*, *gerede* we find sometimes *reit*, *reite*, *reiten*, *gereit*.

159. a) In contrast with modern German and English, MHG uses the definite article with official titles employed together with the name of the functionary, e.g.,

*der herre Sifrit* G. *Herr Siegfrid* Lord Sigfrid.

*der küninc Gunther* G. *König Gunther* King Gunther.

*der fürste Sigemunt* G. *Fürst Siegmund* Prince Sigmund.

The Alemannic dialects use the definite article in such expressions still at present.

b) In such combinations the official title may remain uninflected even if the article and proper name are inflected, e.g., *des küninc Guntheres man* (Nib. 74, 4).

160. **Passive.**

a) The passive of the present and preterit tenses is expressed by the verb *werden* + past participle, e.g.,

*würden disiu mære ze Rîne geseit* (Nib. 56, 2) "if such stories would be told on the Rhine".

*die wurden bereit* (Nib. 66, 3) "They were made ready."

b) The verb *sîn* + past participle are used for the passive of the perfect and pluperfect tenses, e.g.,

*daz ist mir wol geseit* (Nib. 57, 2; 88, 2) "I have been told that clearly; I know that for certain."

*jâ ist mir solher mære dicke vil von in geseit* (Nib. 54, 4) "Such stories have been told me very often about them."

*dô wâren ouch dem künige diu mære nu geseit* (Nib. 79, 1) "In the meantime the news had also been reported to the king."

c) For the passive infinitive *sîn* (*wesen*) or *werden* is used, e.g., *unsern besten friwenden sol diu reise sîn bekant* (Nib. 57, 4) "Our best friends shall be notified of the campaign."

For an example with *werden* see Nib. 838, 4.

d) Very often combinations of *sîn* + past participle have no passive meaning at all, but describe a state, e.g.,

*daz swert Palmunc was genant* "The sword was called Palmunc, the name of the sword was Palmunc."

161. Preterit-Presents (Cf. §§33 and 123 b).

a) *wizzen* "to know".

Present indicative: §33 a.

Present subjunctive: *wizze*, *wizzeſt*, etc.

Preterit indicative: *wisse* or *wesse* or *wiste* or *weste* or *wuste* (*woste*), etc.

Preterit subjunctive: *wisse wesse wiste weste wiuste*, etc.

b) *tugen* = *tougen* wv (§44, lines 4 and 5).

Present indicative: 1st and 3rd sing. *touc*, 1st and 3rd plur. *tugen* (*tügen*), 2nd plur. *tuget* (*tüget*).

Present subjunctive: *tüege*, *tüegeſt*, etc.

Preterit indicative: *tohte*, *tohteſt*, etc.

Preterit subjunctive: *töhte*, *töhteſt*, etc.

c) *turren* "to dare".

Present indicative: *tar*, *tarſt*, *tar*; *turren* (*türren*), *turret* (*türret*), *turren* (*türren*).

Present subjunctive: *türre, türrest*, etc.

Preterit indicative: *torste, torstest*, etc.

Preterit subjunctive: *törste, törstest*, etc.

d) *darf* "I need", mostly with a negative particle "I cannot possibly, I am absolutely unable".

Present indicative: §33 c.

Present subjunctive: *dürfe, dürfest*, etc.

Preterit indicative: *dorfte, dorfte(t), dorfte*, etc.

Preterit subjunctive: *dorfte* or *dörfte, dörfte(t)* and *dörfte(t)*, etc.

162. The prefix *ent-*, when occurring before a word beginning with a stop, is assimilated, e.g.,

*ent-f-* > *empf-* (*emph-*): *ent-vâhen* > *empfâhen*,  
*ent-viengen* > *empfiengen*. However,  
 the word is very often spelled *enpfâhen, enpfiengen*, etc.

163. The *-n* or *-en* of the 1st plural present tense was often subject to loss if the pronoun *wir* followed after the verb, e.g.,

*neme wir* (= *nemen wir*)

*sul wir* (= *suln wir*)

*geb wir* (= *geben wir*).

164. Neuter nouns with the plural ending *-er*.

a) Some neuter nouns decline their singular according to §16 b but have the ending *-er* (< OHG *-ir*, causing umlaut) in the plural. Occasionally, however, many of these nouns have the regular *a*-stem forms also in the plural. Examples: *kleit* "clothes", *hûs* "house".

Singular: *kleit hûs, kleides hûses, kleide hûse*.

Plural: Nom.	} <i>kleider</i>	<i>hiuser</i> ( <i>hiusir</i> Nib. 823, 2)
Acc.		
Gen.		
Dat.	<i>kleidern</i>	<i>hiusern</i> .

b) What now appears as plural ending *-er* was originally a common suffix used indiscriminately throughout the whole paradigm. Its phonetic history is this:

OHG *-ir-* < Primitive Germanic *-iz-* < IE *-es-*. This IE suffix *-es-* is very common in Latin and appears there in the form *-er-*, e.g., nom. sing. *genus*, gen. *gen-er-is*, dat. *gen-er-i*, etc. In the Germanic languages, however, this suffix disappeared in the singular, due to certain phonetic changes, and remained only in the plural.

165. *geben* "to give".

The present indicative has irregular forms. The 2nd sing. is *gîst* and the 3rd sing. *gît*.

166. Irregularities in *stv II a*.

a) Strong verbs of class *II a* with medial *w* have *iu* in the infinitive and preserve it throughout the whole present tense without ever changing it to *ie* (cf. §52). In the plural forms of the preterit they have *ûw* (or *iuw* or *ouw*) and in the past participle *ûw* (or *iuw*), e.g.,

<i>riuwen</i> :	pres. t. <i>ich riuwe</i>	<i>wir riuwen</i>
	pret. t. <i>ich rou</i>	<i>wir rûwen (riuwen, rouwen)</i>
	p.p.	<i>gerûwen (geriuwen)</i> .

b) Three strong verbs of class *II a* have *û* in the infinitive and preserve it throughout the whole present tense but are otherwise regular. They are: *lûchen* "to lock", *sûfen* "to drink (said of animals)", *sûgen* "to suck".

Example: *ich sûge*      *wir sûgen*  
*ich souc*      *wir sugen*  
*gesogen*.

167. Preterit tense of *tuon*.

a) Indicative: Singular 1 and 3 *tet* or *tete*, 2 *tæte*.

Plural 1 and 3 *tâten*, *tâten*, *teten*, 2 *tâtet*, *tâtet*, *tetet*.

b) Subjunctive: *tæte* (or *tete*), *tætest*, etc.

168. *sîn* + present participle.

The present participle of a verb used together with the present or preterit or future forms of the auxiliary verb *sîn* "to be" expresses an action of long duration. Cf. *si muoz der minner minne iemer darbende sîn* "she will always be deprived of my love".



# VOWEL CHANGES OF THE STRONG VERBS

169.

		PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRETERIT INDICATIVE			PAST PARTICIPLE
		1st sing.	1st plur.	1st sing.	2nd sing.	1st plur.	
I.	a	<i>strite</i>	<i>striten</i>	<i>streit</i>	<i>strite</i>	<i>striten</i>	<i>gestriten</i>
	b	<i>lihe</i>	<i>lihen</i>	<i>lêch</i>	<i>lihe</i>	<i>lihen</i>	<i>gelihen</i>
II.	a	<i>vliuge</i>	<i>vliegen</i>	<i>vlouc</i>	<i>vliuge</i>	<i>vlugen</i>	<i>gevlogen</i>
		<i>sûge</i>	<i>sûgen</i>	<i>souc</i>	<i>sûge</i>	<i>sugen</i>	<i>gesogen</i>
	b	<i>biute</i>	<i>bieten</i>	<i>bôt</i>	<i>bûte</i>	<i>buten</i>	<i>geboten</i>
III.	a	<i>singe</i>	<i>singen</i>	<i>sanc</i>	<i>sûnge</i>	<i>sungen</i>	<i>gesungen</i>
	b	<i>hülfe</i>	<i>helfen</i>	<i>half</i>	<i>hülfe</i>	<i>hulfen</i>	<i>geholfen</i>
IV.		<i>nime</i>	<i>nemen</i>	<i>nam</i>	<i>næme</i>	<i>nâmen</i>	<i>genomen</i>
V.		<i>gibe</i>	<i>geben</i>	<i>gap</i>	<i>gæbe</i>	<i>gâben</i>	<i>gegeben</i>
VI.		<i>trage</i>	<i>tragen</i>	<i>truoc</i>	<i>trûege</i>	<i>truogen</i>	<i>getragen</i>
VII.	1	<i>valle</i>	<i>vallen</i>	<i>viel</i>	<i>viele</i>	<i>vielen</i>	<i>gefallen</i>
		<i>gevalle</i>	<i>gefallen</i>	<i>geviel</i>	<i>gevieler</i>	<i>gevielen</i>	<i>gefallen</i>
		<i>halte</i>	<i>halten</i>	<i>hielt</i>	<i>hielte</i>	<i>hielten</i>	<i>gehalten</i>
		<i>behalte</i>	<i>behalten</i>	<i>behielt</i>	<i>behielte</i>	<i>behielten</i>	<i>behalten</i>
		<i>walle</i>	<i>walten</i>	<i>wielt</i>	<i>wielte</i>	<i>wielten</i>	<i>gewalten</i>
		<i>banne</i>	<i>bannen</i>	<i>bien</i>	<i>biene</i>	<i>bienen</i>	<i>gebannen</i>
	2	<i>slâfe</i>	<i>slâfen</i>	<i>slief</i>	<i>sliefe</i>	<i>sliefen</i>	<i>geslâfen</i>
		<i>bâge</i>	<i>bâgen</i>	<i>biec</i>	<i>biege</i>	<i>biegen</i>	<i>gebâgen</i>
		<i>blâse</i>	<i>blâsen</i>	<i>blies</i>	<i>bliese</i>	<i>bliesen</i>	<i>geblâsen</i>
		<i>râte</i>	<i>râten</i>	<i>riet</i>	<i>riete</i>	<i>rieten</i>	<i>gerâten</i>
		<i>hâhe</i>	<i>hâhen</i>	<i>hie(nc)</i>	<i>hienge</i>	<i>hiengen</i>	<i>gehangen</i>
		<i>vâhe</i>	<i>vâhen</i>	<i>vie(nc)</i>	<i>vienge</i>	<i>viengen</i>	<i>gevangen</i>
		<i>gân</i>	<i>gân</i>	<i>gie(nc)</i>	<i>gienge</i>	<i>giengen</i>	<i>gegangen</i>
	3	<i>scheide</i>	<i>scheiden</i>	<i>schiel</i>	<i>schiede</i>	<i>schieden</i>	<i>gescheiden</i>
<i>bescheide</i>		etc.				<i>bescheiden</i>	
<i>heize</i>		<i>heizen</i>	<i>hieꝝ</i>	<i>hieze</i>	<i>hiezen</i>	<i>geheizten</i>	
<i>vreische</i>		<i>vreischen</i>	<i>vriesch</i>	<i>vriesche</i>	<i>vrieschen</i>	<i>gevreischten</i>	

4	<i>stôze</i> <i>schrôte</i>	<i>stôzen</i> <i>schrôten</i>	<i>stiez</i> <i>schriel</i>	<i>stieze</i> <i>schriete</i>	<i>stiezen</i> <i>schrieten</i>	<i>gestôzen</i> <i>geschrôten</i>
5	<i>ruofe</i> <i>wuofe</i>	<i>ruofen</i> <i>wuofen</i>	<i>rief</i> <i>wief</i>	<i>riefe</i> <i>wiefe</i>	<i>riefen</i> <i>wiefen</i>	<i>geruofen</i> <i>gewuofen</i>
6	<i>loufe</i> <i>houwe</i>	<i>loufen</i> <i>kouwen</i>	<i>lief</i> <i>houte</i>	<i>liefe</i> <i>hiewe</i>	<i>liefen</i> <i>hiewen</i>	<i>geloufen</i> <i>gehout</i>

# SELECTED READINGS

---

## I. From DER NIBELUNGE LIET

### I. *Wie Sîfrit ze Wormze kom.*

44. *Den herren muoten selten      deheiniu herzenleit.*  
*er hôrte sagen mære,      wie ein schæniu meit*  
*in Burgonden wære,      ze wunsche wolgetân.*  
*dâ von er sît vil arebeit      unt ouch freuden gewan.*

45. *Diu ir unmâzen schæne      was vil wîten kunt,*  
*unt ir vil hôch gemüete      zuo der selben stunt*  
*an der juncfrouwen      sô manic helt ervant.*  
*ez ladete vil der geste      in daz Guntheres lant.*

46. *Swaz man nâch ir minne      der werbenden sach,*  
*Kriemhilt in ir sinne      ir selber nie verjach,*  
*daz si deheinen wolde      zeime trâte hân.*  
*er was ir noch vil vremde,      den si wart sider undertân.*

47. *Dô gedâht ûf hôhe minne      daz Sigelinde kint.*  
*ez was ir aller werben      wider in ein wint.*  
*er mohte wol verdienen      schæner frowen lîp.*  
*sît wart diu edel Kriemhilt      des starken Sîfrides wîp.*

---

44, 1 *muoten* pret. of *müezen* §102. — 2 *wie* cf. §120, 20. *meit* §155. — 3 *wære* §82 e. — 4 *dâ von* = *von der*. *gewan* §156 a. — 45, 1 *unmâzen* Here an adv. is used in attributive position. — 4 *ez* refers to *gemüete*. *daz G. lant* §156 b. — 46, 1 Modern German word order: *swaz man der nâch ir minne werbenden sach*. *werben nâch* cf. §62, 12. — 2 *ir selber* "to herself" cf. §31 c. — 3 *zeime* = *ze eineme* §§132 and 152 a. — 4 *undertân* stands in contrast with *ir vil hôch gemüete* in 45, 2. — 47, 1 *hôhe minne* "love for a noble-woman" in contrast with Sigfrid's previous love-affairs with girls of low rank (*nidere minne*), cf. Nib. 22, 4 (§150) and also §76, 8. *daz S. kint* §156 b. — 2 *ein wint* §86, 4. — 3 *schæner frowen lîp* §129. — 4 *des'st. S. wîp* For word order cf. §85 b.

48. *Im rietn sîne mâge unt genuoge sîne man,  
sît daz er ûf minne vlîzen sich began,  
daz er eine næme, diu im möhte zemen.  
dô sprach der herre Sîfrit: " sô wil ich Kriemhilde nemen,*

49. *Die edelen juncfrouwen ûz Burgonden lant,  
durch ir vil grôzen schæne. von sage ist mir bekant:  
nie keiser wart sô rîche, der wolde haben wîp,  
im enzæme wol ze minnen der jungen küniginne lîp."*

50. *Disiu selben mære vernam dô Sigemunt.  
ez reite sîn gesinde. dâ von wart im kunt  
der wille sînes Kindes was im grimme leit,  
daz er werben wolde die vil hêrlîchen meit.*

51. *Ez gefriesch ouch Sigelint, des edelen küniges wîp.  
si hete grôze sorge umbe ir Kindes lîp.  
den vorhte si verliesen von Guntheres man.  
den gewerþ man dô dem degene sêre leiden began.*

52. *Dô sprach der starke Sîfrit: " vil lieber vater mîn,  
ân edeler frowen minne wolde ich immer sîn,  
ich enwürbe dar mîn herze vil grôze liebe hât.  
swaz ieman reden kunde, des ist deheiner slahte rât."*

---

48, 1 *genuoge* adj. nom. plur. *man* see vocabulary. — 3 *næme* §82 b and e. — 4 *der herre Sîfrit* §159. — 49, 1 *ûz* B. l. §§85 b and 156 b. *lant* instead of *lande* §157. — 4 *ze minnen* is not infinitive (cf. §124) but dat. sing. of the fem. noun *minne* "love" (cf. 22, 4) here in the meaning of "as a spouse". A similar expression 328, 2. The weak inflection of *minnen* apparently due to the influence of *frouwen*. *der* gen. sing.; *lîp* nom. sing. Translation of lines 3 and 4: "Never has an emperor become so rich that, if he wanted to take a wife, the young princess would not be well suited as a spouse for him." — 50, 2 *reite* = *redete* §158. — 3 Double relationship (§146): *der wille sînes Kindes* is the subject of both *wart* (in *dâ von wart im kunt*) and *was* (in *was im grimme leit*). — 51, 3 *vorhte* (§103) *verliesen* "she was afraid of losing". — 52, 2 *ân . . . minne* §145. — 3 *enwürbe* §57. *dar* "a girl for whom". — 4 *slahte* §30. *des ist d. sl. rât* "I am not abandoning this plan in any way; that is definitely settled."

53. "Sît du niht wil erwinden", sprach der küninc dô,  
 "sô bin ich dînes willen innecklichen vrô,  
 unt wil dirz helfen füegen, sô ich beste kan.  
 doch hât der küninc Gunther vil manigen übermüeten man.

54. Ob ez ander niemen wære wan Hagene der degen,  
 der kan mit übermüete der hôchverte pflegen,  
 daz ich vil sêre fürhte, deiz uns werde leit.  
 jâ ist mir solher mære dicke vil von in geseit."

55. "Waz mag uns daz gewerren?" sprach dô Sîfrit.  
 "swaz ich friwentlîche niht ab in erbit,  
 daz mac doch mit ellen erwerben wol mîn hant.  
 ich trouw im an ertwingen beidiu liut unde lant."

56. Dô sprach der fürste Sigemunt: "dîn rede diu ist mir leit:  
 wan wûrden disiu mære ze Rîne geseit,  
 dune dorftes nimmer gerîten in daz lant.  
 Gunther unde Gêrnôt sint mir lange wol bekant.

57. Mit gewalt niemen erwerben mac die meit",  
 sô sprach der küninc Sigemunt, "daz ist mir wol geseit.  
 wellen aber wir mit recken rîten in daz lant,  
 unsern besten friwenden sol diu reise sîn bekant."

58. "Des en ist mir niht ze muote", sprach dô Sîfrit,  
 "daz mir sîln recken ze Rîne volgen mit  
 durch deheine hervart, (daz wære mir leit),  
 dâ mit ich solde ertwingen die vil hêrlîchen meit.

---

53, 3 dirz = dir ez. — 4 der küninc Gunther §159. — 54, 2 mit see vocabulary. "He certainly possesses both intrepid prowess and pride." — 3 deiz = daz ez. — 4 ist geseit §160 b. — 55, 1 uns dative. — 2 erbit instead of erbite! — 4 trouw = trouwe. — 56, 1 der fürste Sigemunt §159. — 2 wûrden . . . geseit §160 a. — 3 dune = du ne. dorftes §161 d. — 4 "G. and G. have been well known to me for a long time." — 57, 1 gewalt §157. — 2 ist . . . geseit §160 b. — 4 sîn bekant §160 c. — 58, 1-2 des . . . ze muote, daz . . . "I don't want any warriors to accompany me."

59. *Si mac sus wol erwerben*      *dâ mîn eines hant.*  
*ich wil mit zwelf gesellen*      *in Guntheres lant.*  
*dar sult ir mir helfen,*      *vater Sigemunt."*  
*dô gap man sînen degenen*      *ze kleiden grâ unde punt.*

60. *Dô vernam ouch disiu mære*      *sîn muoter Sigelint.*  
*si begunde trûren*      *umbe ir liebez kint.*  
*jâ vorhte si vil sêre*      *die Guntheres man.*  
*diu edele küniginne*      *dar umbe weinen began.*

61. *Dô kom der herre Sîfrit*      *dâ er die frowen sach.*  
*wider sîne muoter*      *güetlich er sprach:*  
*"ir ne sult niht weinen*      *durch den willen mîn.*  
*jâ wil ich âne sorge*      *vor allen wîganden sîn.*

62. *Nu helfet mir der reise*      *in Burgonden lant,*  
*daz ich unt mîne recken*      *haben solch gewant,*  
*daz sô stolze degene*      *mit êren mügen tragen.*  
*des wil ich genâde*      *iu mit triwen immer sagen."*

63. *"Sît du niht wil erwinden",*      *sprach dô Sigelint,*  
*"sô hilf ich dir der reise,*      *mîn einigez kint,*  
*mit der besten wate,*      *die ritter ie getruoc,*  
*dir unt den dînen degenen.*      *ir sult ir fûeren genuoc."*

64. *Des neig ir mit zûhten*      *der vil küene man.*  
*er sprach: "ich wil zer verte*      *niemen mêre hân*  
*niwan zwelf gesellen.*      *den sol man prüeven wât.*  
*ich wil versuochen gerne,*      *wie ez umbe Kriemhilde stât".*

59, *ī mîn eines* §60 a. — 4 *gap* The direct object is omitted, because it is clearly understood (= material). Cf. §61 a and Nib. 69, 1. *grâ unde punt* not accusative object (as commentators believe), but adjective attribute to *kleiden*. §41. Cf. *schilde schæn unde breit* 66, 4 and 80, 3. For *kleiden* see §164 a. — 61, 3 "I don't want you to cry." — 4 *wil . . . sîn* §63. — 62, 3 *daz* relative pronoun. — 63, 2 *hilf* cf. *erbit* 55, 2. — 3 *getruoc* cf. §66. — 4 *den dînen degenen* definite article + possessive adjective! very common in the Nibelungenlied, regular construction in Italian. Cf. Behaghel, *Deutsche Syntax* I, §233. — 64, 4 *wie ez . . . stât* "how matters are with Kriemhilde".

65. *Dô sâzen schæne frouwen* naht unde tac.  
*lützil deheiner muoze* ir deheiniu pflac,  
*unze si geworhten* die Sîfrides wât.  
*er wolde sîner verte* hân deheiner slahte rât. renouance

66. *Sîn vater hiez im zieren* sîn ritterlîch gewant,  
*dâ mit er varn wolde* in Burgonden lant.  
*die ir vil liechten brünne* die wurden ouch bereit,  
*unt ir vil guoten helmē,* ir schilde schæn unde breit.

67. *Dô nâhet in ir reise* zen Burgonden dan.  
*si heten umbe in sorge.* wiez im solde ergân,  
*ob si immer wider solden* komen in daz lant.  
*dô soumte man den degenen* von dannen wâffen unt gewant.

68. *Ir ross diu wâren schæne,* ir gereite goldes rôt.  
*lebt iemen übermüeter,* des etwas niht nôt,  
*denne wære Sîfrit* unt die sîne man.  
*wie schône er urloubes* gerte zen Burgonden dan!

69. *In werte trûreclîche* der künic unt ouch sîn wîp.  
*er trôste minneclîchen* dô ir beider lîp.  
*er sprach:* "ir sult niht weinen durch den willen mîn.  
*immer âne sorge* muget ir wol mînes lîbes sîn."

70. *Ez was leit den rocken.* ez weint ouch manic meit.  
*ich wæn, in hete rehte* ir herze daz geseit,

65, 1 *sâzen* durative (§§66 and 115) "were sitting" in contrast with perfective *gesâzen* (Nib. 824, 1) "sat down". *naht unde tac* "day and night", cf. also G. *Tag und Nacht*. Formerly the beginning of the 24 hour day was put at sunset. — 3 *geworhten* pret. of *ge-würken* §103. — 4 Cf. 52, 4. — 66, 3 *die ir vil liechten brünne* cf. 63, 4. *wurden . . . bereit* §160 a. *bereit* p.p. of *bereiten*. — 67, 2 *wiez* = *wie ez*. *wiez im solde ergân* "what may become of him". — 68, 1 *goldes rôt* "red with gold", cf. *die goldes rōten* 74, 1. — 3 *die sine man* cf. 63, 4. — 2-3 "There was no danger that there might be anybody bolder than Sigfrid and his men." — 69, 1 *in werte (urloubes)* cf. §61 a and Nib. 59, 4. — 2 *trôste* (§102) is durative ("he tried to cheer up") in contrast with perfective *getrôste* §120, 38 ("she succeeded in cheering up"). *ir beider lîp* cf. §129. — 4 *mînes lîbes* §129. *âne sorge . . . mînes lîbes*.



daz in sô vil ir friwende      dâ von gelæge tôt.  
 von schulden si dô klageten.      des gie in endelîche nôt.

71. An dem sehsten morgen      ze Wormze ûf den sant  
 riten die vil küenen.      allez ir gewant  
 was von rôtem golde, <sup>3, m.c.c. hly</sup> ir gereite wol getân.  
 ir ross diu giengen ebene, <sup>2, c. n. r</sup> des herren Sîfrides man.

72. Ir schilde wâren niuwe      starc unde breit,  
 unde lieht ir helme,      dô ze hove reit  
 Sîfrit der vil küene      in Guntheres lant.  
 Man gesach an heleden      nie sô hêrlîch gewant.

73. Diu ört der swerte giengen      nider ûf die sporn.  
 ez fuorten scharpfe gêren      die ritter ûzern.  
 Sîfrit der fuort ir einen      wol zweier spannen breit,  
 der ze sînen ecken      harte vreislichen sneit.

74. Die goldes rôten zeume      fuortens an der hant.  
 von sîden fürgebüege.      sus kômens in daz lant.  
 daz volc si allenthalben      kapfen an began.  
 dô liefen in enegegene      des künic Guntheres man.

75. Die hôchgemuoten recken,      ritter unde kneht,  
 die sprungen in begegene.      (daz was michel reht)

---

70, 3 *gelæge* sing., because *vil* (sing.) is the formal subject. *gelæge* is perfective (cf. durative *ligen* §98 c, 2) and has future meaning here. — 4 *gie* §114 a. *endelîche* is a weak adj. (not adv.). *des* refers to line 3. "They were in great danger of it (of perishing)." Cf. *des gie im græzliche nôt* (Nib. 1032, 4) "On account of this he was in great danger." — 72, 4 *gesach* . . . *nie* §66. — 73, 1 *sporn* §119. — 2 *fuorten* §102. *gêren* The regular acc. plur. of *gêr* is *gêre*. *gêren* presupposes a nom. sing. *gêre* w.m. It is, however, not necessary to regard *gêren* as a "scribal error". Cf. 85, 3. MHG poetry is written in a somewhat artificial language, far removed from colloquial speech. In such literary languages irregularities may arise from uncertainty of linguistic feeling. — 74, 1 *zeume* plur. of *zoum*. *fuortens* = *fuorten si*. — 2 *von sîden fürgebüege* independent, but elliptic, sentence; supply "they had" or "there were". *fürgebüege* is plural. On *von sîden* see 448, 2. *kômens* = *kômen si*. — 3 *began* §122 B b. — 4 *des künic Guntheres* §159 b.



unt empfiengen dise geste      in ir herren lant.  
si nâmen in die mære      unt ir schilde von der hant.

76. Diu ross si wolden dannen      ziehen an ir gemach.  
Sîfrit der starke      zuo den helden sprach:  
"lât uns noch die mære      eine wîle stân.  
wir wellen schiere hinnen.      des ich guoten willen hân.

77. Man sol ouch unser schilde      ninder von uns tragen.  
wâ ich den künic vinde,      kan mir daz iemen sagen,  
Gunthern den rîchen      ûz Burgonden lant?"  
dô sagetez im ir einer,      dem ez rehte was bekant.

78. "Welt ir den künic vinden,      daz mag vil wol geschehen.  
ûf jenem sal wîten      hân ich in gesehen  
bî den sînen degenen.      welt ir zuo zim gân,  
ir muget dâ vor im vinden      manigen ûzerwelten man."

79. Dô wâren ouch dem künige      diu mære nu geseit,  
daz ûf sînem hove wâren      ritter vil gemeit:  
die fuorten liehte brünne      unt hêrlîch gewant.  
si enkande niemen      in der Burgonden lant.

80. Den wirt des hete wunder,      von wanne kæmen dar  
die hêrlîchen recken      in wæte licht gevar  
unt mit sô schænen schilden      niuwe unde breit.  
daz im daz niemen sagete,      daz was im græzliche leit.

81. Des antwurte ein recke,      der hiez Ortwân,  
starc unde küene      moht er wol sîn:

---

75, 3 empfiengen pret. of empfiâhen. Cf. §162. — 4 mære plur. of mâr. — 76, 1 "They wanted to take the horses away from there to put them into the stables." — 4 des . . . hân "I am firmly resolved (determined) to do that." — 77, 3 Gunthern §140 b. — 4 sagetez = sagete ez. — 78, 3 den sînen degenen cf. 63, 4. zuo zim = zuo ze im §152 a. — 79, 1 wâren geseit §160 b. — 4 enkande = en kande pret. of kennen §§102 and 99 c. — 80, 1 den . . . wunder, von wanne "The sovereign was curious to know (wondered), from where . . ." — 4 niemen sagete "nobody could tell". — 81, 1 antwurte §102.

“*sît wir ir niht erkennen, sô sult ir heizen gân*  
*nâch mîme ôneim Hagene. den sul wir si sehen lân.*”

82. *Dem sint kunt diu rîche unt ouch diu fremden lant.*  
*mag er si bekennen, daz tuot er uns bekant.”*  
*in hiez der küninc bringen. mit den sînen man*  
*sach man in zûhteclîche ze hove für den küninc gân.*

83. *Waz sîn der küninc wolde, des vrâgete Hagene.*  
*“ez sint in mîme hûse vremde degene,*  
*die niemen hie bekennet. ob ir si ê gesehen*  
*habt in vremden landen, des sult ir, Hagene, mir verjehen.”*

84. *“Daz tuon ich sicherlîchen.” zeinem venster er dô gie.*  
*sîn ouge er dô wenken zuo den gesten lie.*  
*wol behagete im ir gevete unt ouch ir gewant.*  
*si wâren im vil vremde in der Burgonden lant.*

85. *Er sprach, von swannen fûeren die recken an den Rîn,*  
*ez möhten selbe fûersten oder fûerstenboten sîn.*  
*“ir ross diu sint sô schæne, ir kleider harte guot.*  
*swannen si joch riten, si sint vil hôhe gemuot.”*

86. *Alsô sprach dô Hagene: “als ich mich kan verstân,*  
*(swie ich Sîfriden noch nie gesehen hân,*  
*sô wil ich wol getrouwen, swie ez sich gefüeget hât)*  
*sô ist ez der recke, der dort sô kêrlîchen stât.*

---

81, 3 *erkennen* perfective: “We cannot make out who they are.” — 4 *Hagene!* Note that the form is not *Hagenen* as should be expected according to §140 a. *den sul . . . lân* “We must let him look at them.” *sul wir* §163. — 83, 2 *hûse* §164 a. — 84, 1 *zeinem* = *ze einem*. — 85, 1 *fûeren* pret. subj. of *varn* with perfect meaning “may have come”. — 2 *selbe* “even”. — 3 *kleider* §164 a. But the dat. plur. form *kleiden* (Nib. 59, 4) is taken from the *a*-declension. Cf. 73, 2. — 4 *riten* (not *riten!*). Cf. *fûeren* in line 1. — 86, 2 *Sîfriden* §140 b. — 3 *getrouwen* The object (*ez*) is omitted because it is understood.

87. *Er bringet niwe mære her in ditze lant.*  
*die küenen Nibelunge sluoc des heldes hant,*  
*Schilbunc unde Nibelunc, diu rîchen küniges kint.*  
*er frumte starkiu wunder mit sîner grôzen krefte sint.*

88. *Dô der helt aleine ân alle helfe reit,*  
*er vant an einem berge (daz ist mir wol geseit)*  
*bî Nibelunges horde vil manigen küenen man.*  
*die wâren im ê fremde, unz er ir künde dâ gewan.*

89. *Hort der Nibelunges der was gar getragen*  
*ûz einem holn berge. nu hæret wunder sagen,*  
*wie in teilen wolden der Nibelunge man!*  
*daz sach der degene Sîfrit. den helt es wundern began.*

90. *Er kom zuo zin sô nâhen, daz er die recken sach*  
*unt ouch in die degene. ir einer drunder sprach:*  
*“hie kumt der starke Sîfrit, der helt von Niderlant.”*  
*vil seltsæniu mære er an den Nibelungen vant.*

91. *Den recken wol enpfîengen Schilbunc unt Nibelunc.*  
*mit gemeinem râte die edelen fürsten junc*  
*den schaz in bâten teilen den vil küenen man,*  
*unt bâtens in sô lange, unz er inz loben dô began.*

92. *Er sach sô vil gesteines, als wir hæren sagen,*  
*hundert kanzwâgene ez mohten niht getragen;*

---

87, 1 *niwe* (= *niuwe*) *mære* acc. plur. neuter (cf. 327, 1). We should expect *niuwiu mære* (§37). *niuwe* instead of *niuwiu* is due to a desire to avoid the uneuphonious sequence *iu . . . iu*. Cf. *uns koment niuwe mære* (nom. plur.) Nib. 1460, 1. *niuwiu* seems to have been avoided also in the nom. sing. fem. in favor of the uninflected form *niuwe*. The modern German ending *-e* in the nom. sing. fem. and the nom. and acc. plur. is of Middle German (not Middle High German) origin. — 2 *Nibelunge* §141. *sluoc* §149. — 88, 1 *reit* “was riding” (durative); cf. *gerîten* 56, 3. — 2 *daz ist . . . geseit* §160 b. — 89, 1 *was getragen* cf. §160 b. — 90, 1 *zuo zin* §152 a. — 91, 1 *enpfîengen* §162 a. — 4 *bâtens* = *bâten* es. *inz* = *in* ez. — 92, 2 *kanzwâgene* §108.

*noch mê des rôten goldes von Nibelunge lant.  
daz solde in allez teilen des küenen Sîfrides hant.*

93. *Dô gâben si im ze miete daz Nibelunges swert.  
si wurden mit dem dienste vil übele gewert,  
den in dâ leisten solde der vil küene man.  
ern kundes niht verenden. dô wart der helt von in bestân.*

94. *Den schatz er ungeteilet belîben muose lân.  
dô begunden mit im strîten der zweier künige man.  
mit ir vater swerte, daz Palmunc was genant,  
ez streit ab in der küene den hort unt Nibelunge lant.*

95. *Si heten dâ ir friunde zwelf küene man,  
die starc als risen wâren. waz kundez si vervân?  
die sluoc sît mit zorne diu Sîfrides hant,  
unt recken sibenhundert dwang er von Nibelunge lant.*

96. *Dar zuo die rîchen künige die sluog er beide tôt.  
er kom von Albrîche sît in grôze nôt.  
der wânde sîne herren rechen dâ zehant,  
unz er die grôzen sterke sît an Sîfride vant.*

97. *Done kunde im gestrîten daz starke getwerc.  
alsam die lewen wilde sie liefen an den berc,  
dâ er die tarnkappen Albrîchen ane gewan.  
dô wart des hordes herre Sîfrit der vil küene man.*

98. *Die dâ getorsten strîten, die lâgen alle erslagen.  
den schatz hiez er dô balde fûeren unde tragen,  
dâ in ê dâ nâmen die Nibelunges man.  
Albrîch der vil starke dô die kameran gewan.*

99. *Er muos im swern eide, er dient im sô sîn kneht.  
aller hande dienste was er im gerecht."*

94, 3 *vater* gen. sing. §142 a. *was genant* §160 d. — 96, 3 *wânde* §102.  
— 98, 1 *getorsten strîten* in contrast with 97, 1; *ge-* intensifies the meaning of this passage. §66. — 3 *nâmen* pluperfect. — 99, 1 *dient* future meaning "that he would serve", introduced without a conjunction. — 2 *aller hande* (§153 a) *dienste* "for service of all kinds".

sô sprach von Tronege Hagene. "daz hât er getân.  
alsô grôzer krefte nimêre recke gewan.

100. Noch weiz ich an im mêre, daz mir ist bekant.  
einen lintrachen sluoc des heledes hant.  
dô badet er in dem bluote. des ist der helt gemeit  
von alsô vester hiute, daz in nie wâfen sît versneit.

101. Nu suln wir den recken enpfâhen deste baz,  
daz wir iht verdienen den sînen starken haz.  
sîn lîp der ist sô küene, man sol in holden hân.  
er hât mit sînen ellen sô mânigiu wunder getân."

102. Dô sprach der küninc rîche: "du maht wol haben wâr.  
nu sich, wie degenlîche er stêt gein strîtes vâr,  
er unt die sîne degene, der wunderküene man!  
wir suln im begene hin nider zuo dem recken gân."

103. "Daz mugt ir", sprach dô Hagene, "wol mit êren tuon.  
er ist von hôhem künne, eines rîchen küniges suon.  
er stêt in der gebære, (mich dunket, wizze Krist!)  
ez ensîn niht kleiniu mære, dar umbe er her geriten ist".

104. Dô sprach der wirt des landes: "nu sî uns willekomen!  
er ist edel unde küene. daz hân ich wol vernomen.

---

101, 4 mit *sînen ellen* "with his outstanding bravery". The noun *ellen* has no plural; but occasionally the dat. form *ellen* takes an attribute in the form of a dat. plur. The ending *-en* reminded the speaker of the plural. Expressions like *sînen ellen* are, therefore, to be regarded as plural forms. Here the plural intensifies the basic meaning of the noun. Cf. *wolken* Nib. 283, 2. *mânigiu* nom. plur. of *manic*. The ending *-iu* of the adjective (nom. sing. fem. and nom. acc. plur. neuter) often causes umlaut. — 102, 2 *gein* = *gegen* cf. §127 b. — 103, 1 "You may really do that without doing any harm to (without jeopardizing) your prestige; you may be sure that by doing that you will not do any harm to your prestige." — 4 *ez ensîn* . . . conjunctionless subordinate clause: "He gives the impression that no trifling matters brought him here." — 104, 1 *sî* §82 b.

*des sul ouch er geniezen in Burgonden lant.*  
*dô gie der künic Gunther dâ er Sîfriden vant.*

105. *Der wirt unt sîne recken enpfîengen sô den gast,*  
*daz in an ir zûhten wênic iht gebrast.*  
*des begunde in nîgen der vil küene man.*  
*man sach in zûhtelîche mit den sînen recken stân.*

106. “*Mich wundert dirre mære*”, sprach der wirt zehant,  
 “*von wanne ir, edel Sîfrit, sît komen in daz lant,*  
*oder waz ir werbet ze Wormez an den Rîn.*”  
*dô sprach der gast zem künige: “daz sol iuch unwerdaget sîn.*

107. *Mir wart gesaget mære in mînes vater lant,*  
*daz hie bî iu wâren (daz het ich gern erkant)*  
*die kûenesten recken, (des hân ich vil vernomen),*  
*die ie künic gewinne. darumbe bin ich her bekommen.*

108. *Ouch hôrt ich iu selben der degenheite jehen,*  
*daz man künic deheinen küener habe gesehen.*  
*des giht iu vil der liute über elliu disiu lant.*  
*nune wil ich niht erwinden, unz ez mir werde bekant.*

109. *Ich bin ouch recke unt solde krône tragen.*  
*ich wil daz gern füegen, daz si von mir sagen,*  
*daz ich habe von rehte liute unde lant.*  
*dar umbe sol mîn êre unt mîn houbt wesen pfant.*

---

104, 4 “Then King Gunther went to Sigfrid.” — 105, 2 *wênic iht* “nothing at all, not the least”. — 106, 4 *iuch* §31 b. MS. A has *iu* and thus proves (against Holtzmann) that *iuch* is dative. According to Paul-Gierach, *Mhd. Grammatik*, §145, Anm. 5, *iu* was used for *iuch* and vice versa from the second half of the 13th century on. However, MS. C from which our text is taken dates back to the beginning of the 13th century. — 108, 3 *giht* see *jehen. elliu* §42. — 109, 2 *gern* = *gerne* here used pleonastically to intensify *ich wil. sagen* subjunctive (purpose). — 3 *habe* subjunctive (indirect discourse).



110. *Nu ir sît sô küene, als mir ist geseit,  
 (jane ruoche ich, ist iemen liep oder leit)  
 ich wil an iu ertwingen, swaz ir mugt hân,  
 lant unde bürge, daz sol mir wesen allez undertân."*

111. *Den küenic hete wunder, unt sîne man allesam,  
 umbe disiu mære, diu er hie vernam,  
 daz er des hete willen, er næme im sîniu lant.  
 daz hórten sîne degene. dô wart in zûrnen bekant.*

112. "Wie hete ich daz verdienet?" sprach Gunther der  
 degene,  
*"des mîn vater lange mit êren hât gepflegen,  
 daz wir daz solden vliessen von iemannes kraft?  
 wir liezen übel schînen, daz ouch wir pflegen ritterschaft."*

113. "Ich enwil es niht erwînden", sprach aber der küene  
 man,  
*"ez enmûge von dînem ellen dîn lant den vride hân,  
 ich wils alles walten. unt ouch diu erbe mîn,  
 erwirbestuz mit ellen, diu suln von rehte wesen dîn.*

114. *Dîn lant unt ouch daz mîne suln gelîche ligen.  
 sweder unser einer am andern mac gesigen,  
 dem sol ez allez dienen, die liute unt ouch diu lant."  
 dâ wider redet aleine der herre Gêrnôt zehant.*

115. "Wir hân des niht gedîngen", sprach dô Gêrnôt,  
*daz wir iht lande irtwingen, daz iemen drumbe tôt  
 gelige vor recken handen. wir haben rîchiu lant.  
 diu dienen uns von rehte. ze nieman sint si baz bewant."*

---

110, 2 *jane* = *jâ ne*. *ist* introducing a conjunctionless subordinated clause: "for I do not care whether anybody likes it or not." — 3 *swaz* ... *hân* "everything you may have". — 3-4 *swaz* ... *bürge* double relationship; §146. — 111, 3 *er næme* subordinate clause of purpose without conjunction: "He intended to take his lands away from him." — 4 "Then they grew furious." — 112, 3 *iemannes* gen. of *iemân*. — 113, 2 *ez enmûge* ... "unless ..." §57. — 3 *wils* = *wil es*. — 4 *erwirbestuz* = *erwirbest du ez*.

116. *In vil grimmen muote*      *dâ stuonden die friunde sîn.*  
*dô was ouch dar under*      *der herre Ortwîn.*  
*der sprach: "disiu suone*      *ist mir von herzen leit.*  
*in hât der starke Sîfrit*      *unverdinet widerseit.*

117. *Ob ir unt iwer brüeder*      *hetet niht die wer,*  
*unt ob er danne fuorte*      *ein nichel küniges her,*  
*ich trowte wol erstrîten,*      *daz der küene man*  
*die grôzen übermüete*      *von wâren schulden müese lân."*

118. *Daz zurnde harte sêre*      *der helt von Niderlant:*  
*"sich ensol niht vermezzen*      *wider mich dîn hant.*  
*ich bin ein künic rîche.*      *sô bistu küniges man.*  
*jâ enzimt dir niht mit strîte*      *deheinen mînen genôz bestân."*

119. *Nâch swerten rief dô sêre*      *von Metzen Ortwîn.*  
*er mohte Hagenen swestersuon*      *von Tronege vil wol sîn.*  
*daz der sô lange dagete,*      *daz was dem künige leit.*  
*dô understuondez Gêrnôt,*      *der ritter küene unt gemeit.*

120. *Er sprach ze Ortwîne:*      *"lât iwer zürnen stân.*  
*uns enhât der herre Sîfrit*      *solhes niht getân.*  
*wir meigen ez noch wol scheiden*      *mit zühten (dêst mîn rât)*  
*unt haben in ze friunde.*      *daz uns lobelicher stât."*

121. *Des antwurte Hagene:*      *"uns mac wol wesen leit,*  
*allen iwern degenen,*      *daz er ie gereit*  
*durch strîten her ze Rîne.*      *er soldez haben lân.*  
*im heten mîne herren*      *solher leide niht getân."*

122. *Dô sprach aber Sîfrit,*      *der kreftige man:*  
*"müet iuch daz, her Hagene,*      *daz ich gesprochen hân,*  
*sô sol ich lâzen kieser,*      *daz die hende mîn*  
*wellent vil gewaldec*      *hie zen Burgonden sîn."*

116, 3 *disiu suone* referring to Gernot's answer, from whom he expected straightforward acceptance of the challenge. — 117, 3 *trowte* see *trouwen*. — 118, 3 *bistu* = *bist du*. — 119, 4 *understuondez* = *understuond ez*. — 120, 3 *meigen* (perhaps a mistake?) = *müigen*. *dêst* = *daz ist*. — 122, 2 *müet* 3rd sing. of *müezen*.



123. "Daz sol ich eine wenden", sprach dô Gêrnôt.  
 allen sînen degenen reden er verbôt  
 iht mit übermüete, des im wære leit.  
 dô gedâht ouch Sîfrit an die vil hêrlîchen meit.

124. "Wie zæme uns mit iu strîten?" sprach aber Gêrnôt.  
 "swaz helde nu dar under müesen ligen tôt,  
 wir hetens lützil êre, ob wir ez wolden tuon."  
 des antwurte Sîfrit, des künic Sigemundes suon:

125. "War umbe bîtet Hagene unt ouch Ortwîn,  
 daz er niht gâhet strîten mit den friunden sîn,  
 der er alsô manigen hie ze lande hât?"  
 si muosin rede vermîden. daz was Gêrnôtes rât.

126. "Ir sult uns wesen willekomen", sprach Gîselher daz  
 kint,  
 "unt iwer hergesellen, die hie mit iu sint.  
 wir suln iu gerne dienen, ich unt die mâge mîn."  
 dô hiez man den gesten schenken Guntheres wîn.

127. Dô sprach der wirt des landes: "allez daz wir hân,  
 geruochet irs nâch êren, daz sî iu undertân  
 unt sî mit iu geteilet, lîp unde guot."  
 dô wart der herre Sîfrit ein lützel senfter genuot.

128. Dô hiez man in behalten alliz ir gewant.  
 man gab in herberge, die besten, die man vant.  
 Sîfrides knappen man schuof in guot gemach.  
 den gast man sît vil gerne dâ zen Burgonden sach.

129. Man bôt im michel êre dar nâch ze manigen tagen,  
 tûsint stunden mêre, danne ich iu kunde gesagen.

---

123, 4 In the first excitement upon his arrival Sigfrid had entirely forgotten that he had come for Kriemhilde's sake and not for any territorial conquest. Now all of a sudden Kriemhilde comes to his mind again (= *gedâht*). — 124, 3 *hetens* = *helen es*. — 127, 2 *nâch êren* "in a form reconcilable with our honor". — 128, 1 *alliz* = *allez*.

daz hete verscholt sîn ellen.      ir sult wol wizzen daz.  
in sach vil lützil iemen,      der im wære gehaz.

130. Sich vlizzen kurzewîle      die künige unt ouch ir man.  
sô was er ie der beste,      swes man dâ began,  
des kunde im volgen niemen,      (sô nichel was sîn kraft),  
sô si den stein wurfen      oder schuzzen den schaft.

131. Swâ sô vor den frouwen      durch ir hofscheit  
kurzewîle pflâgen      die ritter vil gemeit,  
dâ sach man ie vil gerne      den helt ûz Niderlant.  
er het ûf hôhe minne      sîne sinne gewant.

132. Ze hove die schænen frouwen      vrâgeten mære,  
wer der stolze vrende      recke wære.  
"sîn lîp der ist sô schæne,      vil rîche sîn gewant."  
dô sprâchen ir genuoget:      "ez ist der künic von Niderlant".

133. Swes iemen dâ begunde,      des was sîn lîp bereit.  
er truoc in sînem muote      ein minneclîche meit,  
unt ouch in ein diu frouwe,      die er noch niene gesach.  
diu im in heinlîche      vil dicke güetlîche sprach.

134. Swenne ûfem hove wolden      spilen dâ diu kint,  
ritter unde knappen,      daz sach vil dicke sint  
Kriemhilt durch diu venster,      diu küniginne hêr.  
deheiner kurzewîle      bedorste diu küniginne mêr.

135. Unt wesser, daz in sache      die er in herzen truoc,  
dâ het er kurzewîle      immer ane genuoc.  
solt ouch er si sehen,      ir sult gelouben daz,  
daz im in dirre werlde      kunde nimmer werden baz.

---

130, 2 swes man dâ began double relationship. — 131, 1 durch ir hofscheit "for the purpose of paying them their attentions"; ir stands in double relationship with frouwen (as the object of the hofscheit) and ritter (as its subject). — 4 hôhe minne see Nib. 47, 1. — 133, 3 ein diu frouwe "one of the ladies". niene = nie ne. — 134, 4 deheiner . . . mêr "no other". — 135, 1 wesser = wesse er. — 2 dâ . . . ane belong together; see dâ in the vocabulary.

136. *Swenner bî den recken*      *ûf dem hove stuont,*  
*alsô noch die liute*      *durch kurzewîle tuont,*  
*sô stuont sô minneclîche*      *daz Sigelinde kint,*  
*daz in durch herzenliebe*      *trûtte manic frowe sint.*

137. *Er dâht ouch manige zîte:*      “*wie sol daz geschehen,*  
*daz ich die maget edele*      *mit ougen müge gesehen,*  
*die ich von herzen minne*      *unt lunge hân getân,*  
*diu ist mir vil vremde.*      *des muoz ich dicke trûric stân.”*

138. *Swenne die künige rîche*      *riten in ir lant,*  
*sô muosin ie die recken*      *mit in al zehant.*  
*dâ mit reit ouch Sîfrit.*      *daz was den frowen leit.*  
*er hete durch hôhe minne*      *dicke michel arebeit.*

139. *Sus wonter bî den herren*      (*daz ist al wâr*)  
*in Guntheres lande*      *volleclîch ein jâr,*  
*daz er die minneclîchen*      *die zîte niene gesach,*  
*von der im sît vil liebe*      *unt ouch vil leide geschach.*

## 2. *Wie Sîfrit Kriemhilde alrêrste ersach.*

257. *Die wider heim ze hûse*      *der reise heten muot,*  
*die bat man noch belîben,*      *alsô man friunde tuot.*  
*der künic gie ze râte,*      *wie er lôte sînen man.*  
*si heten sînen willen*      *nâch grôzen êren getân.*

258. *Dô sprach der herre Gêrnôt:*      “*man sol si rîten lân.*  
*über sehs wochen*      (*sî in daz kunt getân*)  
*daz si komen widere*      *zeiner hôchgezît.*  
*sô ist maniger geheilet,*      *der nu vil sêre wunder lît.*

---

136, 1 *Swenner* = *swenne er*. — 2 *durch kurzewîle* “for the purpose of providing entertainment”. — 4 *trûtte* cf. *trûten*: “Many ladies were deeply in love with him.” — 137, 3 *hân getân* cf. *tuon* in the vocabulary. — 139, 1 *wonter* = *wonte er*. — 3 *daz . . . gesach* “without ever seeing the lovely one during that time”. — 258, 3 *zeiner* = *ze einer*. — 4 *sô* “in the meanwhile, until then”. *wunder* inflected form of *wunt*. *lît* §127 a.

259. *Dô gert ouch urloubes der helt von Niderlant.*  
*dô der küninc Gunther den willen sîn ervant,*  
*er bat in minneclîche noch bî im bestân.*  
*wan durch Kriemhilde, sô wær ez nimmer getân.*

260. *Dar zuo was er ze rîche, daz er iht næme solt.*  
*er het daz wol verdienet. der küninc was im holt.*  
*sam wâren sîne mâge. die heten daz gesehen,*  
*waz von sînem ellen in dem sturme was geschehen.*

261. *Durch der schænen willen gedâht er noch bestân,*  
*die er vil gerne sæhe. sît wart ez getân*  
*al nâch sînem muote. si wart im wol bekant.*  
*sît reit er vræliche heim in sînes vater lant.*

272. *An einem pfienstmorgen sach man für gân*  
*gekleidet wînnelîche vil manigen küenen man,*  
*fünff tûsint oder mêre, dâ zer hôchgezît,*  
*der lop vil volleclîche an den Burgonden lit.*

273. *Der wirt der het die sinne, im was wol bekant,*  
*wie rehte herzenlîche der helt von Niderlant*  
*sîne swester trûte, swier si niene gesach,*  
*der man sô grôzer schæne vor allen juncfrowen jach.*

274. *Er sprach: "nu râtet alle, mâge unt mine man,*  
*wie wir die hôchgezîte sô lobelîche hân,*  
*daz man uns drumbe iht schelte her nâch dirre zît.*  
*ein ieslich lop vil stæte ze jungest an den werken lit."*

---

260, 1 cf. 562, 4. — 261, 3 *si . . . bekant* "He became well acquainted with her." — 272, 4 *der* (gen. sing. referring to *hôchgezît*) *lop . . . lit* "the praise of which lies abundantly on the Burgundians" = "for which the Burgundians earned abundant praise". — 273, 1 *im was wol bekant* is to be subordinated (as a clause denoting a consequence) to the preceding sentence. — 3 *trûte* see *triuuten*. *swier* = *swie er*. — 274, 4 This line looks like a proverbial saying: "Anything (laudatory or deprecatory) said about a work stays on steadfastly to the last."

275. *Dô sprach ûzer Metzen der degene Ortewîn:  
 "welt ir mit vollen êren zer hôchgezîte sîn,  
 sô sult ir lâzen schouwen diu wînnedlîchen kint,  
 die mit sô vollen êren hie zen Burgonden sint.*

276. *Waz wære mannes wînne, des freute sich ir lîp,  
 ez entâten schæne meide unt hêrlîchiu wîp?  
 ir lâzet iwer swester für iwer geste gân!"  
 der rât was ze liebe vil manigem degene getân.*

277. *"Des wil ich gerne volgen", sprach der küninc dô.  
 alle die ez erfunden, die wârens harte vrô.  
 man saget ouch daz froun Uoten unt ir tohter wolgetân,  
 daz si mit ir megeden hin ze hove solde gân.*

278. *Dô wart ûz den kisten gesuochet guot gewant.  
 swaz man in der valde der liechten wate vant,  
 porten unde pouge, des was in vil bereit.  
 sich zierte mînnedlîche vil manic wâtîchiu meit.*

279. *Vil manic recke tumber des tages hete muot,  
 daz er an ze sehene den frowen wære guot,  
 daz er dô für name niht eines küninges lant.  
 si sâhen die vil gerne, die si heten nie bekant.*

280. *Dô hiez der küninc rîche mit sîner swester gân,  
 die ir dienen solden, wol hundred sîner man,  
 ir unt sîner mâge. die truogen swert enhant.  
 daz was daz hofgesinde ûzer Burgonden lant.*

281. *Uoten die vil rîchen die sach man mit ir komen.  
 diu hete frowen schæne geselledlîch genomen*

276, 1 *des fr. . . lîp* relative clause with word order of a main clause. — 2 *entâten* §57. — 277, 2 *wârens* = *wâren es*. — 3 *froun* see *frou* in the vocabulary. — 4 *si* referring to *tohter*. *megeden* dat. plur. of *maget* §155. — 278, 3 *bereit* see *bereiten*. — 279, 1 *tumber* see *tump* and §41. — 2 "if the ladies would deign to look at him". — 4 *bekant* p.p. of *kennen*. — 280, 4 *lant* §157.

wol hundred oder mêre.      die truogen rîchiu kleit.  
 nu gie mit Kriemhilde      vil manic wætlîchiu meit.

282. Von einer kemenâten      sach man si alle gân.  
 dâ wart vil michel schouwen      von recken dar getân,  
 die des gedingen heten,      ob kûnde daz geschehen,  
 daz si Kriemhilde      solden vrælîchen sehen.

283. Nu gie diu minneclîche      alsô der morgenrôt  
 tuot ûz den trûeben wolken.      dâ schiet von maniger nôt  
 der si dâ truog in herzen      unt lange het getân.  
 er sach die minneclîchen      nu vil hêrlîchen stân.

284. Já lûht ir von ir wæte      vil manic edel stein.  
 ir rôsenrôtiu varwe      vil minneclîche schein.  
 swer sô wûnschen solde,      der enkûnde niht gejehen,  
 daz er in dirre werlde      hâte schæners iht gesehen.

285. Sam der liehte mâne      vor den sternen stât,  
 des schîn sô lûterlîche      ab den wolken gât,  
 dem stuont si vil gelîche      vor maniger frowen guot.  
 des wart vil wol gehæhet      den zieren heleden der muot.

286. Die rîchen kamerære      die sach man vor in gân.  
 die hôchgemuoten degene      dine wolden daz niht lân,  
 sine drungen dâ si sâhen      die minneclîchen meit.  
 Sîfride dem edelen      was beidiu lieb unde leit.

281, 4 gie §114 a. — 282, 1 einer §144. — 3 des is not the definite article of *gedingen*, but the object of *gedingen heten* (cf. 115, 1), taken up by *daz* in line 4. — 4 *Kriemhilde* §140 c. *vrælîchen* adv. depicting the state of mind of the *recken* while seeing *Kriemhilde*. — 283, 2 *tuot* cf. *tuon* in the vocabulary. For *wolken* instead of *wolkenen* see *ellen* 101, 4. On the other hand, cf. *degenen* 63, 4; 78, 3; 329, 4. — 3 *der* (= *Sigfrid*) §12 c. *het getân* cf. *tuon* in the vocabulary. — 286, 2 *dine* = *die ne*. — 2-3 *dine wolden daz niht lân, sine drungen* (pret. subj.) *dâ si sâhen . . .* "They did not want to abstain from (could not help) pressing forward toward the place where they saw . . ." — 3 *sine . . . meit* is the direct object of *lân* in form of a subordinate clause. Such subordinate clauses have the subjunctive and a pleonastic negation (*-ne* or *en-*) after a negative main clause. — 4 *Sîfride . . . was beidiu lieb unde leit* "Sigfrid was both glad and sorry."



287. *Er dâht in sînem muote: "wie kunde daz ergân,  
daz ich dich minnen solde, als ich gedingen hân?  
sol aber ich dich vrenden, sô wær ich sanfter tôt."  
er hete von ir schulden tougen lieb unde nôt.*

288. *Dô stuont sô minneclîche daz Sigemundes kint,  
sam er entworfen wære an ein permint,  
von guoter meister listen, als man im dô jach,  
daz man helt deheinen sô wællîchen nie gesach.*

289. *Die mit Kriemhilde giengen, die hiezen von den wegen  
wîchen allenthalben. daz leiste manic degen.  
diu hôhe tragenden herzen freuten manigen lîp.  
man sach in grôzen zûhten vil manic hêrlîchez wîp.*

290. *Dô sprach von Burgonden der herre Gêrnôt:  
"dêr iu sînen dienst sô minneclîche bôt,  
Gunther, lieber bruoder, dem sult ir tuon alsam  
vor allen disen degenen. des râts ich nimmer mich gescham.*

291. *Ir heizet Sîfriden, den Sigemundes suon,  
gên zuo Kriemhilde, ob ir wol wellet tuon.  
diu nie gegruozte recken, diu sol in grûezen pflegen,  
dâ mit wir zeinem vriunde habn den zierlîchen degen."*

292. *Dô giengens wirtes mâge dâ man den recken vant.  
si sprâchen zuo dem künige úzer Niderlant:  
"der wirt hât iu erlobet, ir sult ze hove gân.  
sîn swester sol iuch grûezen. daz ist zen êren iu getân."*

---

288, 2 *er* (masc.) referring to *kint* (neuter); cf. §130 b. — 3 *als* "that" introducing the consequence of *sô minneclîche* in line 1. — 289, 2 *leiste* see *leisten*. — 290, 2 Gernot refers to a war against the Saxons and the Danes which Sigfrid had helped to win. — 4 *gescham* cf. §63. — 291, 1 *Ir heizet* is imperative. — 3 *gegruozte* see *gegrûezen*. — 292, 1 *giengens* = *giengen des*. — 3 *ir sult . . . gân* subordinated to *erlobet*: "The sovereign had allowed you to appear at court." — 4 *ist . . . getân* cf. §160 b.

293. *Dô wart der degen guote der mære vil gemeit.  
jâ truog er in dem muote lieb âne leit,  
daz er sehen solde daz wînnelîche kint.  
mit minnelîchen tugenden si gruozte Sîfriden sint.*

294. *Dô si den hôchgemuoten vor ir stênde sach,  
dô enzunde sich ir varwe. diu schæne magt sprach:  
"sît willekomen, herre Sîfrit, ein edel ritter guot."  
dô wart im von dem gruoze vil wol gehæhet der muot.*

295. *Er neig ir vlîzeclîche. bî henden si in vie.  
wie rehte minnelîche der recke bî ir gie.  
mit lieben ougenblicken einander sâhen an  
der herre unt ouch diu frouwe. daz wart tougenlîch getân.*

296. *Wart iht dâ friuntlîche getwungen wîziu hant  
von herzenlieber minne, daz ist mir unbekant.  
doch enmac ich niht gelouben, daz ez wûrde lân.  
si het im holden willen harte schiere kunt getân.*

297. *Bî der sumerzîte unt gein des meijen tagen  
kund er in sînem herzen nimmer mê getragen  
minnelîcher freuden, denn er ir dô gewan,  
dô im diu gie sô nâhen, die er ze trûte wolde hân.*

299. *Von swelher künige landen die geste kômen dar,  
die nâmen al gemeine niwan ir zweier war.  
ir wart erlobet küssen den wætlîchen man.  
im wart bî sînem lebene nie sô liebe getân.*

---

293, 2 *lieb âne leit* in contrast with 286, 4. — 4 *gruozte* see *grûezen*. — 294, 1 *stênde* pres. participle of *stên*. — 2 *magt* = *maget*. — 3 *ein* here used in addressing a person; cf. §144 and Behaghel, *Deutsche Syntax* I, pp. 74-75. — 295, 1 *vie* pret. of *vâhen*. During the Middle Ages people did not go arm in arm, but holding each other by the hand. — 4 *wart . . . getân* cf. §160 a. — 297, 1 *unt* here merely used to introduce an apposition. — 299, 1 *kômen* pluperfect. — 3 *küssen den wætlîchen man* is subject of the sentence.



301. *Dô hiez man allenthalben wîchen von den wegen  
den minnedlîchen frouwen. vil manigen kûenen degen  
sach man gezogenlîchen ze hove mit ir gân.  
sît wart von ir gescheiden der vil wætlîche man.*

302. *Dô gie si zuo dem mûnster. ir volgete manic wîp.  
dô was ouch sô gezieret der Kriemhilde lîp,  
daz dâ hôher wînsche maniger wart verlorn.  
si was dâ zougenweide vil manigem recken geborn.*

303. *Vil kûeme erbeite Sîfrit, daz man dâ gesanc.  
er mohte sînen sælden immer sagen danc,  
daz im diu was sô wæge, die er in herzen truoc.  
ouch was er der schænen holt von schulden genuoc.*

304. *Dô si kom für daz mûnster, sam er ê hete gelân,  
man sach in friuntlîche zuo Kriemhilde gân.  
dô begunde im danken diu vil schæniu mit,  
daz er vor ir mâgen sô rehte hêrlîchen streit.*

305. *“Nu lôn iu got, her Sîfrit”, sprach daz schæne kint,  
“daz ir habt verdienet, daz iu die recken sint  
sô holt von wâren schulden, als ich si hære jehen.”  
dô begunder minnedlîche an vroun Kriemhilden sehen.*

306. *“Ich sol in immer dienen”, alsô sprach der degen,  
“unt enwil mân houbet nimmer ê gelegen,  
ich engedien ir hulde, als ich des willen hân.  
des ist ein teil, frow Kriemhilt, nâch iwern hulden ergân.”*

**301**, 4 *gescheiden* It was customary for ladies and gentlemen to enter the church separately and to be separated from each other in church. — **302**, 3 *hôher w.* cf. *hôhe minne* 47, 1. — 4 *zougenweide* = *ze ougenweide*. — **304**, 3 *begunde danken* §122 B b. — 4 *streit* pluperfect; cf. 295, 2. — **305**, 1 *lôn* (= *lône*) §82 b. — 4 *begunder* = *begunde er*. *Kriemhilden* Note the weak ending. Cf. §140 c. — **306**, 1 *sol* §63. — 3 *engedien* (= *en gediene*) subj. §57. The negative subjunctive of the subordinate clause, with the adverb *ê* of the (negative) main clause as antecedent, may be translated by the conjunction “until” introducing an affirmative subordinate clause: “and I shall never lay my head to rest until I earn their good-will through my service.” — 4 *ein teil* cf. §43 b.

3. *Wie Gunther ze Îslande mit sînen gesellen kom.*

327. *Iteniurwe mære sich huoben umben Rîn.  
 ez sprâchen zuo dem künige die hœhsten mâge sîn,  
 war umbe er niht ennæme ein wîp zuo sîner ê.  
 dô sprach der künic rîche: "ine wil niht langer bîten mê.*

328. *Des wil ich mich berâten, wâ ich die mûge nemen,  
 diu mir unt mîme rîche ze frowen mûge zemen  
 an edel unt ouch an schæne, der gib ich mîniu lant.  
 als ich die recht ervinde, si sol iu werden wol bekant."*

329. *Ez was ein küniginne gesezzen über sê.  
 ir gelîche enheine man wesse mînder mê.  
 diu was unzmâzen schæne. vil michel was ir kraft.  
 si schôz mit snellen degenen umbe mînne den schaft.*

330. *Den stein den warf si verre, dar nâch si wîte spranc.  
 swer an si wenden wolde sînen gedanc,  
 driu spil muoser an behaben der frowen wolgeborn.  
 gebrast im an dem einen, er het daz houbet sîn verlorn.*

331. *Des het diu küniginne unzmâzen vil getân.  
 dô gevriesch ez bî dem Rîne ein ritter wolgetân.  
 der wande sîne sinne an daz hêrlîche wîp.  
 dar umbe muosin helede sît verliesen den lîp.*

332. *Dô si eines tages sâzen, der künic unt sîne man,  
 manigen ende si ez mâzen, beidiu wider unde dan,*

---

327, 1 *iteniurwe* (instead of *iteniurwiu*) cf. 87, 1 and *iteniurwe kleit* 1394, 4. *huoben* see *heben* §77 e. *umben* = *umbe den*. — 2 *hœhsten* "the highest in rank". — 3 *ê* §126. — 328, 2 *mîme* = *mîneme* §84 b. *ze frowen* cf. *ze mînnen* 49, 4. — *die recht* acc. sing. fem. "the right one". — 329, 2 *wesse* see *wîzen* §161 a. — 4 *umbe mînne* "for her love (or maidenhood respectively) as the prize". — 330, 3 *muoser* = *muose er*, see *mûezen* §79 b. — 4 *an dem einen* "in one of them". *er het . . . verlorn* "His life was done for." *verlorn* §149. — 331, 2 *ein* §144. — 3 *wande* see *wenden*. — 4 *muosin* see *mûezen* §79 b. — 332, 1 *eines tages* "one day". — 2 *manigen ende* "in many respects". *beidiu wider unde dan* "from every point of view".

*welhe ir herre möhte zeinem wibe nemen,  
diu im ze frowen töhte unt ouch dem lande möhte zemen.*

333. *Dô sprach der vogt von Rîne: "ich wil nider an den sê  
hin ze Prûnhilde, swie ez mir ergê.  
durch ir unmâzen schæne sô wâge ich mînen lîp.  
den wil ich verliesen, sine werde mîn wîp."*

334. *"Daz wil ich widerrâten," sprach dô Sîfrit,  
"jâ hât diu küniginne sô vreislîche site,  
swer umbe ir minne wirbet, daz ez im hôhe stât.  
des muget ir der reise haben wærlîchen rât."*

335. *Dô sprach der künic Gunther: "nie geborn wart ein wîp  
sô starc unt ouch sô küene, ine wolde wol ir lîp  
in strîte betwingen mit mîn selbes hant."  
"swîget," sprach dô Sîfrit, "iu ist ir ellen unbekant."*

336. *Unt wæren iwer viere, dine kunden niht genesen  
von ir vil grimmen zorne. ir lât den willen wesen!  
daz rât ich iu mit triuwen. welt ir niht ligen tôt,  
sone lât iuch nâch ir minne niht ze sêre wesen nôt."*

337. *"Sô wil ich iu wol râten," sprach dô Hagene,  
"ir bitet Sîfride mit iu ze tragene*

---

332, 3 möhte "might" see *mugen* §133. — 4 töhte see *tugen* §161 b. — For the cesura-rhyme occurring in this stanza see §138. — 333, 1 *vogt von Rîne* Gunther. — 2 *swie ez mir ergê* "regardless of what may happen to me". — 3 *unmâzen schæne* cf. 45, 1. *sô* not to be translated, emphasizes the preceding adverbial expression (the reason for Gunther's decision). Cf. §86, line 35. — 4 *sine* (= *si ne*) *werde* §57. — 334, 3 To translate this passage, arrange it like this: *daz, swer* ("that everybody who", "that if anybody") *umbe ir minne wirbet, ez im hôhe stât*. — 335, 2 *ine* (= *ich ne*) *wolde* subordinate clause (denoting a consequence) with subjunctive after a negative main clause without conjunction: "that for all that I would not want to defeat . . ." — 3 *mîn selbes* §106. — 336, 1 *Unt wæren* cf. §58. *dine* = *die ne*. — 2 *lât* imperative. — 3 *rât* = *râte*. *welt ir . . .* cf. §58. — 4 *iuch* dative. — 337, 2 *ze tragene* = G. *zu tragen* §124. "You ask Sigfrid to carry with you . . ."

*die vil starken sorge.      daz ist nu mîn rât,  
side im daz ist sô kündic,      wiez umbe Prünhilde stât."*

338. *Er sprach: "wiltu mir helfen,      degen Sîfrit,  
die minneclîche erwerben?      tuostu des ich dich bite,  
unt wirt mir zeinem trâte      daz hêrlîche wîp,  
ich wil durch dînen willen      wâgen êre unde lîp."*

339. *Des antwurte Sîfrit:      "swie mir mîn dinc dâ kum,  
gîstu mir dîn swester,      sô bin ich dir frum,  
die schænen Kriemhilde,      ein küniginne hêr.  
ine ger deheiner miete      nâch mînen arebeiten mêr."*

340. *"Daz lobe ich," sprach dô Gunther,      "Sîfrit, an dîne hant.  
unt kumt diu schæne Prünhilt      her in dîtze lant,  
sô wil ich dir ze wîbe      die mîne swester geben.  
sô mahtu mit der schænen      immer vrêlîche leben."*

341. *Des swuoren si dô eide,      die recken vil hêr.  
des wart ir arebeiten      verre deste mêr,  
ê si die wolgetânen      brachten an den Rîn.  
des muosen die vil küenen      starke sorgende sîn.*

342. *Von wilden getwergen      hân ich gehæret sagen,  
si sîn in holn bergen,      unt daz si ze schermie tragen  
einez, heizet tarnkappen,      von wunderlîcher art.  
swerz hât an sîme lîbe,      der sol vil gar wol sîn bewart*

---

337, 4 *wiez* (= *wie ez*) . . . *stât* "how things are". — 338, 1 *wiltu* = *wilt du* §27 a. — 2 *tuostu* = *tuost* (§28 a; cf. §58) *du*. — 3 *wirt* §68. *zeinem trâte* cf. 46, 3 and 297, 4. — 339, 1 *antwurte* see *antwürten* §102. *swie mir mîn dinc dâ kum* the same meaning as *swie ez mir ergê* 333, 2. *kum* see *komen* §70. — 2 *gîstu* = *gîst* (§165) *du* cf. §58. — 3 *ein* §144. — 4 *ine* = *ich ne*. — 340, 1 *Gunther* shakes hands on his promise and thus pledges his word of honor. — 2 *kumt diu* . . . cf. §58. — 3 *die mîne* cf. *Nib.* 63, 4. — 4 *mahtu* = *maht* (§33 e) *du* "may you." — 341, 1 *swuoren* pret. of *swern* §77 e. — 2 *arebeiten* gen. on account of *mêr*. — 3 *brachten* §103. — 342, 3 *einez* "a thing, something". *heizet tarnkappen* The subject (*ez* or *daz*) must be added in our mind. Note that, contrary to modern German practice, the predicative noun is not in the nominative case. — 4 *swerz* = *swer ez*. *sîme* §84 b.

343. Vor slegen unt vor stichen. in müge ouch niemen sehen,  
 swenn er sî dar inne. beide hæren unde spehen  
 mag er nâch sînem willen, daz in doch niemen siht.  
 er sî ouch verre sterker, als uns diu aventiure gih̄t.

344. Mit im fuorte Sîfrit die tarnkappen dan,  
 die der helt vil küene mit sorgen gewan  
 ab einem getwerge, daz hiez Albrîch.  
 sich bereiten zuo der verte die degene küene unde rîch.

345. Alsô der starke Sîfrit die tarnkappen truoc,  
 sô het er dar inne krefte genuoc,  
 zwelf ander manne sterke, als uns ist geseit.  
 er gewan mit grôzen listen die vil hêrlîchen meit.

346. Ouch was diu selbe tarnhût alsô getân,  
 daz dar inne worhte ein ieslîcher man,  
 swaz er selbe wolde, daz in doch niemen sach.  
 sô gewan er Prînhilde. dâ von im leide sît geschach.

347. "Du solt mir sagen, Sîfrit, ê unser vart ergê;  
 daz wir mit vollen êren komen an den sê,  
 suln wir iht ritter fûeren in Prînhilde lant?  
 zwei tûsint degene die werdent schiere besant."

348. "Swie vil wir volkes fuorten," sprach dô Sîfrit,  
 "(ez pfliget diu kûniginne sô eyslîcher site,  
 die müesen alle ersterben von ir übermuot.  
 ich wil inch baz bewîsen, degene küene unde guot:

---

343, 1 *slegen* see *slac*. *müge* (in line 1) and *sî* (in line 2) are subjunctives caused by *hân ich gehæret sagen* in 342, 1: indirect discourse; cf. §82 e. — 3 *daz* . . . *siht* "yet without anybody seeing him". — 4 *sterker* §74 a. A person is stronger while wearing the *tarnkappe*. *gih̄t* see *jehen*. — 344, 1 *im* reflexive; §31 c. *fuorte* see *fûeren*; §102. — 2 *gewan* pluperfect. — 3 *einem* §144. — 4 *bereiten* pret. of *bereiten* §101 b. — 345, 2 *krefte* (nom. *kraft*) §18 b. — 3 *sterke* (nom. *sterke*) §59. — 346, 2 *worhte* see *wûrken* §103. — 3 *daz* . . . *sach* "yet without anybody seeing him" cf. 343, 3. — 4 *leide* adv. *geschach* impersonal verb. — 347, 2 *mit vollen êren* "observing the proper forms". — 4 *besant* p.p. of *be-senden*. — 348, 1 *fuorten* subjunctive. — 3 *müesen* §79 c.

349. *Wir suln in recken wise varn ze tal den Rîn.*  
*die wil ich iu nennen, die daz suln sîn:*  
*zuo uns zwein noch zwêne unde niemen mê.*  
*sô erwerben wir die frouwen, swiez uns dar nâch ergê.*

350. *Der gesellen sît ir einer, der ander sol ich wesen,*  
*Hagene sî der dritte. wir mugen wol genesen.*  
*Dancwart sî der vierde, der vil küene man.*  
*uns endurfen ander tûsint mit strîte nimmer bestân."*

390. *Inre tage zwelven, sô wir hæren sagen,*  
*heten si die winde verre dan getragen*  
*gein Îsensteine in Prûnhilde lant.*  
*daz het von Tronege Hagene ê vil selten bekant.*

391. *Dô der künic Gunther sô vil der bürge sach*  
*unt ouch die wîten marke, wie bald er dô sprach:*  
*"sagt mir, friunt Sîfrit, ist iu daz bekant?*  
*wes sint dise bürge unt ouch daz hêrlîche lant?"*

392. *Ine hân bî mînen zîten (ine wolde lüge jehen)*  
*sô wol erbowen bürge mêre nie gesehen*  
*in deheinem einem lande, als ir hie vor uns stât.*  
*er mac wol wesen rîche, der si hie gebowen hât."*

---

**350**, 2 *wir mugen wol genesen* "we have a good chance of holding our own." — 4 *endurfen* = *en durfen*, see *darf* §§33 c and 161 d. — **390**, 1 *tage* (gen.) *zweilven* (dat.) cf: §60 d and f. — 4 *vil selten* "never" §43 b. *bekant* p.p. of *kennen*. — **391**, 2 *wie* ("how") is used rhetorically to emphasize the adv. *bald*. At the same time it reveals the humor of the author who is amused at the surprise shown by Gunther. — 4 *wes* §91 a. — **392**, 1 *ine* = *ich ne*. *ine wolde lüge jehen* may be understood either according to §57 ("unless I should want to tell a lie") or as an independent inserted affirmation ("I should not want to tell a lie"). The first interpretation presupposes an ellipsis, while the latter makes no difficulty at all. — 3 *in deheinem einem* "in not even one", cf. Nib. 63, 4. *ir* gen. plur. *stât* sing., because Gunther singles out the one nearest to him: "as one of them stands here before us". — 4 *er mac w. w. rîche* "he must be rich".



393. *Des antwurte Sîfrit:* "ez ist mir wol bekant.  
 ez ist frown Prünhilt liut unde lant,  
 unt Îsenstein diu veste, als ir mich hôrtet jehen.  
 dô muget ir noch hiute schæner frowen vil gesehen.

394. *Unt wil iu helden râten,* ir habt einen muot,  
 daz wir jehen geliche (jâ dunket ez mich guot),  
 swenne wir noch hiute für Prünhilde gân,  
 sô müezen wir mit sorgen vor der küniginne stân.

395. *Sô wir die minneclîchen* bî ir gesinde sehen,  
 sô sult ir, helede guote, wan einer rede jehen,  
 Gunther sî min herre, ich sî sîn eigen man.  
 sô mag unser wille harte wol an ir ergân."

414. *Diu porte stuont entslozen,* diu burc ûf getân.  
 dô liefen in engegene die Prünhilde man  
 unt enpfîengen wol die kûenen in ir frowen lant.  
 ir ross man hiez behalten unt ir schilde von der hant.

415. *Dô sprach ein kamerære:* "ir sult uns geben diu swert  
 unt ouch die liechten brünne." "des sît ir ungewert",  
 sprach Hagene der kûene, "wir selbe wellens tragen."  
 dô begunde in Sîfrit dô von diu rehten mære sagen.

416. "Man pfliht in dirre bürge, daz wil ich iu sagen,  
 daz decheine geste hie wâffen suln tragen.  
 ir sult si lân behalten; daz ist wol getân."  
 daz tet dô vil ungerne Hagen der Guntheres man.

428. *Dô diu küniginne* Sîfriden sach,  
 diu magt zûhteclîche zuo dem recken sprach:

---

393, 2 *frown Pr.* gen.; note the form *Prünhilt* instead of *Prünhilde*.  
*liut* = *liute*. — 394, 1 *ir . . . muot* subordinate clause. — 2 *jâ dunket . . .*  
 "It really seems important to me." — 414, 3 *enpfîengen* see *enpfâhen*. —  
 415, 2 *des sît ir ung.* "we flatly decline to do that". — 4 *dô von diu r. m.*  
 "the right explanation of this (behavior)". — 416, 3 *daz ist wol getân* "that  
 is the right thing to do".

“*sît willekomen, Sîfrit, her in ditze lant!*  
*waz iwer reise meine, gerne het ich daz erkant.*”

429. “*Vil michel iwer genâde, mîn vrou Prünhilt,*  
*daz ir mich ruochet grüezen, fürsten tochter milt,*  
*vor disem künem recken, der hie vor mir stât.*  
*wand er ist mîn herre. der êren het ich gerne rât.*

430. *Er ist geborn von Rîne, daz tuot er dir bekant.*  
*er hât durch dînen willen gesuochet ditze lant.*  
*der wil dich gerne minnen, swaz im dâ von geschiht.*  
*nu bedenke dihs bezîte. mîn herre erlêt dihs niht.*

431. *Er ist geheizen Gunther unt ist ein künic hêr.*  
*erwîrb er dîne minne, sone engert er nihtes mêr.*  
*jâ gebôt mir her ze varne der recke wolgetân.*  
*wan daz ich entorste, ich hiet ez gerne verlân.”*

432. *Si sprach: “ist er dîn herre unt bistu sîn man,*  
*diu spil diu ich im teile, unt tarr er diu bestân,*  
*behabt er des die maisterschaft, sô minne ich sînen lîp.*  
*anders muoz er sterben, ê ich werde sîn wîp.*

---

428, 3 *her in ditze lant* “(welcome) hither to this country”! As quite often, in this passage the MHG construction is closer to the English than to the modern German one: *willkommen hier in diesem Lande!* — 4 *erkant* p.p. of *erkennen*. — 429, 1 *vil michel* (add: *ist*) *iwer genâde* “you are very kind”. *mîn vrou* “Lady” courtly address, cf. French *ma-dame*. — 4 *herre* Sigfrid who in stanza 118 feels utterly outraged, because a *küniges man* wants to fight him, a *künic rîche*, here, before Prünhilde, calls himself Gunther’s *man*. He tells this lie out of pure kindness for Gunther without realizing what he is really saying. But this very lie causes his destruction later on. *der êren* “this distinction”, namely, of being greeted first. — 430, 4 *dihs = dich es* (gen.). *erlêt = erlât*. — 431, 2 *erwîrb er* §§58 and 82 a and c. Politeness (*hofscheit*) makes Sigfrid use this kind of subjunctive. *sone engert = sô ne engerte* with double (emphatic) negation. — 3 (*ze*) *varne* gerund of *varn* cf. §124. — 4 *entorste = en torste* “I did not dare” §161 c. *hiet* §81 c. — 432, 1 *ist er . . . , bistu (bist du) . . .* §58. — 2 *tarr = tar* §161 c. — 3 *maisterschaft = meisterschaft*, cf. §2 d. — 4 *ê ich werde* (subj. !) *sîn wîp* “before I can become (rather than that I become) his wife”.



434. *Den stein den sol er werfen      unt springen dar nâch,  
den gêr mit mir schiezen.      lât iu niht sîn ze gâch.  
des bedenket iuch vil ebene,      sprach daz vil schæne wîp,  
"gebrist im an dem einen,      ez gêt iu allen an den lîp."*

436. *Dô sprach der küninc Gunthcr:      "küniginne hêr,  
nu teilt swaz ir gebietet,      unt wære is dannoch mêr,  
daz bestüende ich alliz gerne      durch iwern schænen lîp.  
mîn houbet wil ich wâgen,      irn werdet mîn wîp."*

437. *Dô diu küniginne      sîne rede vernam,  
der spile bat si gâhen,      als ir dô daz gezam.  
si hiez ir dar gewinnen      balde ir stritgewant,  
eine veste brünne      unt einen guoten schildes rant.*

438. *Ein wâfenhemde sîdîn      daz leit an sich diu meit,  
daz in deheime strîte      wâfen nie versneit,  
von pfelle ûzer Libiâ.      ez was vil wolgetân.  
von porten licht gewürhte      daz sach man schînen dar an.*

440. *Die wîle was ouch Sîfrit,      der listige man,  
ê iz iemen erfünde,      in daz schiff gegân,  
dâ er die tarnkappen      verborgen ligen vant.  
dar in slauf er vil schiere.      dô was er niemen bekant.*

441. *Er îlte hin widere.      dô vant er recken vil,  
dâ diu küniginne      teilte ir hôhen spil,  
dar gie er tougenlîche,      von listen daz geschach,  
alle die dâ wâren,      daz in dâ niemen gesach.*

---

434, 4 *gebrist* = *gebristet*. *an dem einen* see 330, 4. — 436, 2 *is* = *es* (gen. on account of *mêr*). — 3 *bestüende* pret. subj. of *bestân*. *alliz* = *allez*. *durch iwern schænen lîp* "on account of you, beautiful lady"; cf. §129. — 4 *irn* (= *ir en*) *werdet* (subj.) cf. §57. — 437, 1 *vernam* pluperfect. — 438, 1 *leit* (= *leite*) pret. of *legen* §127 b. — 2 *deheime* §132. — 3 *Libiâ* "Africa". — 4 *von porten licht gewürhte* "woven material brightened with ribbons". *sach man schînen* "one could see, notice". — 440, 2 *iz* = *ez*. — 4 *slauf* = *slouf* cf. §2 d. — 441, 4 "without anyone of those that were there seeing him".

442. *Der rinc der was bezeiget.      dâ soldez spil geschehen*  
*vor manigem kûenem recken,      die daz solden sehen*  
*(mêr danne sibenhundert      die sach man wâffen tragen),*  
*swer daz spil gewinne,      daz ez die helde solden sagen.*

443. *Dô was nu komen Priinhilt.      gewâffent man die vant,*  
*sam ob si striten solde      umbe elliu kûniges lant.*  
*jâ truoc si ob den sîden      vil manigen stahelzein.*  
*ir minneclîchiu varwe      dar under hêrlîchen schein.*

444. *Dô kom ouch ir gesinde.      die truogen dar zehant*  
*von vil rôtem golde      einen liechten schildes rant*  
*mit stahelherten spangen,      vil michel unde breit,*  
*darunder spîlen wolde      diu vil hêrlîche meit.*

445. *Der frowen schiltvezzel      ein edel porte was.*  
*dar ûffe lâgen steine      grüener denne ein gras.*  
*die lûhten maniger hande      mit schîne wider daz golt.*  
*der si solde minnen,      der het iz hôhe verscolt.*

446. *Der schilt was under buckelen,      als uns daz ist geseit,*  
*wol drîer hende dicke.      den tragen solde diu meit.*  
*von stâle unt ouch von golde      rîch er was genuoc.*  
*den ir kamerære      selbe vierder kûme truoc.*

447. *Alsô der karche Hagene      den schilt dar tragen sach,*  
*in vil grôzen unmuote      der helt von Tronege sprach:*  
*“wie nu, kûnic Gunther,      wie vliesen wir den lîp?*  
*der ir dâ gert ze minnen,      diu ist des vâlandes wîp.”*

442, 1 *soldez* = *solde daz*. — 4 *swer daz spil gewinne* double relationship. — 443, 1 *komen* p.p. §70. *gewâffent* p.p. of *wâffen(en)*. — 2 *elliu* §42 and Nib. 101, 4. — 445, 2 *grüener* comparative “of a fresher green”. *ein gras* “grass”. On the use of the indefinite article with nouns designating a substance see O. Behaghel, *Deutsche Syntax* I, p. 48. — 3 *lûhten* pret. of *liuhten*. — 4 *der si solde minnen* “he who was to marry her”, i.e., Gunther. *iz* (= *ez*) refers to the sparkling of gems mentioned in line 3 which was caused by Gunther's high-flying plans (*hôhe*). — 446, 4 “It was difficult for her lord-in-waiting with three others to carry it.”

448. *Vernemt noch von ir wæte. der hete si genuoc.*  
*von Azagouc der sîden einen wâffenroc si truoc,*  
*vil edel unt vil rîche, ab des varwe schein*  
*von der küniginne vil manic hêrlîcher stein.*

449. *Dô truoc man dar der frouwen swære unt dar zuo grôz*  
*einen gêr vil starken, den si alle zîte schôz,*  
*scarpf unt ungefüege, michel unde breit,*  
*der ze sînen ecken harte vreislîchen sneit.*

450. *Von des gêres swære haret wunder sagen:*  
*wol vierdehalbiu mässe was der zuo geslagen.*  
*in truogen kûme drîe Prûnhilde man.*  
*Gunther der vil küene harte sorgen began.*

451. *Er dâht in sînem muote: "waz sol ditze wesen?*  
*der tiufel von der helle, wie kûnder dâ vor genesen?*  
*unt wær ich dâ ze Rîne mit dem lîbe mîn,*  
*si müeste hie vil lange vrî von mîner minne sîn."*

452. *Im was in sînen sorgen, daz wizzet, leit genuoc.*  
*allez sîn gewæfen man im einen truoc.*  
*dâ wart der künic rîche wol gewâffent in.*  
*vor leide het Hagene vil nâch verwandelt den sîn.*

---

448, 2 *Azagouc* is a foreign kingdom which is also mentioned in Wolfram's *Parzival* (with *Isenhart* as its king). *der sîden* is genitive qualifying *einen wâffenroc* and is, in its turn, qualified by *von Azagouc*: "She was wearing a coat-of-arms made of silks from Azagouc." Such genitives designating a material have the definite article when they are themselves qualified by the name of the country where the goods in question come from. Other examples: *einen disc des holzes vone Libano* "a table made of wood from Mount Lebanon", *daz harnasch von Tigris des goldes* "the cuirass made of gold from Tigris" (Cf. O. Behaghel, *Deutsche Syntax* I, p. 520). As contrasted with the construction discussed here, cf. *von sîden fürgebüege* (Nib. 74, 2) "breast-collars made of silk", where, instead of the genitive with definite article, we find *von* with dative and no article at all, because the word *sîden* lacks any attribute. Cf. 858, 1. — 450, 2 *geslagen* p.p. of *slahen*. — 3 Cf. 446, 4. — 451, 1 *waz . . . wesen?* "what is to become of this?" — 2 *kûnder* = *künde er*. — 4 *müeste* §79 c. — 452, 2 *im einen* "for him alone, only for him". His friends remained disarmed. — 3 *dâ . . . in* "in them" refers to *gewæfen*.

453. *Dô sprach von Burgonden der küene Dancwart:*  
 “*mich muoz immer riuwen disiu hoveart.*  
*nu hiezen wir ie recken! wie vliesen wir den lîp?*  
*suln uns in disen landen nu verderben diu wîp?*”

454. *Mich müet daz harte sêre, daz ich kom in daz lant.*  
*unt het mîn bruoder Hagene sîn wâffen an der hant,*  
*unt ouch ich daz mîne, sô möhten sanfte gân*  
*durch ir übermüete alle Prünhilde man.”*

455. “*Ich sage iu bî den triuwen, si soldenz wol bewarn.*  
*unt het ich tûsint eide zeinem fride geswarn,*  
*ê daz ich sterben sæhe den lieben herren mîn,*  
*jâ müesen lîp verliesen daz vil schœne magedin.*”

456. *Wir solden ungevungen wol rûmen ditze lant,*  
*ich unt mîn bruoder Dancwart, heten wir daz gewant,*  
*des wir ze nôt bedurfen, unt unser swert vil guot,*  
*sô wûrde wol gesenftet der frowen starkiu übermuot.”*

457. *Wol hôrt diu küniginne, waz der degen sprach.*  
*mit smielendem munde si über ahsel sach:*  
 “*nu er dunke sich sô biderbe, sô tragt in ir gewant,*  
*unt ir vil scharpffen wâffen gebt den recken an die hant.*”

458. *Mir ist als mære, daz si gewâffent sint,*  
*als ob si blôze stüenden,” sô sprach diu künigin.*

---

453, 2 *muoz* §63. *riuwen* §166 a. A similar verse is 1976, 2. This verse is meant with bitter irony, because a *hoveart* was always a very friendly act. — 454, 1 *müet* pres. t. of *müezen*. — 455, 1 *soldenz* = *solden* (subjunctive) ez. — 2 *geswarn* p.p. of *swern* §77 e. — 4 *müesen* = *müese* (§79 c) *den*. — 456, 1 *solden* subjunctive: “would”. — 457, 3 The first half of this line is indirect discourse; therefore, *dunke* subjunctive. *tragt* 2nd plur. imperative. The adj. *biderbe* is used meant scornfully here. In spite of their previous bravado, Hagen and Dancwart did not use their arms when they received them back. They, who later on turn against Sigfrid, present here a piteous spectacle. — 458, 2 *stüenden* see *stân*.

"*ih enfürhte niemens sterke, den ich noh habe bekant.  
ich getrowe wol gedingen in strite vor sîn eines hant.*"

459. *Dô si diu swert gewinnen, alsô diu magt gebôt,  
der vil küene Dancwart wart von freuden rôt.  
"nu spilen, swes si wellen," sprach der snelle man,  
"Gunther ist unbetwungen, sit daz wir unser wâfen hân."*

460. *Diu Prünhilde sterke vil græzlîchen schein.  
man brâht ir zuo dem ringe einen swæren mermilstein,  
grôz unt ungefüege, michel unde wel.  
in truogen kûme zwelfe helde küene unde snel.*

461. *Den warf si zallen zîten, sô si den gêr verschôz.  
der Burgonden sorge wurden harte grôz.  
"wâfen!" sprach dô Hagene, "waz hat der küninc ze trût!  
jâ soldes in der helle sîn des übelen tiufels brût."*

462. *An vil wîzen armen si die ermil want.  
si begunde sêre vazzen den schilt an der hant.  
den gêr si hôhe zuchte. dô gieng ez an den strit.  
Gunther unde Sîfrit die vorhten Prünhilde nît.*

463. *Wær im der starke Sîfrit niht schiere ze helfe komen,  
sô hete si dem künige sînen lîp benomen.  
er gie dar tougenlîche unt ruort im sîne hant.  
Gunther sîne liste vil harte soreclîche ervant.*

---

458, 3 *niemens* gen. of *niemen*. *den . . . noh . . . bekant* "whom I have known so far". — 4 *sîn eines* cf. §60 a. — 459, 3 *spilen* 3rd plur. subj. without subject. Cf. §82 b. — 460, 1 *Prünhilde* gen. "It was visible that Prunhilde's strength was enormous." — 4 Cf. 446, 4. — 461, 1 *zallen* = *ze allen*. — 4 *soldes* = *solde si* "should she". — 462, 1 *want* = *wante*, see *wenden*. — 3 *zuchte* pret. of *zucken*. *dô gieng ez an den strit* "Then they started their fight." MHG has a certain predilection for impersonal expressions. Hence the frequent use of the pronoun *man*. In our passage, too, we could expect *gieng man* as well. Both *gieng ez* and *gieng man*, however, actually mean: *giengen si*. — 4 *vorhten* see *vürhten*. — 463, 3 *ruort* see *rüeren*. — 4 "Gunther was very much alarmed by this trick."

464. "Waz hât mich gerüeret?" gedâht der küene man.  
 sô sah er allenthalben. er vant dâ niemen stân.  
 er sprach: "ich bin ez, Sîfrit, der liebe friunt dîn.  
 vor der küniginne soltu gar âne angest sîn.

465. Den schilt gib mir von hende. den lâ du mich tragen,  
 unt merke mîne lêre, die du mich hærest sagen.  
 nu habe du die gebærde. diu werc wil ich begân."  
 dô er vernam diu mære, der küninc træsten sich began.

466. "Nu hil du mîne liste! daz ist uns beiden guot.  
 sone mac diu küniginne ir starchen übermuot  
 an dir niht verenden, des si doch willen hât.  
 nu sich, wie angestlîche si gein dir amme ringe stât."

467. Dô schôz krefticlîche diu vil starke meit  
 den gêr gein eime schilde, michel unde breit.  
 den truog an sîner hende daz Sigelinde kint.  
 daz fiur spranc von stâle, alsam ez wæte der wint.

468. Des starken gêres snîde sô durch den schilt gebrach,  
 daz man daz fiur lougen âz den ringen sach.  
 des schuzzes bcide strûchten die vil starken man.  
 si ertwelte si sô sêre, daz si den lîp nâch heten lân.

469. Sîfride dem vil küenen vom munde brast daz bluot.  
 vil balde spranc er widere. dô nam der helet guot  
 den gêr, den si geschozzen im hete durch den rant.  
 den frumt ir dô hin widere sîn vil ellenthaftiu hant.

470. Er dâht: "ich wil niht schiezen daz schæne magedîn."  
 er kêrt des gêres snîde hindern rucke sîn.

464, 1 küene here used ironically. — 2 sah Cf. §3 d. — 4 soltu = solt du.  
 — 466, 2 sone = sô ne. — 4 sich imperative of sehen; cf. §3 d. angestlîche  
 Both men are afraid of Prunhilde. amme = an deme. — 467, 4 wæte pret.  
 subj. of wæjen. Cf. 471, 1. — 468, 1 gebrach The prefix ge- intensifies  
 the meaning of the preposition durch. — 2 ringen The lance not only pierced  
 the shield but even hit the coat of mail. sach see 464, 2 and §3 d. — 3 des  
 schuzzes "from the shot". — 4 si ertwelte si "She stunned them." — 470,  
 2 hindern = hinder den.



mit der gêstangen schôz si der küene man  
alsô krestlicliche, daz si strûchen began.

471. Daz fiur staub ûz stâle, sam iz tribe der wint.  
den schuz schôz mit ellen daz Sigelinde kint.  
sine mohte mit ir kresten des schuzzes niht gestân.  
ez enhete der künic Gunther entriwen nimmer getân.

472. Prûnhilt diu schæne, wie balde si ûfspranc.  
“Gunther, ritter edele, des schuzzes habe danc.”  
si wânde, daz erz hete mit sîner hant getân.  
ir was dar nâch geslichen ein verre krestiger man.

473. Dô gie si hin vil balde. zornic was ir muot.  
den stein den huop si hôhe, diu schæne maget guot.  
si swanc in kresteliche sô verre von ir dan,  
daz sîn die küene degene sêre wundern began.

474. Der stein der was gevallen wol zwelf klâfter dan.  
den wurf prach dô mit sprunge diu maget wol getân.  
dar gie der herre Sîfrit, dâ der stein gelac.  
Gunther in dô wegete, der helt in werfene pflac.

475. Sîfrit was vil küene, dar zuo starc unde lanc.  
den stein den warf er verrer. dar zuo er wîter spranc.  
daz was ein michel wunder unt künsteclîch genuoc,  
daz er mit dem sprunge den künic Gunther doch truoc.

471, 1 *staub* = *stoub*; cf. § 2 d. *iz* = *ez*. Cf. 467, 4. — 2 *schôz* pluperfect. — 3 *des schuzzes* “from the shot”; cf. 468, 3. *ge-* in *gestân* emphasizes the negative expression *sine mohte* . . . *niht*. — 472, 1 *wie balde si ûfspranc!* “How quickly she jumped up!” — 2 *des schuzzes* “for this shot”. — 3 *wânde* see *wænen*. — 4 *ir* . . . *dar nâch* “close to her.” *krestiger* comparative. — 473, 1 *zornic was ir muot* “She was furious.” — 2 *huop* see *heben*. — 4 *sîn* (gen. of *ez*; § 31 d) referring to the deed mentioned in the previous line. *die küene degene* acc. plur. *wundern* see vocabulary! The subject of the sentence is impersonal (namely, *ez*; but omitted here): “That it filled the bold champions with great amazement.” — 474, 2 *prach* = *brach*. — 4 *der helt* = Sigfrid. *in werfene pflac* “did actually throw it.”

476. *Der sprunc der was ergangen, der stein der was gelegen.*  
*dô sach man ander niemen wan Gunther den degan.*  
*Prünhilt diu schæne wart in zorne rôt.*  
*Sîfrit het geverret des künic Guntheres tôt.*

477. *Zuo zir ingesinde diu küniginne sprach,*  
*dô si z'ent des ringes den helt gesunden sach:*  
*“vil balde gêt her nôher, ir mâge unt mîne man,*  
*ir sult dem künec Gunther alle wesen undertân.”*

534. *In tugentlîchen zûhten si rûmt ir eigen lant.*  
*si kust ir friunt die nâchsten, swaz si der bî ir vant.*  
*mit quotem urloube si kômen ûf den sê.*  
*zuo zir vater lande kom diu frowe nimmer mê.*

536. *Jane wolde si den herren niht minnen ûf der vart.*  
*er wart ir kurzwîle unz in sîn hûs gespart,*  
*ze Wormez zuo der bürge zeiner hôchgezît,*  
*dar si vil freudenrîche kômen mit ir recken sît.*

#### 4. *Wie Sîfrit ze Wormez in botscheste fuor.*

537. *Dô si gevorn wâren vollen niwen tage,*  
*dô sprach der künec Hagene: “nu merket, waz ih sage.*  
*ir sîmt iuch mit den mæren ze Wormeze an den Rîn.*  
*die iwern boten solden nu zen Burgonden sîn.”*

538. *Dô sprach der künec Gunther: “ir habt mir reht geseit.*  
*nu bereitet iuch zer verte, ritter vil gemeit.*

---

477, 1 *zir* = *ze ir*. — 2 *z'ent* = *ze ende* “at the (other) end”. *gesunden* acc. sing. of *gesund*. — 534, 2 *kust* see *küssen*. *friunt* is usually declined as a regular *a*-stem (§16 a). However, in the nom. and acc. plur., the form *friunt* is often used instead of *friunde*. — 536, 1 *jane* = *jâ ne*. — 2 *gespart* see *sperren* “He was prevented from having pleasure with her until they reached his home.” — 537, 1 *niwen* (= *niuwen*) = *niun*. §60 d and f.



wande wir in disen zîten      ander niemen hân,  
der dar müge gerîten."      dô sprach der übermüete man:

539. "Nu wizzet, lieber herre,      ine bin niht bote guot.  
ich wil iuch eins bewîsen,      der ez doch gerne tûot.  
Sîfrit den kûenen      sult ir iz niht verdagen.  
durch iwer swester liebe      getarr erz iu nimmer versagen."

540. Er sande nâch dem recken.      der herre kom zehant.  
er sprach: "sît daz wir nâhen      heim in mîniu lant,  
sô solde ich boten senden      der lieben swester mîn  
unt ouch mîner muoter,      daz wir nu nâhen an den Rîn.

541. Des bitte ich iuch, her Sîfrit,      daz ir die reise tuot,  
daz ez mit mir verdiene      diu edel maget guot  
mit allen mînen friunden,      ritter vil gemeit."  
dô sprach der degen kûene:      "der reise bin ich iu bereit.

542. Nu enbietet, swaz ir wellet,      des wirdet niht verdaget.  
durch die vil minneclîchen      sô wirt ez gar gesaget.  
zwîu solde ih der verzîhen,      die ich in herzen hân?  
swaz ir durch si gebietet,      daz ist allez getân."

543. "Sô saget mîner muoter      unt ouch der swester mîn,  
daz wir an dirre verte      in hôhem muote sîn.  
lât wizzen mîne brüeder,      wie wir geworben hân,  
unt ander unser friunde      sol man diu mære ouch hæren lân.

544. Kriemhilde unt mîne muoter      sult ir niht verdagen.  
mîn unt Prünhilde dienst      sult ir in beiden sagen

---

539, 3 *iz = ez*. — 4 *getarr = getar* (§161 c) The prefix *ge-* emphasizes the adverb *nimmer*. — 541, 2 "So that I and the noble maiden and all my relatives may reward (you) for it." The preposition *mit* is often used instead of the conjunction *unt*. Thus, *mit mir diu maget* "The maiden and I." — 542, 4 *daz ist allez getân*. Here, a solemn promise to do something in the near future is expressed by a form that otherwise is used for the passive of the perfect (§160 b). Compare a similar construction in 553, 2 and 554, 2. — 543, 3 *wie wir geworben hân* "how we have been getting along."



diu Prünhilde sterke in, wæn, uns hât benomen.  
sô ist uns ir hôhiu minne harte schedelîche komen."

551. "Iu edelen recken beiden unt al den mâgen sîn  
enbiutet sînen dienest der hergeselle mîn.  
den liez ich wol gesunden. er hât mich her gesant  
ze boten mit den mæren, daz ich iu diu tate bekant.

552. Ir sult daz ahten schiere, swie sô daz geschehe,  
daz ich iwer muoter unt iwer swester sehe.  
die sol ich lâzen hœren, waz in enboten hât  
Gunther der künic rîche, des dinc in hôhen êren stât."

553. Dô sprach der junge Gîselher: "dâ sult ir dar gân.  
dâ habt ir mîner muoter vil liebe an getân.  
diu hât doch nichel sorge umbe den bruoder mîn.  
si sehent iuch beide gerne. des sult ir gar âne angest sîn."

554. Dô sprach der herre Sîfrit: "swaz ich in dienen kan,  
daz sol vil willeclîchen mit triwen sîn getân.  
wer sagt nu den frouwen, daz ich wil dar gân?"  
"daz tuon ich", sprach dô Gîselher, der vil wætlîche man.

555. Der stolze kîene recke zuo sîner muoter sprach  
unt ouch zuo sîner swester, dô er si beide sach:  
"uns ist komen Sîfrit, der helt ûz Niderlant.  
in hât mîn bruoder Gunther ze Rîne her von im gesant.

556. Er bringet uns diu mære, wiez umben künic stê.  
nu sult ir im erlouben, daz er ze hove gê.  
er bringt diu rechten mære her von Îslant."  
noch was den edelen frouwen vil michel sorgen bekant.

557. Si sprungen nâch ir wæte. dô leiten si sich an.  
si bâten Sîfride dô hin ze hove gân.

---

551, 3 gesunden see 477, 2. wol gesunden "safe and sound; hale and hearty." — 554, 3 dar "to them". — 556, 1 wiez umben = wie ez umbe den. — 557, 1 leiten see legen §127 b.

daz tet er willeclîche, wand er si gerne sach.  
Kriemhilt diu vil schæne zuo zim dô güellîchen sprach:

558. "Sît willekomen, herre Sîfrit, ritter lobelîch!  
war ist komen mîn bruoder, Gunther, der künic rîch?  
von Prünhilde sterke den, wæn, wir haben verlorn.  
cwê mir armen meide, daz ich danne ie wart geborn!"

559. Dô sprach der ritter küene: "nu gebt mir botenbrôt,  
ir edelen juncfrouwen! ir wænet âne nôt.  
ich liez in wol gesunden, daz tuon ich iu bekant.  
er unt diu schæne Prünhilt hânt mich iu beiden her gesant.

560. Si enbietent iu ir dienest mit triwen in daz lant,  
vil rîchiu küniginne. daz tuon ich iu bekant.  
nu lâzet iwer weinen! si wellent schiere komen."  
sine het in langen zîten sô lieber mære niht vernomen.

561. Mit snêblanken gêren ir ougen wolgetân  
wischte si nâch trehenen. danken si began  
dem boten dirre mære, diu ir dô wâren komen.  
dô was ir michel trâren unt ouch weinen benomen.

562. Den boten bat man sitzen. des was er bereit.  
dô sprach diu juncfrouwe: "mir wære niht ze leit,  
ob ich ze botenmiete iu solde geben mîn golt.  
der zuo sît ir ze rîche. ich wil iu sus immer wesn holt."

563. "Ob ich nu eine hete", sprach er, "drîzec lant,  
sô enpfîenge ich doch vil gerne gâbe ûz iwer hant."  
dô sprach diu minneclîche: "nu sol ez sî getân."  
si hiez ir kamerære nâch der botenmiete gân.

---

558, 2 war ist komen m. br. ? "What has become of my brother?" —  
559, 1 botenbrôt cf. miete §86, line 5 and Nib. 1240, 3. — 2 ir wænet âne nôt  
"Your apprehensions are unfounded." — 560, 3 wellent . . . komen cf. §63.  
— 561, 2 trehenen dat. plur. of trahen. — 562, 2 leit = leide stf (ô) dat. sing.  
mir wære niht ze leide "I would not be sorry; I would not regret." — 4 dar  
zuo "for that." wesn = wesen.

564. *Vier unt zweinzic þouge mit gesteine guot  
die gap si im ze miete. dô stuont alsô sîn muot,  
ern woldes niht behalden. er gab ez sâ zehant  
ir næhstem ingesinde, die er zer kemenâten vant.*

5. *Wie die küniginne mit einander zerwurfen.*

823. *Vor einer vesperzîte man ûfem hove sach  
ze rossen manigen recken. hiusir unde dach  
was allez vol durch schouwen von liuten iberal.  
dô wâren ouch die frouwen zen venstern komen in den sal.*

824. *Ze samene dô gesâzen die küniginne rîch.  
si reiten von zwein recken, die wâren lobelîch.  
dô sprach diu frowe Kriemhilt: "ih hân einen man,  
daz elliu disiu rîche zuo sînen henden solden stân."*

825. *Des antwurt ir Prûnhilt: "daz möhte vil wol sîn,  
ob niemen mêre enlebte wan sîn unde dîn,  
sô möhten im diu rîche wol wesen undertân.  
die wîle aber lebt Gunther, sô kundez nimmer ergân."*

826. *Dô sprach aber Kriemhilt: "nu sihstu, wie er stât,  
wie rehte herrenlîche er vor den recken gât,  
alsam der liehte mâne vor den sternen tuot.  
des muoz ich wol von schulden tragen vrælîchen muot."*

564, 3 *ern woldes* = *er ne wolde es*. *bealden* = *behalten*. *ern woldes niht behalden* is a subordinate clause. — 823, 1 *ûfem* = *ûf dem*. — 2 *hiusir* §164 a. — 3 *durch schouwen* "for the purpose of watching (the spectacle)". — 4 *frouwen* = Prunhilde and Kriemhilde who with her husband Sigfrid is visiting in Worms. — 824, 1 *gesâzen* cf. *sâzen* 332, 1. — 2 *reiten* see *reden* §158. *die wâren lobelîch* indirect discourse. — 4 *elliu* see *al* §42. *zuo sînen henden* "in his power, under his control." — 825, 1 *antwurt* see *antwûrten* cf. §§101 b and 102. — 2 *wan sîn unde dîn* "(nobody else) but he and you". After *niemen mêre wan*, *niemen wan*, *ander niemen wan*, *ander danne*, and similar expressions, personal pronouns (sometimes even nouns) appear in the genitive instead of the nominative form. Cf. 876, 2. — 4 *kundez* = *kunde ez*. — 826, 1 *sihstu* = *sihest du*.

827. *Dô sprach diu hûsfrouwe:* "swie wætlîch sî dîn man,  
swie schæne unt swie biderbe, sô muostu vor im lân  
Gunthern den recken, den edelen pruoder dîn.  
der muoz vor allen künigen mit lobe wærlîche sîn."

828. *Des antwurt ir Kriemhilt:* "so tiwer ist wol mîn man,  
daz ich in âne schulde niht gelobet hân.  
an vil manigen tugenden ist sîn êre grôz.  
geloubestu des, Prûnhilt, er ist wol Gunthers genôz."

829. "Jane soltu mir ez, Kriemhilt, zarge niht veruân,  
wande ich doch âne schulde die rede niht hân getân.  
ich hîrt si jehen beide, dô ihs alrêste sach  
unt dâ des küniges wille an mîme lîbe geschach,

830. *Unt dâ er mîne minne sô ritterlîch gewan,*  
*dô jach des selbe Sîfrit, er wære sküniges man.*  
*des hân ich in für eigen, sît ihs in hôrte jehen."*  
*dô sprach diu frowe Kriemhilt: "sô wær mir übel geschehen.*

831. *Wie heten sô geworben die edelen brüeder mîn,*  
*daz ich eigenmannes wine solde sîn ?*  
*des wil ich dich, Prûnhilt, vil vriuntlîchen biten,*  
*daz du die rede lâzest mit vil minneclîchen siten."*

832. "Ine mag ir niht gelâzen," sprach dô des küniges wîp.  
"zwin sold ich verkiesen sô maniges recken lîp,  
der uns mit dem künige ist dienstlîch undertân ?  
mich müete, daz ich sô lange niht zins von im gehabt hân."

827, 2 *muostu* = *muost du*. 2-3 *muostu vor im lân Gunthern* "You must let Gunther take precedence over him." — 3 *pruoder* = *bruoder*. — 4 "He certainly deserves more praise than any other king." — 828, 1 *tiwer* (= *tiuwer*) = *tiure*. Cf. §137 b. — 3 "He enjoys great esteem on account of his numerous personal qualities." Cf. 986, 1. — 4 *geloubestu* (= *geloubest du*) *des* "you may believe this"; *geloubest* subjunctive. — 829, 1 *jane* = *jâ ne*. *soltu* = *solt du*. *zarge* = *ze arge*. — 3 *ihs* = *ih si*. — 4 *mîme* §84 b. — 830, 2 *sküniges* = *des küniges*. *man* cf. 429, 4. — 3 *eigen* = *eigen man*. *ihs* = *ih es*. — 4 *sô* "in that case; if that is true." — 832, 1 *gelâzen*, *ge-* emphasizes *mag niht*. Cf. §§66 and 85 a.



833. "Du muost in von im verkiesen,      daz er dir nimmer bî  
wone deheiner dienste.      er ist tiurrer danne sî  
Gunther mîn bruoder.      du solt nimmer daz geleben,  
daz er dir zins deheinen      von sînen landen müeze geben."

834. "Du ziuhest dich ze hôhe,"      sprach aber des küniges  
wîp.  
"nu wil ich sehen gerne,      ob man den dînen lîp  
habe ze solhen êren,      als man den mînen tuot."  
die frowen wâren beide      harte zornic genuot.

835. Dô sprach diu frowe Kriemhilt:      "daz muoz et nu ge-  
schehen.  
sît du mînes mannes      für eigen hâst verjehen,  
nu müezen hiute kiesen      der zweier künige man,  
ob ich vor küniges wîbe      türre zuo der kirchen gân.

836. Ich lâze dich wol schouwen,      daz ich bin adelvrî:  
mîn man ist verre tiurerer,      danne der dîne sî.  
dâ mite wil ich selbe      niht bescholten sîn.  
du muost daz hînte kiesen,      wie diu eigene diu dîn

837. Ze hove gê vor recken      in Buregonde lant.  
ich wil selbe wesn edeler,      danne iemen habe bekant  
deheine küniginne,      diu krône ie her getruoc."  
dô huop sich under den frouwen      grôzes nîdes genuoc.

838. Dô sprach aber Prûnhilt:      "wiltu niht eigen sîn,  
sô muostu dich scheiden      von den frouwen mîn  
mit dînem ingesinde,      dâ wir zem münster gân."  
"entriwen," sprach dô Kriemhilt,      "daz sol werden getân!"

---

833, 2 *tiurrer* is a new comparative derived from the comparative *tiurre*.  
§74 c. — 835, 4 "whether when going to church I dare take precedence over  
the wife of the king." — 835, 3 *bescholten* p.p. of *schelten*. (*eigene*) *diu* §126.  
— 837, 2 *wesn* = *wesen*. *bekant* p.p. of *kennen*. — 3 *getruoc*. The prefix *ge-*  
intensifies the adverb *ie her*. — 838, 1 *wiltu* = *wilt du*.

839. "Nu kleidet iuch, mîn magede," sprach Sîfrides wîp.  
 "ez muoz âne schande beliben hie mîn lîp.  
 ir sult daz lâzen schouwen, unt habt ir rîche wât.  
 si mac sîn lougen gerne, des Prûnhilt verjehen hât."

840. Man moht in lîhte râten. si suochten rîchîu kleit.  
 dâ wart vil wol gezieret manic frowe unde meit.  
 dô gie mit ir gesinde des edelen wirtes wîp.  
 ze wunsche wart gekleidet der schænen Kriemhilde lîp

841. Mit drin unt vierzec meiden, die brâhtes an den Rîn.  
 die truogen liechte pfelle, geworht in Arabîn.  
 sus kômen zuo dem mûnster die meide wolgetân.  
 in warten vor dem hûse alle Sîfrides man.

842. Die liute nam des wunder, wâ von daz geschach,  
 daz man die kûniginne nu gescheiden sach,  
 daz si niht bî einander giengen alsam ê.  
 dâ von wart manigem degene sît vil sorclîchen wê.

843. Hie stuont vor dem mûnster daz Guntheres wîp.  
 dô hete kurzewîle vil maniges recken lîp  
 mit den schænen frouwen, der si dâ nâmen war.  
 dô kom diu edel Kriemhilt mit maniger hêrlîchen schar.

844. Swaz kleider ie getruogen edeler ritter kint,  
 wider ir gesinde was iz gar ein wint.

839, 1 *magede* = *megede*, see §155. — 3 To translate this verse start out with the second half arranging the sentence in the following way: *unt habt ir rîche wât, ir sult daz lâzen schouwen*. Concerning this peculiarity of Old German verse style cf. John Meier, "Zum Hildebrandslied" in *Hermaea* XXXI (1932), pp. 45-47. Cf. Nib. 857, 2; 867, 2. — 4 *sîn* gen. of *ez*. For a translation exchange the word *si* of the first half with *Prûnhilt* of the second half: "Prunhilde may still be glad to deny what she has said." — 840, 1 *man moht . . . râten* "It was easy to give them (such) orders." — 841, 1 *mit* "and" (cf. 541, 2): "Kriemhilde and 43 young ladies". *brâhtes* = *brâhte si*. — 2 *geworht* p.p. of *wûrken*. *Arabîn* "Arabia." — 4 *warten* pret. of *warten*. — 842, 1 *nam des wunder* = *hete des wunder* cf. So, 1. — 4 *wart . . . wê* "Many a warrior had to worry and suffer." — 844, 2 *iz* = *ez*. *gar ein wint* cf. §86, line 4 and Nib. 47, 2.



*si was so rîch des guotes, daz drîzec künige wîp  
niht möhten wol erziugen, daz tet der Kriemhilde lîp.*

845. *Ob iemen wînschen solde, der künde niht gesagen,  
daz man sô rîcher kleider gesæche ie mêt getragen,  
als in der wîle truogen ir meide wolgetân.  
wan ze leide Prînhilde, ez hete Kriemhilt verlân.*

846. *Ze samne si dô kômen vor dem mûnster wît.  
ez tet diu hûsfrouwe durch einen grôzen nît,  
die edelen Kriemhilde hiez si stille stân:  
"jâ sol vor küniges wîbe nimmer eigen diu gegân."*

847. *Dô sprach diu frowe Kriemhilt (zornic was ir muot):  
"kündest noch geschwigen, daz wære dir guot.  
du hâst geschendet selbe den dînen schænen lîp.  
wie mac immer kebse mit rehte werden küniges wîp?"*

848. *"Wen hâstu hie verkebset?" sprach des küniges wîp.  
"daz tuon ich dich," sprach Kriemhilt. "den dînen schænen  
lîp  
minnet êrste Sîfrit, mîn vil lieber man.  
jâ enwas ez niht mîn bruoder, der dir den magetuom an gewan.*

849. *War kômen dîne sinne? ez was ein arger list.  
zwiu lieze du in minnen, sît er dîn eigen ist?  
ich hære dich" sprach Kriemhilt "âne alle schulde klagen."  
"entriwen", sprach dô Prînhilt, "daz wil ich Gunthere sagen."*

850. *"Dich hât dîn übermüete," sprach Kriemhilt," betro-  
gen.  
du hâst mich ze dienste mit rede dich an gezogen.  
daz wizze in rechten triuwen. ez ist mir immer leit.  
getriwer heinlîche wirde ich dir nimmer mêt bereit."*

845, 4 *ze leide* (dat.) *Prînhilde* (dat.) "to hurt Prunhilde". — 847, 1 *ir muot* see 473, 1. — 850, 2 *dich an gezogen* The modern German word order would be *an dich gezogen*. "You claimed me for your service, that I was in duty bound to serve you."

851. *Prünhilt dô weinde. Kriemhilt niht langer lie.*  
*vor des küniges wibe inz münster si dô gie*  
*mit ir ingesinde. dô huop sich grôzer haz.*  
*des wurden liehtiu ougen vil starke trüebe unde naz.*

852. *Swaz man gote gediente oder iemen dâ gesanc,*  
*des dûhte Prünhilde diu wîle gar ze lanc,*  
*wand ir was vil trüebe der lîp unt al der muot.*  
*des muosin sît engelten recken küene unde guot.*

853. *Prünhilt mit ir frouwen gie für daz münster stân.*  
*si gedâhte: "mich muoz Kriemhilt mêre hæren lân,*  
*des mich sô lûte zîhet daz worttræze wîp.*  
*unt hât er sichs gerüemet, ez gât Sîfride an den lîp."*

854. *Nu kom diu frowe Kriemhilt mit manigem küenen man.*  
*dô sprach diu hûsfrouwe: "ir sult mich ez lân verstân.*  
*ir jâhet mîn ze kebsen. daz sult ir lâzen sehen,*  
*unt sult ez hie bewæren, wâ mir daz laster sî geschehen."*

855. *Dô sprach diu schæne Kriemhilt: "ir möht mich lâzen*  
*gân.*  
*ich erziugez mit dem golde, daz ich an der hende hân.*  
*daz brâhte mir mîn vriedel, dô er êrste bî dir lac."*  
*nie gelebte Prünhilt deheinen leideren tac.*

856. *"Diz golt ich wol erkenne. ez wart mir verstoln,"*  
*sprach diu küniginne, "unt ist lange mich verholn.*  
*ich kum es an ein ende, wer mirz habe genomen."*  
*die frowen beide wâren in grôz ungemüete komen.*

---

851, 1 *lie* The object of this verb is expressed by the next sentence. "She did not wait any longer to enter the cathedral." — 852, 1 *swaz . . . gediente . . . gesanc* "whatever time (every minute) they spent serving God or singing." — 2 *dûhte* pret. of *dunken*. *des* and *diu wîle* belong together: "the time spent for that". — 853, 4 *sichs* = *sich es*. — 854, 3 *ir jâhet . . . kebsen* "You called me a concubine." — 856, 2 *ist lange mich verholn* "I have missed it for a long time." — 3 *ich kum es an ein ende* "I shall come to the bottom of it, I shall find out."

857. *Dô sprach aber Kriemhilt:* "ine wils niht wesen diep.  
*du mohtes wol gedaht hân,* unt wær dir êre liep,  
*ich erziugez mit dem gürtel,* den ich hie umbe hân,  
*daz ich ez niht enliuge.* jâ wart mîn Sîfrit dîn man."

858. *Von Ninnivê der sîden* si den porten truoc.  
*vor edelem gesteine* guot was er genuoc.  
*dô den Prûnhilt gesach,* weinen si began.  
*daz muose weischen Gunther* unt alle Buregonde man.

859. *Dô sprach diu küniginne:* "heizet her gân  
*den fürsten vom Rîne.* Ich wil in hæren lân,  
*wie mich hât gehænet* sîner swester lîp.  
*si sagt hie offenliche,* ich sî Sîfrides wîp."

860. *Der küninc kom mit recken.* weinen er dô sach  
*die sînen triutinne.* wie güetlich er sprach:  
 "saget mir, liebiu frouwe, waz ist iu getân?"  
*si sprach:* "vil lieber herre, von schulden muoz ich trâric stân.

861. *Von allen mînen êren* mich diu swester dîn  
*gerne wolde scheiden.* dir sol geklaget sîn.  
*si giht, mich habe gekebsset* Sîfrit ir man."  
*dô sprach der küninc Gunther:* "sô hetes übele getân."

862. "Si treit hie mînen gurtîl, den ich lange hân verlorn,  
 unt ouch mîn güldîn vingerlîn. daz ich ie wart geborn,  
 daz muoz mich immer riuwen, dune beredest mich,  
 küninc, der grôzen schanden. daz diene ich immer umbe dich."

---

857, 1 wils = wil es. — 2 gedaht = gedaget. The construction of this line is the same as in 839, 3. — 858, 1 *Von Ninnivê der sîden den porten* cf. 448, 2. — 2 Concerning the construction *von edelem gesteine guot* cf. the use of *rich* in 446, 3. — 859, 2 *vom* = von dem. — 861, 3 *giht* see *jehen*. — 4 *hetes* = hete si. — 862, 1 *treit* see *tragen* §127 c. *gurtîl* = gürtel. — 3 *dune* (= du ne) beredest "if not . . . ; unless . . ." cf. §57. — 4 *diene* future meaning; cf. §63.

863. *Dô sprach der küninc Gunther:* "nu lât in her gân.  
*hât er sichs gerüemet, daz sol er hæren lân,*  
*oder sîn muoz lougen der helt ûz Niderlant."*  
*den Kriemhilde vriedel hiez man bringen sâ zehant.*

864. *Dô der herre Sîfrit die ungemuoten sach*  
*(ern wiste niht der mære), wie balde er dô sprach:*  
*"waz weinent dise frouwen? daz het ich gerne erkant,*  
*oder von welken schulden der küninc habe nâch mir gesant."*

865. *Dô sprach der küninc Gunther:* "daz ist mir durch dich  
 leit.  
*mir hât mîn frowe Prünhilt ein mære kie geseit,*  
*du habst dich des gerüemet, daz du ir schænen lîp*  
*êrste habest geminnet. daz seit frowe Kriemhilt dîn wîp."*

866. *Dô sprach der herre Sîfrit:* "unt hât si daz geseit,  
 ê daz ich erwinde, ez sol ir werden leit.  
*unt wil dir daz enpfüeren vor allen dînen man*  
*mit mînen hôhen eiden, daz ichs ir niht gesaget hân."*

867. *Dô sprach der küninc von Rîne:* "daz soltu lâzen sehen,  
*daz gerichte, daz du biutest, unt mac daz hie geschehen,*  
*aller valschen dinge wil ich dich ledic lân."*  
*man hiez zuo zeime ringe die stolzen Buregonde gân.*

868. *Sîfrit gein dem eide hôhe bôt die hant.*  
*dô sprach der künec rîche: "mir ist sô wol erkant*  
*iwer grôz unschulde. ich wil iuch ledic lân,*  
*des iuch mîn swester zîhet, daz ir des nine habt getân."*

864, 2 *wiste* see *wizzen*. — 865, 4 *seit* see *sagen*. — 866, 1 *geseit* see *sagen*.  
 — 3 *enpfüeren* = *ent-füeren*, cf. §162. — 867, 2 Arrange the sentence in the  
 following way: *unt daz gerichte, d.d.b., mac d.h.g.* Cf. 839, 3. — 3 *aller  
 valschen dinge* "of all falsehood". — 4 *zeime* = *ze eime* (= *eineme*). *ringe*  
 Taking an oath is a solemn act. Therefore, a special meeting of the Bur-  
 gundians is called. — 868, 1 *gein dem eide* "for the purpose of taking the  
 oath." — 4 *nine* = *niht ne*.

869. *Dô sprach aber Sîfrit: "geniuzet ez mîn wîp,  
daz si sô hât betriebet den Prînhilde lîp,  
daz ist mir sicherlîchen âne mâze leit."  
dô sâhen zuo zeinander die guoten ritter gemeit.*

870. *"Man sol sô frowen ziehen," sprach Sîfrit der degene,  
"daz si üppeclîche sprûche lâzen under wegen.  
verbiut ez dîme wîbe! der mînen tuon ich sam.  
ir grôzen unfuoge ich mich wêrlîchen scam."*

871. *Mit rede was gescheiden manic schæne wîp.  
dô trûret alsô sêre der Prînhilde lîp,  
daz ez erbarmen muose die Guntheres man.  
dô kom von Tronege Hagene zuo sîner frouwen gegân.*

872. *Er vrâgte, waz ir wære. weinende er sie vant.  
dô sagtes im diu mære. er lobt ir sâ zehant,  
daz ez erarnen müese der Kriemhilde man,  
oder ern wolde nimmer dar umbe vrælich gestân.*

873. *Zuo der rede kom Ortwîn unt ouch Gêrnôt.  
dâ die helde rieten den Sîfrides tôt.  
dar zuo kom ouch Gîselher, der edelen Uoten kint.  
dô er ir rede gehôrte, er sprach vil güetlîchen sint:*

874. *"Owê, ir guoten knehte, warumbe tuot ir daz?  
jane gediente Sîfrit nie also!hen haz,  
daz er darumbe solde verliesen sînen lîp.  
jâ ist es harte lîhte, darumbe zîrrent diu wîp."*

875. *"Suln wir gouche ziehen?" sprach aber Hagene.  
"des habent lützil êre sô guote degene."*

---

869, 4 *zeinander* = *ze einander*. *gemeit* "relieved" is not an attribute of *ritter* but part of the predicate. "They looked at each other relieved (that the thing was over)." — 871, 4 *gegân*, §114 b. *kom gegân* cf. *kam gegangen* §113, line 5 and §114 c. — 873, 1 *zuo der rede* "while they talked". — 4 *gehôrte* pluperfect. — 874, 1 *knehte*: Giselher is addressing Hagen and Ortwin. — 4 "It is very easy to find something over which women get angry."





daz Prünhilde weinen      sol im werden leit.  
jâ muoz im von Hagene      immer wesen widerseit."

882. Dô sprach der künic Gunther:      "wie möhte daz ergân?"  
des antwurt im Hagene:      "ich wilz iuch hæren lân.  
wir heizen boten rîten      zuo zuns in daz lant  
widersagen offenlîche,      die hie niemen sîn bekant.

883. Sô jehet vor den gesten,      daz ir unt iwer man  
wellet herverten.      alsô daz ist getân,  
sô lobt er iu die reise.      des vluset er den lîp.  
dâ man in mac verhouwen,      diu mare saget mir sîn wîp."

884. Der künic gevolget übele      Hagene sînem man.  
vil michel untriuwe      begunden tragen an,  
ê iemen daz erfunde,      die recken ûz erkorn.  
von zweier frowen bâgen      wart vil der degene verlorn.

## 6. Wie Sîfrit ermort wart.

924. Gunther unt Hagene,      die recken vil balt,  
lobten mit untriuwen      ein pîrsen in den walt.  
mit ir scharpfen gêren      si wolden jagen swîn,  
pern unt wisende.      waz mohte küeners gesîn?

925. Dâ mite reit ouch Sîfrit      in vrælîchem site.  
herrenlîche spîse      die fuorte man in mite.  
zeinem kalten brunnen      nâmens im den lîp.  
daz het gerâten Prünhilt,      des künic Gunthers wîp.

---

883, 3 die reise "participation in the campaign." — 4 dâ man in mac verhouwen "the spot where he is vulnerable". Cf. 100, 4. — 884, 1 Note the contrast of künic and man. übele adv. It was a bad thing for a king to listen to his vassal against his own better judgment. — 3 ûz erkorn = âz erkorn. — 924, 4 küeners gen. governed by waz. — 925, 1 dâ mite "with them". — 2 fuorte see fûeren. fuorte man in mite "they took along with them." in (dat. plur.) is used as reflexive form of the impersonal pronoun man. Cf. 934, 3. — 3 zeinem = ze einem. nâmens = nâmen si. im den lîp "his life".

926. *Dô gie der degen küene*      *dâ er Kriemhilde vant.*  
*ez was nu ûf gesoumet*      *sîn edel pîrsgewant*  
*unt ander der gesellen.*      *si wolden über Rîn.*  
*done dorfte Kriemhilde*      *leider nimmer gesîn.*

927. *Die sînen triutinne*      *die kust er an den munt:*  
*“got lâze mich dich, frouwe,*      *gesehen noch gesunt,*  
*unt mich diu dînen ougen.*      *mit holden mâgen dîn*  
*soltu kurzewîlen.*      *ine mac hie heime niht gesîn.”*

929. *Si sprach zuo dem recken:*      *“lât iwer jagen sîn!*  
*mir troumte hînte leide,*      *wie iuch zwei wildiu swîn*  
*jagent über heide.*      *dâ wurden bluomen rôt.*  
*daz ich sô sêre weine,*      *daz tuot mir armen wîbe nôt.*

930. *Jâ fürhte ich, herre Sîfrit,*      *eteslîchen rât,*  
*ob man der deheinen*      *missedieneet hât,*  
*die uns gefüegen kunnen*      *eteslîchen haz.*  
*belîbet, herre Sîfrit.*      *mit triwen râte ich iu daz.”*

931. *Er sprach:* “*liebiu frouwe,*      *ich kum in kurzen tagen.*  
*ine weiz hie niht der vînde,*      *die uns iht hazzes tragen.*  
*alle dîne mâge*      *sint mir gemeine holt.*  
*ouch enhân ich an den degenen*      *hie niht anders verscholt.”*

932. “*Neinâ, herre Sîfrit,*      *jâ vîrht ich dînen val.*  
*mir troumte hînte leide,*      *wie ob dir ze tal*  
*vielen zwêne berge.*      *ich ensach dich nimmer mê.*  
*wiltu nu von mir scheiden,*      *daz tuot mir inmeclîchen wê.”*

---

926, 4 *done* = *dô ne*. *leider* see Nib. 12, 4 in §139. *dorfte* see *darf* §§33 c and 161 d. “Never again could Kriemhilde possibly be sadder (than she was then).” — 927, 1 *kust* see *küssen*. — 4 *soltu* = *solt du*. *ine* = *ich ne*. — 929, 2 *mir troumte leide* “I had a bad dream.” — 4 *nôt* is the subject of the sentence. — 930, 1 *jâ* “for, because”. — 2 *man* has here the meaning “we”. *missedieneet* This seems to be the only occurrence of this verb in MHG. — 931, 1 *kum* (see *komen* §70) future meaning. — 2 *ine* = *ich ne*. *hazzes* gen. on account of *iht*. — 932, 1 *jâ vîrht ich dînen val* “For, I am afraid something may happen to you.” — 2 cf. 929, 2.



933. *Er umbe vie mit armen daz tugende rîche wîp.  
mit minneclîchem küssen trût er ir schænen lîp.  
mit urloube er dannen schiet in kurzer stunt.  
sine gesach in leider dar nâch nimmer mêr gesunt.*

934. *Dô riten si von dannen in einen tiefen walt  
durch kurzewîle willen. vil manic degen balt  
riten mit dem wirte. man fuort ouch mit in dan  
vil der edelen spîse, die di helede solden hân.*

938. *“Jâ müezen wir uns scheiden,” sprach dô Hagene,  
“ê daz wir beginnen hie ze jagene.  
dâ bî wir bekennen, ich unt der herre mîn,  
wer die besten jügere an dirre waltreise sîn.*

939. *Liut unt ouch gehûnde wir suln teilen gar.  
sô kêr ieslîcher, swar er gerne var!  
der danne jage daz beste, des sage man im danc!”  
dô wart ir bîten niht zen herbergen lanc.*

940. *Dô sprach der herre Sîfrit: “ich hân der hunde rât,  
niwan einen bracken, der sô genozen hât,  
daz er die verte erkenne der tiere durch den tan.”  
dô schuof der küninc Gunther zuo zim den er wolde hân.*

941. *Dô nam er einen jügermeister unt einen guoten spür-  
hant.  
er brâhte den herren in einer kurzen stunt  
dâ si vil tiere funden. swaz der von legere stuont,  
din erjageten die gesellen, sô noh guote jügere tuont.*

933, 1 *vie* see *vâhen*. — 2 *trût* see *triuten*. “He kissed her tenderly and caressed her.” — 3 *in kurzer stunt* “shortly afterwards”. — 4 *sine* = *si ne*. — 934, 3 *man . . . mit* in cf. 925, 2. — 938, 2 *ze jagene* cf. §124. — 939, 2 *kêr* = *kêre* §§54 and 130 d. *var* §54. — 940, 1 *ich hân der hunde rât* “I need no dogs.” — 2 *genozen* p.p. of *niezen*. To put dogs on the right scent one gave them certain pieces of meat to eat. — 3 *verte* plur. of *vart*. — 941, 3 *tiere* gen. — 4 *din* (acc. plur.) refers to *swaz* (nom. sing.). *swaz* with a genitive plural (*der*) is treated here like a plural form, although its verb (*stuont*) is in the singular. “The hunters killed each one of them that left its lair.”

942. *Swaz ir der bracke ersprancte, diu sluoc mit sîner hant*  
*Sîfrit der vil küene, der helt ûz Niderlant.*  
*sîn ross daz liuf sô sêre, daz ir in niht entran.*  
*daz lop an dem gejügede er vor in allen dâ gewan.*

952. *Dô hiez der künic künden den jägern ûz erkorn,*  
*daz er enbîzen wolde. dô wart vil lût ein horn*  
*zeiner stunt geblâsen, dâ mit in wart erkant,*  
*daz man den fürsten edele dâ zen herbergen vant.*

971. . . . .  
*die stolzen jagtgesellen hiez man zen tischen gân.*  
*ûf einen schâenen anger saz ir dâ genuoc.*  
*waz man dô rîcher spîse den jagtgesellen dar truoc!*

972. *Die schenken kômen seïne, die tragen solden wîn.*  
*ez erkunde baz gedienet nimmer heleden sîn,*  
*heten si dar under niht sô valschen muot,*  
*sô wâren wol die degene vor allen schanden behuot.*

973. *Done hete niht der sinne der küene veige man,*  
*daz er sich ir untriuwe künde hân verstân.*  
*er was in ganzen tugenden alles valsches blôz.*  
*sîns sterbes muose engelten sît der sîn nie niht genôz.*

974. *Dô sprach der herre Sîfrit: “wunder mich des hât,*  
*sît man uns von der kuchen gît sô manigen rât,*  
*durch waz uns die schenken bringen niht den wîn.*  
*man enpflege baz der jügere, ine wil niht jagtgeselle sîn.*

942, 1 *ersprancte* see *ersprengen*. *swaz . . . diu* cf. 941, 4. — 3 *liuf* see *loufen*. — 952, 1 *ûz erkorn* = *ûzerkorn*. — 972, 1 *seine* here meaning “not at all”. Cf. §43 b. — 973, 2 *verstân* is here past participle; cf. §77 f. Note the construction *künde* with the infinitive of the perfect (*hân verstân*) in contrast with modern German *hätte verstehen können*. — 4 *sîns* = *sînes*. — 974, 2 *gît* see *geben*. “Since they supply us so abundantly with provisions from the kitchen.” — 4 *enpflege* “if not; unless . . .” §57. *ine* (= *ich ne*) *wil niht jagtgeselle sîn* “I don’t want to take part in a hunt.”

975. *Ich hete wol gedienet, daz man mîn nâme war.*"  
*der küninc ob dem tische sprach in valsche dar:*  
*"man solz iu gerne büezen, swes wir gebresten hân.*  
*wir sîn von Hagenen schulde hiut âne trinken bestân."*

976. *Dô sprach der von Tronege: "vil lieber herre mîn,*  
*ich wânde, daz diz pîrsen hiute solde sîn*  
*dâ zem Spehtsharte. den wîn den sande ich dar.*  
*sîn wir hie ungetrunken, wie wol ihz immer mêr bewar."*

977. *Dô sprach der herre Sîfrit: "ir lîp der habe undanc!*  
*man sold mir siben saume wîn unt lûtertranc*  
*habn her gefüeret. dô des niht mohte sîn,*  
*dô solde man uns nâher hân gesidelt an den Rîn."*

978. *Dô sprach aber Hagene: "ir edelen ritter balt,*  
*ich weiz hie vil nâhen einen brunnen, der ist kalt.*  
*daz ir niht enzürnet, dâ suln wir hine gân."*  
*der rât wart manigem degene ze grôzen sorgen getân.*

979. *Den helt von Niderlanden dwanc des durstes nôt.*  
*den tisch er deste zîter rucken dan gebôt.*  
*er wolde für die berge zuo dem brunnen gân.*  
*dô was der rât mit meine von den degenen getân.*

980. *Diu tier man hiez ûf wâgenen füeren in daz lant,*  
*diu dâ verhowen hete diu Sîfrides hant.*  
*man jah im grôzer êren, swer ez ie gesach.*  
*Gunther sîne triuwe vaste an Sîfride brach.*

---

975, 2 *dar* "to him (Sigfrid)". — 3 *solz* = *sol ez*, cf. §63. *swes* gen. of *swaz*. — 4 *bestân* p.p. of *bestân*. — 976, 3 *Spehtsharte* (original meaning "Woodpecker's Forest") Spessart. — 4 *wie . . . bewar* "I won't ever let it happen again." — 977, 1 *ir lîp* = *si*, i.e., *die schenken* 972, 1. *habe undanc* cf. §76, line 10 and §82 b. — 2 *saume* = *soume*, cf. §2 d. — 2-3 *sold habn gefüeret* cf. 973, 2. — 4 *solde hân gesidelt* cf. 973, 2. — 978, 3 *dâ* and *hine* belong together. *hine* is emphasized by *dâ*. — 980, 1 *wâgenen* cf. §108. *in daz lant* "home". — 3 *man jah . . . êren* "They praised him highly." — 4 *G. sîne triuwe vaste brach* "G. committed a shocking breach of faith."

981. *Dô si dannen wolden zuo der linden breit,*  
*dô sprach aber Hagene: "mir ist dicke daz geseit,*  
*daz niht gevolgen künne dem Kriemhilde man,*  
*swenner wolde gâhen. hey, wolde uns daz sehen lân!"*

982. *Dô sprach von Niderlanden der herre Sîfrit:*  
*"ir muget ez wol versuochen, welt ir mir loufen mite*  
*ze wette zuo dem brunnen. sô daz sî gelân,*  
*der sol hân gewinnen, den man siht ze vorderst stân!"*

983. "Nu welle ouch wirz versuochen," sprach Hagene der  
 degen.  
*dô sprach der starke Sîfrit: "sô wil ich mich legen*  
*für die iwern füeze nider an daz gras."*  
*dô Gunther daz gehôrte, hey, wie lieb im daz was!*

984. *Dô sprach der degen küene: "ich wil iu mêre sagen.*  
*allez mîn gewæte wil ich an mir tragen,*  
*den gêr zuo dem schilte unt al mîn pîrsgewant."*  
*den kocher zuo dem swerte vil schier er umbe gebant.*

985. *Dô zugen si diu kleider von dem lîbe dan.*  
*in zwein wîzen hemeden sach man si beide stân.*  
*sam zwei wildiu pantel sie liefen durch den klê.*  
*doch sah man bî dem brunnen den snellen Sîfriden ê.*

986. *Den prîs an allen dingen truog er vor manigem man.*  
*daz swert er lôste balde. den kocher leit er dan.*  
*sînen gêr den starken leint er an der linden ast.*  
*bî des prunnen vluzze stuont der hêrlîche gast.*

981, 2 *ist* . . . *geseit* cf. §160 b. — 3 *niht* is the subject of the sentence. — 4 *swenner* = *swenne er*. *wolde* The subject (*er*) is omitted. Cf. §82 b and c. — 982, 2 *mir* . . . *mite* = *mit mir*. The rhyme *Sîfrit: mite* is inexact just as *Sîfrit: bite* in 338, 1 and 2. Such rhymes were taken over from pre-classic usage. — 983, 1 *welle* . . . *wirz* (= *wir ez*) cf. §163. — 3 *die iwern füeze* cf. 63, 4. — 985, 1 *si* = Gunther and Hagen. — 986, 1 This is a summary of all the contests which Sigfrid ever entered in his life. "In all fields (of competition) he carried off the highest honors from numerous competitors." — 2 *lôste* see *lâsen*. *leit* see *legen*. — 4 *prunnen* see *brunnen*.

987. *Des Sîfrides tugende wâren harte grôz.*  
*den schilt leit er nidere, al dâ der brunne vlôz.*  
*swie harte sô in durste, der helt doch niene tranc,*  
*ê daz der küninc kœme. daz dûhte Sîfriden lanc.*

988. *Der brunne was vil küele, lûter unde guot.*  
*Gunther sich dô legete nider zuo der fluot.*  
*daz wazzer mit dem munde er von der fluote nam.*  
*si gedâhten, daz ouch Sîfrit nâch im müese tuon alsam.*

989. *Dô engalt er sîner zûhte. den bogen unt daz swert*  
*daz truog allez Hagene von im danewert.*  
*dô spranger hin widere, dâ er den gêr dâ vant.*  
*er sach nâch eime kriuze an des küniges gewant.*

990. *Dô der herre Sîfrit ob dem brunnen tranc,*  
*er schôz in durch daz kriuze, daz ûz der wunden spranc*  
*daz bluot im von dem herzen an die Hagenen wât.*  
*sô grôze missewende ein helt nu nimmer mêr begât.*

991. *Den gêr gegen dem herzen stecken er im lie.*  
*alsô angestlîchen ze flûhten Hagene nie*  
*gelief noch in der werlde vor decheinem man,*  
*dô sich der herre Sîfrit der starken wunden versan.*

992. *Der recke toblîche von dem brunnen spranc.*  
*im ragete von dem herzen ein gêrstange lanc.*  
*der fürste wânde vinden bogen oder swert.*  
*sô müese wesene Hagene nâch sîme dienste gewert.*

---

987, 2 *leit* see *legen*. — 3 *sô* pleonastic addition to *swie*. — 4 *dûhte* see *dun-*  
*ken*. — 989, 1 *sîner zûhte* cf. 987, 1. — 3 *spranger* = *sprang er*. — 4 *kriuze*.  
 Kriemhilde who trusted Hagen and believed he would protect her husband  
 against any possible danger in a battle marked the only spot where Sigfrid  
 was vulnerable (cf. 883, 4) with a cross-sign on his clothes. — 990, 1 *ob dem*  
*brunnen* “bent over the spring”. — 991, 3 *in der werlde* “in his life”. —  
 992, 4 *gewert* see *wern*.

993. *Dô der sêre wunde des swêrtes niht enwant,*  
*done het et er niht mêre wan des schildes rant.*  
*den zuhter von dem brunnen. dô lief er Hagenen an.*  
*done kunde im niht entrinnen der vil ungetriwe man.*

994. *Swie wunt er was zem tôde, sô kresteclich er sluoc,*  
*daz ûzer dem schilde dræte genuoc*  
*des edelen gesteines. der schilt vil gar zebrast.*  
*sich hete gerne errochen der vil hêrlîche gast.*

995. *Hagene muose vallen von sîner hant ze tal.*  
*von des slages krefte der wert vil lûte erhal.*  
*het er daz swert enhende, sô wær ez Hagenen tôt.*  
*der helt entran vil kûme ûz der angestlîchen nôt.*

996. *Sîn kraft was im geswichen. ern kunde niht gestân.*  
*sînes lîbes sterke diu muose gar zergân,*  
*wand er des tôdes zeichen bî lichter varwe truoc.*  
*sît wart er beweinet von schænen vrouwen genuoc.*

997. *Dô viel in die bluomen der Kriemhilde man.*  
*daz bluot von sînen wunden sach man vaste gân.*  
*dô begunder schelten (des twanc in michel nôt)*  
*die ûf in gerâten heten den vil ungetriwen tôt.*

998. *Dô sprach der sêre wunde: "jâ, ir vil bæse zagen,*  
*waz hilfet mich mîn dienst, daz ir mich habt erslagen ?*  
*ich was in ie getriuwe. des ich engolten hân!*  
*ir habt an iuern mâgen leider ûbel getân!*

999. *Die sint dâ von bescholten, swaz ir wirt geborn*  
*her nâch disen zîten. jâ habt ir iuern zorn*

---

993, 3 *zuhter* = *zuhte er*. *zuhte* see *zucken*. — 994, 2 *dræte* see *dræjen*. — 4 *sich . . . errochen* "would have liked to take vengeance." — 996, 3 *bî lichter varwe* Meant is the pallor of his face indicating approaching death. — 997, 3 *begunder* = *begunde er*. — 998, 2 *erslagen* see *slahen*. — 4 This treachery will always be a stain on the name of your family. Note that Sigfrid is not a *mâge* of the Burgundians. Therefore, this line does not refer to him. — 999, 1 *dâ von* "through it".



*vil übele gerochen an dem lîbe mîn.  
mit laster ir gescheiden sult von guoten recken sîn."*

1000. *Die liute liefen alle dâ er erslagen lac.  
ez was ir genuogen ein freudelôser tac.  
die iht triwe heten, von den wart er bekleit.  
daz hete wol gedienet der ritter kûen unt gemeit.*

1001. *Der kûnic von Burgonden klagete sînen tôt.  
dô sprach der verchwunde: "daz ist âne nôt,  
daz der nâch schaden weinet, der in hât getân.  
der dienit michel schelten. ez ware bezzer verlân."*

1002. *Dô sprach der grimme Hagene: "jane weiz ich, waz  
er kleit.  
ez hât nu allez ende unser sorge unt unser leit.  
wir vinden ir vil kleine, die türren uns bestân.  
wol mich, deich sîner hêrschaft hân ze râte getân."*

1006. *Dô sprach vil senelîche der verchwunde man:  
"welt ir, kûnic rîche, triwen iht begân  
in der werlt an iemen, lât iu bevolhen sîn  
âf triwe unt âf genâde die lieben triutinne mîn.*

1007. *Unt lât si des geniezen, daz si iu swester sî.  
durch aller fûrsten tugende wont ir mit triwen bî.  
mir müezen warten lange mîn vater unt mîne man.  
ez enwart nie frowen mêre an friunde leider getân."*

1008. *Er rampf sich bitterlîche, als im diu nôt gebôt,  
unt sprach dô jâmerlîche: "der mortlîche tôt*

---

1000, 2 *ir genuogen* "for many of them". — 3 *triwe gen.* *bekleit* see *be-  
klagen* and §155. — 1001, 2 *daz ist âne nôt* "It is not necessary, out of  
place." — 4 *dienit* = *dienet*. — 1002, 1 *er* = Gunther. *kleit* see §155. — 4  
*deich* = *daz ich*. *hêrschaft* This is also a personal issue between Hagen and  
Sigfrid since, from Sigfrid's first arrival at Worms, Hagen's influence at court  
and in the affairs of the state had continuously diminished. — 1006, 2 *triwen*  
gen. — 1007, 4 *nie* and *mêre* belong together. "Never has greater grief  
been inflicted on a lady by an action against the man whom she loved."

mag iuch wol geriuwen her nâch disen tagen.  
geloubt an rehten triuwen, daz ir iuch selben habt erslagen!"

1009. Die bluomen allenthalben von bluote wâren naz.  
dô ranger mit dem tôde. unlange tet er daz,  
wande in des tôdes wâfen al ze sêre sneit.  
dô mohte reden niht mêre der recke kûen unt gemeit.

1010. Dô die herren sâhen, daz der helt was tôt,  
si leiten in ûf einen schilt, der was von golde rôt,  
unt wurden des ze râte, wie daz solde ergân,  
daz man iz verhæle, daz iz het Hagene getân.

1011. Dô sprâchen ir genuoge: "uns ist übele geschehen.  
ir sult ez heln alle unt sult gelîche jehen:  
dâ er rite jagen eine, der Kriemhilde man,  
in slüegen schâchære, dâ er füere durch den tan."

1012. Dô sprach der ungetriuwe: "ich füeren in daz lant.  
mir ist vil unmære, unt wirt ez ir bekant,  
diu sô hât getrüebet mîner frowen muot.  
ez ahtet mich vil ringe, swaz si weinens getuot."

1013. Von dem selben brunnen, dâ Sîfrit wart erslagen,  
sult ir diu rehten mære von mir hæren sagen:  
vor dem Otenwalde ein dorf lît, Otenheim.  
dâ vliuzet noch der brunne. des ist zwîvel dehein.

7. Wie der Nibelunge hort ze Wormze brâht wart.

1112. Dô diu minneclîche alsô verwitewet wart,  
bî ir inme lande der grâve Eckewart

1009, 2 ranger = rang er. — 1010, 2 leiten see legen. einen (schilt) = Sigfrid's. — 1012, 1 füeren = füere in. in daz lant "home". — 2 mir ist vil unmære "I don't care at all." unt "and even if". — 1013, 3 lît see ligen. — 1112, 2 inme = in deme. der grâve E. For the use of the definite article in this expression cf. §159.



beleip mit sînen mannen. sîn triwe im daz gebôt.  
er diente sîner frouwen mit willen unz an sînen tôt.

1113. Ze Wormze bî dem münster ein gezimber man ir slôz  
von holze harte michel, wît unde grôz,  
dâ si miû ir gesinde sît âne freude saz.  
si was zer kirchen gerne, unt tet vil willeclîche daz.

1114. Dâ man begruop ir vriedel, (wie selten si daz lie!)  
mit trûrigem muote si alle zît dar gie.  
si bat got den rîchen der sînen sêle pflegen.  
vil dicke wart beweinet mit grôzen triuwen der degen.

1115. Uote unt ir gesinde si trôsten zaller stunt.  
dô was ir daz herze sô græzlîche wunt,  
ez kunde niht verwâhen, swaz man ir trôstes bôt.  
si hete nâch ir friunde die allergæzisten nêt,

1116. Die nâch liebem manne ie mêre wîp gewan.  
man moht ir starke tugende kiesen wol dar an.  
si klaget unz an ir ende, die wîle werte ir lîp.  
sît rach sich harte swinde in grôzen triuwen daz wîp.

1117. Sus saz si in ir leiden (daz ist al wâr)  
nâch ir mannes tôde unz in daz vierde jâr,  
daz si zir bruoder Gunther dehein wort nie gesprach  
unt ouch ir vînt Hagenen in der zîte niene gesach.

1118. Hagene sprach zem künige: "möhten wir daz tragen  
an,  
daz ir iwer swester hulde möhtet hân,  
sô kæm zuo disen landen daz Nibelunges golt.  
des würde uns vil ze teile, wær uns din küniginne holt."

1113, 4 zer kirchen see 1273, 4. — 1114, 1 begruop pluperfect. — 1115, 1 trôsten cf. 69, 2. — 1117, 3-4 daz si . . . nie gesprach unt . . . niene gesach "without ever speaking or seeing." — 4 niene = nie ne.

1119. "Daz schuln wir versuochen", sprach der künic sân,  
 "ich wil ez mîne brüeder hin ze ir werben lân,  
 daz si mir daz füegen, daz si uns gerne sehe."  
 "ine trowes niht", sprach Hagene, "daz ez immer geschehe."

1120. Dô hiez er Ortwînen hin ze hove gân  
 unt den marcgrâvin Gêren. dô daz was getân,  
 man brâht ouch Gêrnôten unt Gîselher daz kint.  
 si versuochtenz vriuntliche an frowen Kriemhilde sint.

1121. Dô sprach von Buregonden der küene Gêrnôt:  
 "frowe, ir klaget ze lange den Sîfrides tôt.  
 nu wil der künic iu rihten, daz ers niht hât erslagen.  
 man hært iuch zallen zîten sô rehte græzliche klagen."

1122. Si sprach: "des zîht in niemen. in sluoc diu Hagenen  
 hant.  
 wâ man in verhowen möhte, dô er daz an mir ervant,  
 solt ich des getrouwen, daz er im trüege haz,  
 ich hete wol behüetet," sprach diu küniginne, "daz,

1123. Daz ich niht vermeldet hete sînen lîp.  
 sô liez ich nu mîn weinen ich vil armez wîp.  
 holt wirde ich in nimmer, die ez dâ habent getân."  
 dô begunde vlêgen Gîselher der vil wætlîche man.

1124. Si sprach: "ich muoz in grîezen, irn welts mich niht  
 erlân.  
 der habt grôze sînde! der künic hât mir getân  
 sô vil der herzenswære gar âne mîne scholt.  
 mîn munt im giht der suone. im wirt daz herze nimmer holt."

1128. Ez enwart nie suone mit sô vil trâhenen mê  
 mit valsche gefüezet. ir tet ir schade wê.

1119, 1 schuln = suln. — 4 ine trowes = ich ne trowe es. — 1120, 2 marcgrâvin = marcgrâven, cf. §19 d. — 1121, 3 ers = er es. — 1124, 1 irn welts (= welt es) cf. §57. — 2 der = Gunther. "That man has a great deal on his conscience." — 3 scholt = schult (=schulde). — 1128, 1 nie and mê belong together.

*si verkôs ûf si alle wan ûf den einen man.  
in het erslagen niemen, het ez niht Hagene getân.*

1129. *Dar nâch vil unlange dô truogen si daz an,  
daz diu küniginne den grôzen hort gewan  
von Nibelunge lande unt fuorte in an den Rîn.  
er was ir morgengâbe. er solt ir wol von rehte sîn.*

1130. *Dar nâch si beide fuoren Gîselher unt Gêrnôt.  
zwelf hundert mannen Kriemhilt dô gebôt,  
die in dâ holn solden, dâ er verborgen lac,  
dâ sîn der degen Albrîch mit sînen besten friunden pflac.*

1134. *Ez stuonden vor dem berge die Kriemhilde man  
unt ouch ein teil ir mâge. den schaz man truog dan  
nider zuo den ûnden an diu schiffelîn.  
den fuort man ûf dem sêwe ûf ze berge unz in den Rîn.*

1135. *Nu mugt ir von dem horde wunder hâeren sagen:  
swaz zwelf kanzwâgene meiste mohten tragen  
viere tage lange von dem berge dan  
(ouch muos ir ieslîcher des tages niun stunden gân),*

1136. *Ez was niht anders wan gesteine unt golt.  
unt ob man die werlt alle het dâ von gesolt,  
sîn wîrde nimmer minre einer marke wert.  
jane hete is Hagene âne schulde niht gegert.*

1137. *Der wunsch der lac dar under: von golde ein rûetelîn,  
der daz het erkunnen, der mohte meister sîn  
wol in aller werlde über ieslîchen man.  
der Albrîches mâge kom mit Gêrnôte vil dan.*

---

1129, 4 *er solt ir sîn* "It was to be hers." — 1130, 1 *Dar nâch* "after it; to get it." — 1134, 4 *sêwe* see *sê*. — 1136, 1 *niht anders* "nothing else." — 2 *die werlt alle* "the whole world." *gesolt* p.p. of *solden*. — 3 *minre* see §88. 1137, 1 *von golde* "made of gold" cf. 448, 2. — 2-3 *mohte . . . wol* "could easily."

1138. *Dô sich der herre Gêrnôt      unt Giselher daz kint  
des hordes underwunden,      dô underwunden si sich sint  
des landes unt der bürge      unt maniges recken balt.  
daz muos in sider dienen      bêdiu durch vorht unt gewalt.*

1139. *Dô si den hort behielten      in Guntheres lant  
unt sihs diu küniginne      alles underwant,  
kameren unde türne      sîn wurden vol getragen.  
man gehôrt daz wunder      von guote mêre nie gesagen.*

1141. *Dô si den hort nu hete,      dô brâhtes in daz lant  
vil der vremden recken.      jâ gab der frowen hant,  
daz man sô grôzer milte      mêre nie gesach.  
si pflac vil grôzer tugende.      des man der küniginne jach.*

1142. *Den armen unt den rîchen      begunde si dô geben,  
daz daz reite Hagene,      ob si solde leben  
noch deheine wîle,      daz si sô manigen man  
ze dienste ir gewünne,      daz si des angest müesen hân.*

1150. *Der küninc unt sîne mâge      rûmten dô daz lant,  
mit in die besten drunder,      die man inder vant,  
niwan aleine Hagene.      der beleip dô durch den haz,  
den er truoc der frowen,      unt tet vil willeclîche daz.*

1151. *Die herren swuoren eide,      unz si möhten leben,  
daz si den schaz niht zeigen      noch niemen solden geben  
wan mit gemeinem râte,      sô si des dûhte guot.  
des muosen si in vliesen      durch ir gîteclîchen muot.*

1152. *Ê daz die künige widere      ze Rîne wâren komen,  
die wîle hete Hagene      den grôzen hort genomen.*

---

1139, 2 *sihs* = *sich es*. — 4 “At no other time did one hear of such a gigantic fortune.” Note the two intensified forms *gehôrt* and *gesagen*. — 1141, 1 *brâhtes* = *brâhte si*. — 2 *gab* “gave (so) liberally.” — 1142, 2 *reite* see *reden*. — 4 *ze dienste ir* “to help her”. — 1151, 1 *swuoren* see *swern*. — 2 *niemen* dat. “to anybody.” — 3 *dûhte* subjunctive = *diuhte*, cf. §103.

er sancten dâ zem Loche      allen in den Rîn.  
er wânde in niezen eine.      des enkunde sider niht gesîn.

1154. Die fürsten kômen widere,      mit in vil manic man.  
Kriemhilt ir schaden grôzen      klagen dô began  
mit meiden unt mit frouwen.      in was harte leit.  
dô gebârten die degene,      sam si im heten widerseit.

1155. Dô sprâchen si gemeine:      "er hât übele getân."  
er entweich der fürsten zorne      alsô lange dan,  
unz er gewan ir hulde.      si liezen in genesen.  
doch enkunde im Kriemhilt      nimmer vânder gewesen.

1156. Mit iteniwem leide      beswæret was ir muot  
umbe ir mannes ende.      unt dô si ir daz guot  
alsô gar genâmen,      dô gestuont ir jâmers klage  
des lîbes immer mêre      unz an ir jungeste tage.

1157. Nâch Sîfrides tôde      (daz ist al wâr)  
was si in manigen leiden      unz in daz zwelfte jâr,  
daz si des recken tôdes      mit klage nie vergaz.  
si was triwen stæte      unt tet vil willeclîche daz.

8. Wie der küninc Ezele nâh froun Kriemhilde ze Wormze sînen  
boten sande.

1166. Daz geschah in den gezîten,      dô frou Helche erstarp  
unt daz der küninc Ezele      ein ander wîp warp.  
dô rieten sîne friunde      in Buregonden lant  
zeiner werden witewen.      diu was frou Kriemhilt genant.

1152, 3 *sancten* = *sancte* (see *senken*) *in*. *zem* (= *ze dem*) *Loche* here a place-name, *loch* (stn) meaning "hole". — 4 *des enkunde niht gesîn* "This (hope) could not be realized." — 1155, 3 *si liezen in genesen* "They left him unharmed." — 4 *gewesen* infinitive. — 1156, 4 *mêre* is adj. belonging to *gestuont*. *des lîbes* belongs together with *ir jungeste tage*: *unz an ir jungeste tage des lîbes*. — 1157, 3 *daz si . . . nie vergaz* "without ever forgetting . . ." — 1166, 1 *erstarp* pluperfect. — 2 *daz* see vocabulary. — 3 *in Buregonden lant* belongs to *witewen*. — 4 *zeiner* = *ze einer*.

1170. *Dô sprach der künic Etzel:* "wem ist under iu bekant  
*bî Rîne allerbeste liute unt ouch daz lant?"*  
*dô sprach von Bechelâren der guote Ruedegêr:*  
*"ich hân irkant von kinde die edelen küniginne hêr."*

1177. *Dô sprach der künic Etzel:* "nu, wenne welt ir varn  
*nâch der vil minneclîchen? got sol iuch bewarn*  
*der reise an allen frouen, unt ouch die frowen mîn.*  
*des helfe mir gelücke, daz si uns genædic müeze sîn."*

1182. "Sô wil ich iu die wârheit", sprach Ruedegêr dô,  
"sagen,  
*daz wir hinnen rîten in vier unt zweinzic tagen.*  
*ich enbiut ez Göteline, der vil lieben frowen mîn,*  
*daz ich nâch Kriemhilde selbe bote welle sîn."*

1185. *Ûzer Hiunin lande der marcgrâve reit.*  
*des was der künic Etzel vrô unt ouch gemeit.*  
*dâ zer stat ze Wiene bereite man in wât,*  
*die er fûeren solde, als man uns gesaget hât.*

1199. *Inre tagen zwelfen si kômen an den Rîn.*  
*done kunden disiu mære niht verholn sîn.*  
*man sagte dem künige unt ouch sînen man,*  
*dâ kâmen hôhe geste. der wirt dô vrâgen began,*

1200. *Ob iemen si bekande, daz manz im solde sagen.*  
*man sah ir soumære sô rehte swære tragen.*  
*daz si vil rîche wâren, daz wart dô wol bekant.*  
*man hiez si herbergen dô ze Wormez al zehant.*

---

1170, 4 *irkant* = *erkant* p.p. of *kennen*. On the "inclusive present tense" occurring in this line cf. Senn, "Inklusives Präteritum im Gotischen" in *JEGPh.* XXXIII (1934), p. 496. — 1177, 3 *die frowen mîn* = Kriemhilde. — 4 *müeze* cf. §82 d. — 1185, 1 *Hiunin* = *Hiunen* gen. plur. of *Hiune* w.m. "Hun." — 3 *zer stat ze Wiene* "in the City of Vienna." *bereite* pret. of *bereiten*. — 1200, 1 *manz* = *man ez*. — 4 *si* is the object of *herbergen*.



1201. *Dô die geste wâren       zen herebergen komen,  
dô wart ir gevertes       vaste war genomen.  
si wundert, wannen fïeren       die recken an den Rîn.  
der wirt nâch Hagene sande,       ob ez im kundic möhte sîn.*

1204. *Dô sprach der snelle Hagene:       “als ich mich kan ver-  
stân,  
(wande ich die helde lange       niht gesehen hân),  
si varnt dem gelîche,       als ez sî Rûedegêr  
von hiunischen rîchen,       der degen küene unde hêr.”*

1206. *Mit sînen besten friunden       lief er zuo zim dan.  
man sach fïnfhundert degene       von den rossen stân.  
dô wurden wol enpfangen       die von Hiunin lant.  
boten nie getruogen       alsô hêrlîch gewant.*

1210. *Wie rehte friuntlîche       er den gast enpfie  
unt alle sîne degene.       Gêrnôt dô niht enlie,  
ern enpfienge in ouch mit êren       unt alle sîne man.  
der künic Rûedegêre       fuorte bî der hende dan.*

1211. *Er brâht in zuo dem sedele,       dâ er selbe saz.  
den gesten hiez man schenken       (mit willen tet man daz)  
mete den vil guoten       unt den besten wîn,  
den iemen vinden kunde       in dem lande al umben Rîn.*

1214. *Dô sprach der künic Gunther:       “ine kan niht langer  
dagen.  
wie si sich gehaben beide,       daz sult ir mir sagen,  
Ezele unde Helche       ûzer Hiunin lant.”  
dô sprach der marcgrâve:       “ich solz iu sagen hie zehant.”*

1201, 3 *fïeren* pluperfect; see *varn*. — 4 *sande* pret. of *senden*. — 1204, 2 In his youth Hagen had been a hostage at Etzel's court. Cf. Ekkehard's Latin poem *Waltharius manu fortis* of which we have a German translation by Althof, *Das Waltharilied*. Leipzig, Göschen 1911. — 3 *si varnt dem gelîche, als* “They behave exactly as if.” — 1206, 3 *enpfangen* p.p. of *enpfâhen*. — 1210, 2-3 *niht enlie, ern enpfienge* cf. 286, 2-3. — 4 *bî der hende* cf. 295, 1. 1211, 4 *umben* = *umbe den*. — 1214, 1 *ine* = *ich ne*. — 4 *solz* (= *sol ez*) *sagen* cf. §63.

1215. *Dô stuont er von dem sedele mit allen sînen man.*  
*er sprach zuo dem künige: "lât mich urlouþ hân*  
*ze sagene solhiu mære, dar umbe ich bin gesant*  
*von deme künic Ezele her zuo der Buregonden lant."*

1216. *Er sprach: "swaz man uns mære bî iu enboten hât,*  
*diu erlouþ ich iu ze sagene âne friunde rât.*  
*ir sult si lâzen hâren mich unt mîne man,*  
*wande ich iu aller êren hie ze werbene gan."*

1217. *Dô sprach der bote hêre: "iu enbiutet an den Rîn*  
*getriwelîchen dienest der grôze voget mîn,*  
*unt allen iuern friunden, die ir muget hân.*  
*unde wizzet, disiu boteschaft ist in triwen gar getân.*

1218. *Iu bat der künic edele klagen sîne nôt.*  
*sîniu lant sint verweiset. mîn frowe diu ist tôt,*  
*Helche diu vil rîche, ein küniginne hêr,*  
*nâch der mîn herre lîdet, daz wizzet, ungefüegiû sêr.*

1219. *Kint der edelen fürsten, diu si gezogen hât,*  
*dar an ez inme lande vil jâmerlîchen stât.*  
*die enhânt nu leider niemen, der ir mit triwen pflege.*  
*des wæn ouch sich vil seine des küniges sorge gelege."*

1220. *"Nu lôn im got", sprach Gunther, "daz er den*  
*dienest sîn*  
*sô willeclîch enbiutet mir unt den friunden mîn.*  
*sînen gruoꝝ ich gerne hie vernomen hân,*  
*den mir enbiutet Ezele. des sol er grôz genâde hân."*

1222. *Dô sprach aber Rüedegêr, der edel bote hêr:*  
*"sît ir mir, künic, erloubet, ich sol iu sagen mêr,*

1216, 1 *Er* = Gunther. — 2 *âne friunde rât* Gunther grants this permission without first taking counsel with his relatives. — 4 "I grant you all privileges to engage here in any business (you like)." *gan* see *gunnen*. — 1219, 2 *dar an* "with them", referring to *kint*. — 1222, 2 *sol sagen* §63.



waz iu mîn lieber herre her enboten hât,  
sît im nâch mîner frouwen sîn dinc sô kumberlîchen stât.

1223. Man sagte mîme herren, iwer swester sî âne man,  
Sîfrit sî erstorben. ist daz alsô getân,  
sô sol mîn frou Kriemhilt die rîchen krône tragen  
vor den Ezelen recken. diz bat iu der künic sagen."

1224. Dô sprach der künic rîche (wol gezogen was sîn  
muot):  
"sô hœret mînen willen. ob siz gerne tuot,  
daz wil ich iu künden in disen siben tagen.  
ê ihz an ir erfüere, zwîu solde ich Ezelen versagen?"

1225. Die wîle man den gesten hiez schaffen guot gemach.  
in wart dâ sô gedienet, daz Rüedegêr des jach,  
daz er dâ friunde hâte bî Guntheres man.  
Hagene im diente gerne. er hete im alsam getân.

1226. Alsus beleip dô Rüedegêr unz an den vierden tac.  
der künic nâch râte sande. wie wîslîch er pflac  
vrâgen sîne mâge, ob si dûhte guot getân,  
daz Kriemhilt nemen solde den künic Ezelen ze man.

1227. Si rietenz al gemeine, wan eine Hagene;  
der sprach ze Gunther dem degene:  
"habt ir rehte sinne, sô wirt ez wol behuot,  
ob sis joch volgen wolde, daz irz nimmer getuot."

1228. "War umbe," sprach dô Gunther, "solde ihs volgen  
niht?

swaz der küniginne liebes geschicht,

1222, 4 *sîn dinc sô kumberlîchen stât* "(Since) his affairs are so full of trouble for him." — 1224, 1 *sîn muot* "he"; cf. *sîn lip* §129. — 2 *siz* = *si* ez. — 3 *in disen siben tagen* "within the next seven days." — 1225, 4 Cf. 1204, 2. — 1226, 2-3 *wie wîslîch er pflac vrâgen sîne mâge* "How wise it was of him to consult his relatives." — 1227, 3 *behuot* p.p. of *behüeten*. — 4 *sis* = *si* es.

*des sol ich ir wol gunnen. si ist diu swester mîn.  
wir soldenz selbe werben, ob ez ir êre möhte sîn."*

1229. *Dô sprach aber Hagene: "nu lât die rede stân.  
unt het ir Ezelen künde, als ich sîn künde hân,  
solte si in danne minnen, als ich iuch hære jehen,  
sô wære iu allerêrste von schulden sorgen geschehen."*

1230. *"War umbe?" sprach dô Gunther. "ich behüet wol  
immer daz,  
daz ich im kome sô nâhen, daz ich deheinen haz  
von im müese dulden, unt wûrde si sîn wîp."  
dô sprach aber Hagene: "ez gerâtet nimmer mîn lîp."*

1231. *Man hiez nâch Gêrnôte unt Gîselhere gân,  
ob der frowen brüeder dûhte guot getân,  
daz Kriemhilt nemen solde den rîchen künic hêr.  
noch widerreit ez Hagene, unde ander niemen mêr.*

1232. *Dô sprach von Burgonden Gîselher der degen:  
"nu mugt ir, friunt Hagene, noch der triwen pflegen.  
ergetzet si der leide, unt ir ir habt getân.  
swar an ir wol gelunge, daz solt ir ungewêhet lân.*

1233. *Jâ habt ir mîner swester getân sô starkiu leit,"  
sô sprach aber Gîselher, der degen vil gemeit,  
"daz si des hete schulde, ob si iu wære gram.  
nie man deheiner frouwen mêre freuden noch genam".*

1234. *"Daz ich dâ wol bekenne, daz tuon ich iu kunt:  
sol si nemen Ezele, gelebt si an die stunt,  
si getuot uns leide, swie siz getraget an.  
jâ gewinnet si ze dienste, daz wizzet, manigen künenen man."*

1230, 4 *mîn lîp* = *ich*. — 1231, 4 *widerreit see widerreden*. — 1232, 3 Arrange: *unt ergetzet si der leide, (die) ir ir habt getân*. — 1234, 2 Arrange: *gelebt si an die stunt, sol si nemen Ezele* "If she lives to that time that she will take Etzel." — 3 Note the various verbs with the prefix *ge-* as an expression of Hagen's passionate speech.

1235. *Des antwurte Hagene der herre Gêrnôt:*  
 "ez mag alsô belîben unz an ir beider tôt,  
 daz wir gerîten immer in Ezelen lant.  
 wir suln ir leisten triuwe. daz ist zen êren uns gewant."

1236. *Dô sprach aber Hagene:* "mir kan niemen wider-  
 sagen.  
 unt sol diu frowe Kriemhilt Helchen krône tragen,  
 si getuot uns leide, swie si gefüeget daz.  
 ir sult ez lân belîben. daz kumt iu recken michel baz."

1237. *Mit zorne sprach dô Gîselher, der edelen Uoten sun:*  
 wir ensulen niht alle meinliche tuon.  
 swaz liebes ir geschæhe, vrô solten wir des sîn.  
 swaz ir geredet, Hagene, ich dien ir durch die triuwe mîn."

1238. *Dô daz Hagene hôrte, dô wart er ungemuot.*  
 Gêrnôt unde Gîselher, die stolzen ritter guot,  
 unt Gunther der rîche gerieten sider daz,  
 ob siz loben wolde, daz siz liezen âne haz.

1239. *Dô sprach der künene Gêre:* "sô wil ich hine gân,  
 unt wil mîne frouwen die rede wizzen lân,  
 waz ir der künic Ezele her enboten hât,  
 ob si in nemen welle, daz sî mit triuwen unser rât."

1240. *Dô gie der snelle recke dô er Kriemhilde sach.*  
 si enpfie in minneliche. wie balde er dô sprach:  
 "ir mugt mich gerne grüezen unt geben botenprôt.  
 iuch wil gelücke scheiden ûzir aller iwer nôt.

1241. *Ez hât durch iwer minne, frowe, her gesant*  
 ein der allerbeste, der ie küniges lant

1235, 1 *Hagene* (instead of *Hagenen*) dative. — 3 *immer* "ever." "Without our ever riding to . . ." — 4 *daz ist zen êren uns gewant* "This will be a credit to us". — 1237, 4 *swaz ir geredet* "whatever you may say." *ich dien ir* "I am on her side." — 1239, 4 *daz sî . . . unser rât* "That meets with our approval." — 1240, 3 *botenprôt* = *botenbrôt*. — 4 *ûzir* = *ûzer*. — 1241, 1 *durch iwer minne* "for the purpose of asking you to marry him".

*besaz mit vollen êren, oder krône solde tragen.  
ez werbent boten edele. daz hiezen in die künige sagen."*

1242. *Dô sprach diu jâmers rîche: "iu sol verbieten got,  
unt andern mînen friunden, daz si deheiner spôt  
an mir armen üeben. waz sold ich einem man,  
der ie herzenliebe von guotem wîbe gewan?"*

1243. *Si widerreit iz sêre. dô kômen aber sint  
Gêrnôt ir bruoder unt Gîselher daz kint.  
die bâten minneclîche træsten si den muot.  
ob si den künic næme, ez wær ir wærlîchen guot.*

1244. *Überwinden niemen kunde dô daz wîp,  
daz si minnen wolde deheines mannes lîp.  
dô bâten si die recken: "nu lâzet doch geschehen,  
ob ir niht anders wellet tuon, sô sult ir Rîedegêren sehen."*

1245. *"Daz enwil ich niht versprechen, ine welle in gerne  
sehen,  
den guoten Rîedegêren. daz lâz ich wol geschehen  
durch sîne manige tugende. wær er niht her gesant,  
swerz ander boten wæren, den wær ich immer unbekant."*

1246. *Si sprach: "ir sult in morgen heizen her gân  
zuo mîner kemenâten. ich wil in hæren lân,  
wes ich mich habe berâten, wil ich im denne sagen."  
ir wart eriteniuwet daz ir vil græzliche klagen.*

1247. *Dô engert ouch nihtes mêre der edel Rîedegêr,  
niwan daz er gesæhe die küniginne hêr.  
er wiste sich sô wîsen, daz er wol an getragen  
mohte, swaz er wolde. ir rede im muose wol behagen.*

1241, 4 *ez werbent boten edele* "Noble envoys represent him here in this matter." — 1242, 4 She is opposed to marrying a widower. — 1245, 1 *daz enwil . . . , ine welle . . .* "I don't want to refuse to see him." — 4 *swerz = swer ez. den wær ich immer unbekant* "They would never have a chance to see me."

1248. *Des anderen morgens, dô man früemesse sanc,*  
*die edelen boten kômen. dô wart dâ groz gedranc.*  
*die mit Rüedegêre ze hofe solden gân,*  
*der sach man wol gekleidet manigen wællichen man.*

1249. *Kriemhilt diu vil arme, diu trûric gemuot,*  
*si warte Rüedegêre, dem edelen boten guot.*  
*der vant si in der wate, die si alle zûte truoc.*  
*dâ bi het ir gesinde rîcher kleider genuoc.*

1250. *Sie gie im hin begegene zuo der türe stân*  
*unt enpfie vil lieplîche den Ezelen man.*  
*nîwan mit zwelf gesellen man in dar in verlie.*  
*man bôt im nichel êre. ir kom ein hôher bote nie.*

1251. *Man bat den herren sitzen unde sîne man.*  
*die zwêne marcgrâven sach man vor in stân,*  
*Gern unt Ecgewarten. daz schuof diu künigîn.*  
*die selben boten kunden nimmer baz gewirdet sîn.*

1252. *Dô si dâ wol gesâzen unt sâhen manic wîp,*  
*dô pflac nîwan weinens der Kriemhilde lîp.*  
*ir wât was vor den brüsten der heizen trâhene naz.*  
*daz sach der marcgrâve. der helt niht langer dô dâ saz.*

1253. *Er sprach in grôzen zûhten: "vil edel küniges kint,*  
*mir unt mînen geverten, die mit mir komen sint,*  
*sult ir, frow, erloben, daz wir für iuch stân*  
*unt sagen iu diu mære, durch waz wir her geriten hân."*

1254. *"Nu si iu erlobet," sprach diu künigîn,*  
*"ze sagen iwer mære. alsô stât mîn sin.*  
*sprechet, swaz ir wellet, des iuch dunke guot."*  
*die boten an ir wol sâhen ir vil trûrigen muot.*

---

1249, 2 warte pret. of warten. — 4 dâ bi "meanwhile; at the same time."  
 — 1250, 4 hôher comparative. — 1252, 1 wol gesâzen "were well seated". —  
 2 pflac nîwan weinens "did nothing but weep."

1255. *Dô sprach von Bechelâren der fürste Rüedegêr:*  
 "dienst unde triuwe Ezel, ein küninc hêr,  
 hât iu enboten, frouwe, her in ditze lant.  
 er hât nâch iwer minne vil guote degene gesant.

1256. *Unt enbiut iu inneclîche freude âne leit.*  
 der staten friuntscheste sî er iu bereit,  
 als Helchen mîner frouwen, diu im ze herzen lac.  
 ir sult nu tragen krône, der mîn frowe wîlen pflac."

1257. *Dô sprach diu küniginne:* "vil edel Rüedegêr,  
 wær ieman, der bekande diu mînen scharpfen sêr,  
 der riete mir niht triuten noch deheinen man.  
 wan ich vlôs ein den besten, den ie frowe mêr gewan."

1258. "Waz mag ergetzen leides," sprach dô der küene man,  
 "wan vriuntlîche liebe? swer die kan begân  
 unt danne der einen kîuset, der im ze rehte kumet.  
 für herzenlîche swære niht sô græzlîche frumet.

1259. *Unt ruochet ir ze minnen den hôhen voget mîn,*  
 zwelf rîcher krône sult ir frowe sîn.  
 dar zuo gît iu mîn herre wol drîzec fürsten lant.  
 diu hât er betwungen mit sîner ellenthaften hant.

1260. *Ir sult ouch werden frouwe über manigen küenen man,*  
 die ouch mîner frouwen wâren undertân,  
 unt vil der schænen magede, der si hete gewalt,  
 unt hôher recken mâgen edel küene unde balt.

---

1256, 1 *enbiut* = *enbiutet*. — 1257, 4 *ein den besten* "one of the best." — 1258, 2 *swer* "if a person", meaning "if a woman". — 3 *danne der*: The pronoun *der* here stands for the feminine pronoun *diu*, under the influence of *swer*. *der im*: Here *der* refers to *einen*, and *im* to *der* of the first half of this line. *im* with feminine meaning in expressions of general character is not unusual. Cf. the modern German dative form *einem* and see §134 b. — 1259, 3 *gît* see *geben*. — 1260, 3 *magede* = *megede*, see *maget* §155.



1261. *Dar zuo iu mîn herre gît* (daz heizet er iu sagen),  
*ob ir geruochet krône* bî dem künige tragen,  
*gewalt den allerhæchsten,* den Helche ie gewan,  
*den sult ir gewaldeclîche* hân ob allen sînen man."

1262. *Dô sprach diu küniginne:* "wie möhte mînen lîp  
*immer des gelüsten,* deich würde heledes wîp?  
*mir hat der tût an einem* sô rehte leit getân,  
*des ich unz an mîn ende* muoz in rîwen immer stân."

1263. *Dô sprâchen aber die Hiunin:* "küniginne rîch,  
*iwer leben wirt bî Ezele* sô rehte lobelîch,  
*daz ir des wol vergezzet,* ist daz ez ergât.  
*wan der künic rîche* vil manigen zieren degen hât.

1264. *Die mîner frowen magede* unt iwer magedîn,  
*suln die bî einander* ein gesinde sîn,  
*dâ bî sô möhten recken* werden wolgemuot.  
*lât ez iu, frowe, râten.* ez wirt iu wærlîchen guot."

1265. *Si sprach in ir zûhten:* "nu lât die rede stân  
*unze morgen frûeje.* sô sult ir her gân.  
*sô wil ich iu antwûrten* des ir dâ habet muot."  
*des muosen dô gevolgen* die recken küene unde guot."

1271. *Dô bat si got den rîchen* füegen ir den rât,  
*daz si ze gebene hete* golt silber unde wât,  
*sam bî ir êrsten manne,* dô der noch was gesunt;  
*si gelebte doch nimmer mêre* sît sô vrælîche stunt.

1272. *Dô gedâhtes in ir sinne:* "sol ich mînen lîp  
*geben einem heiden* (ich bin ein kristenwîp),  
*des müese ich von der werlde* grôz itewîze hân.  
*gæb er mir elliu rîche,* sô ist ez immer ungetân."

1262, 2 *deich* = daz ich. — 1263, 1 *Hiunin* = Hiunen, plur. of *Hiune* "Hun". — 3 *ist daz* "in case that." — 1272, 1 *gedâhtes* = gedâhte si.



1273. *Dâ mite siz lie belîben. die naht unz an den tac*  
*diu frowe in vil gedanken an ir bette lac.*  
*diu ir vil liechten ougen wurden trucken nie,*  
*unze si aber den morgen hin zer mettîne gie.*

1274. *Ze rehter messezeit die herren wâren komen.*  
*si heten aber ir swester under hende genomen.*  
*jâ rieten si ir minnen den künic ûz Hiunen lant.*  
*die frowen ir deheiner vil lützil vrêlîche vant.*

1275. *Si bâten dar gewinnen die Etzelen man.*  
*Rüedegêr der rîche biten dô began*  
*die frowen minneclîche, waz si nu wolde tuon,*  
*ob si ze manne wolde des künic Botelunges sun.*

1276. *Si jach, daz si geminnen nimmer mêre wolde man.*  
*dô sprach der marcgrâve: "daz wære missetân.*  
*zwîu woldet ir verderben alsô schænen lîp?*  
*ir muget noch mit êren werden hôhes recken wîp."*

---

**1273**, 4 *mettîne* is not the same as *früemesse*, but a canonical hour and the prayers provided for it. The canonical hours are: 1) *matins* (German *Mette*) at midnight, 2) *lauds* (German *Matutine*) at 3 A.M., 3) *prime* at 6 A.M., 4) *terce* at 9 A.M., 5) *sext* at noon, 6) *none* at 3 P.M., 7) *vespers* at 6 P.M., 8) *compline* at 9 P.M. These are the hours of the day appointed by the Catholic Church (since the 6th century) for the prayers of the clergy and monks. They were made obligatory for the monasteries, cathedral (*münster*) and collegiate chapters and the prayers were provided in the Breviary. (Cf. *The National Encyclopedia*, V, p. 323.) Laymen were under no obligation to attend these devotions. Widows, however, would very frequently spend most of their time praying for the souls of their deceased husbands. Cf. 1113, 4 and 1114, 3. — **1274**, 1 *messezeit* This happens several hours later than what was told in stanza 1273, 4. It does not mean that they went to mass. However, the fact that the hour of the day is expressed in ecclesiastical terms (see also S23, 1) shows to what extent in the Middle Ages daily life was dominated and regulated by the Church. *wâren komen* "arrived, were there". — 2 "They were again pleading with their sister." — 4 *deheiner* "anyone" = "everyone". — **1275**, 4 *Botelung* was Etzel's father.

1277. *Niht half, daz si gebâten, unze Rüedegêr  
sprach in heinliche die küniginne hêr,  
er wolde si ergetzen, swaz ir ie geschach.  
ein teil begundir senften ir vil unsenftez ungemach.*

1278. *Er sprach: "frowe hêre, lât iwer weinen sîn.  
ôð ir zen Hiunin hætent niemens danne mîn,  
getriwer mîner friunde unt ouch der mîner man,  
er müeses sêre engelten, unt het iu iemen iht getân."*

1279. *Dâ von ein teil geringet wart dô der frowen muot.  
si sprach: "sô swert mir, Rüedegêr, swaz mir iemen tuot,  
daz ir mir sît der nêhste, der reche mîniu leit."  
dô sprach der marcgrâve: "des bin ich, frouwe, bereit."*

1280. *Mit allen sînen mannen swuor ir dô Rüedegêr  
mit triwen immer dienen, unt daz die recken hêr  
ir nimmer niht versageten ûz Etzelen lant,  
des si êre haben solde. des sichert ir Rüedegêres hant.*

1281. *Dô gedâhte diu getriuwe: "sît daz ich friunde hân  
alsô vil gewinnen, nu sol ich reden lân  
die liute, swaz si wellen, ich jâmerhaftez wîp.  
waz, ob noch wirt errochen mîns vil lieben mannes lîp?"*

1283. *Si sprach ze Rüedegêre: "het ich daz vernomen,  
daz er niht wære ein heiden, sô wolde ich gerne komen,  
swar er hete willen, unt nâme in zeinem man."  
dô sprach der marcgrâve: "die rede sult ir, frowe, lân.*

1284. *Ern ist niht gar ein heiden. des sult ir sicher sîn.  
jâ was vil wol bekêret der liebe herre mîn,*

1277, 4 *begundir* = *begunde ir*. — 1278, 2 *hætent* = *hætet*. *niemens* gen. of *niemen*. *niemens danne* ("nobody but") with gen. *mîn*, *getriuwer mîner friunde*, and *der mîner man* cf. 876, 2. — 4. Arrange: *unt het iu iemen iht getân*, *er müeses* (= *müese es*) *sêre engelten*. — 1279, 1 *muot* here "dejected mood". — 1281, 1 *gedâhte* Note the ingressive meaning of this perfective verb form. Cf. 123, 4. — 1283, 3 *zeinem* = *ze einem*.

wan daz er sich widere vernogieret hât.  
wolt ir in, frowe, minnen, sô möhte sîn noch werden rât.

1285. Ouch hât er sô vil recken in kristenlîcher ê,  
daz iu bî dem künige nimmer wirdet wê.  
ir mügt ouch lîhte erwerben, daz der fürste guot  
wider ze gote wendet beide sêle unde muot."

1286. Dô sprâchen aber ir brüeder: "lobt ir, swester mîn,  
iwer ungemüete sult ir nu lâzen sîn."  
si gertens alsô lange, daz ir vil trâric lîp  
lobte vor den degenen, si wûrde Etzelen wîp.

1313. Ê si von hûse fûeren, si heten für gesant  
ir boten harte snelle in der Hiunin lant,  
die dem künige sageten, daz im Ruedegêr  
ze wîbe hete gewinnen die edelen küniginne hêr.

1314. Die boten strichen sêre. in was der reise nôt  
durch die grôzen êre unt durch rîchiu potenbrôt.  
dô si ze lande wâren mit den mæren komen,  
dô het der künic Ezele nie sô liebes niht vernomen.

1315. Durch disiu lieben mære hiez der künic geben  
den boten solhe gâbe, daz si wol mochten leben  
mit freuden immer mêre dar nâch unz an ir tôt.  
mit liebe was verschwunden des küniges kumber unde nôt.

9. Wie der künic Ezele unt diu frowe Kriemhilt nâch ir friunden  
ze Wormze sanden.

1414. In alsô hôhen êren (daz ist alwâr)  
si wonte bî dem künige unz in daz sibende jâr.

---

1286, 3 gertens = gerten es. — 1314, 2 potenbrôt = botenbrôt. — 3 ze lande  
"home". — 1414, 1 alwâr = al wâr.

*di zît diu küniginne* eines sunes was genesen.  
*des kunde der künic Ezele* nimmer vrælîcher gewesn.

1415. *Sine wolde niht erwinden,* sine wîrbe sint,  
*daz getoufet wîrde* daz Etzelen kint  
*nâch kristenlîchem rehte.* Ortliêp wart ez genant.  
*si woldenz hân ze herren* über elliu Ezelen lant.

1416. *Swaz ie guoter tugende* an froun Helchen lac,  
*des vleiz sich frou Kriemhilt* dar nâch vil manigen tac.  
*die site si lêrte Herrât,* diu ellende meit.  
*diu hete tougenlîche* nâch ir frowen grôziu leit.

1417. *Die fremden unt die kunden* die jâhen dâ zehant,  
*daz nie milter frouwe* besæze ein küniges lant,  
*noch deheiniu tiurer lebte,* des jach man ir fîur wâr.  
*si erwarp ir lop vil grôzen* zen Hiunin in daz zwelfte jâr.

1418. *Si hete nu wol erkunnen,* daz ir niemen widerstuont,  
*als iz noch fûrstenwîbe* küniges rechen tuont,  
*unt daz si alle zîte* zwelf künige vor ir sach.  
*dô gedâhtes maniger leide,* der ir dâ heime geschach.

1419. *Sie gedâht ouch maniger êren* von Nibelunge lant,  
*der si dâ was gewaltec,* unt die ir Hagenen hant  
*mit Sîfrides tôde* hete gar benomen.  
*si gedâht, ob im daz immer* noch ze leide môhte komen.

1420. *Si wunschte, daz ir muoter* wære in Hiunin lant.  
*ir troumte, daz ir Gîselher* gienge an der hant

---

1414, 3 *di* (= *die*) *zît* "at that time". — 4 *gewesn* = *gewesen* infinitive. Cf. §138. — 1415, 1 *sine* = *si ne*. *Sine wolde niht erwinden, sine wîrbe, daz* . . . "She did not want to desist until she succeeded in having the child baptized according to the Christian law". — 1416, 3 *ellende meit* perhaps originally a prisoner of war. — 4 *ir frowen* = *Helche*. — 1417, 2 *milter* comparative. — 1418, 4 *gedâhtes* = *gedâhte si*. *der* gen. plur. — 1420, 2 *ir* . . . *an der hant* "holding her hand".

bî Ezele dem künige.      si kusten zaller stunt  
vil dicke in senftem slâfe.      sît wart in arebeiten kunt.

1421. Sine kunde ouch niht vergezzen,      swie wol ir anders  
was,  
ir starken herzenleide.      in ir herzen si ez las  
mit jâmer zallen stunden.      daz man sît wol bevant.  
dô begunde ir aber salwen      von heizen trahen ir gewant.

1422. Ez lac ir an dem herzen      spât unde fruo,  
wie man si âne schulde      brâhte dar zuo,  
daz si muose minnen      einen heidenman.  
daz het ir friunt Hagene      unt ouch Gunther getân.

1423. Daz si daz rechen möhte,      des wunschtes alle tage.  
"ich bin nu wol sô rîche,      swem iz ouch missehage,  
daz ich wol mînen vînden      mac gefüegen leit.  
des wæc et ich von Tronege      Hagene gerne bereit.

1424. Nâch den getriwen jômert      dicke zherze mîn.  
die mir dâ leide tâten,      möht ich bî den gesîn,  
sô wûrde noch errochen      mînes mannes lîp.  
des ich vil kûme erbîte",      sprach daz jâmerhafte wîp.

1425. Ze liebe si dô heten      alle sküniges man,  
die Kriemhilde recken.      daz was wol getân.  
der kameren der pflac Ekkewart,      dâ von er friunt gewan.  
den Kriemhilde willen      mohte niemen verstân.

1426. Si gedâhte zallen zîten,      si wolden künic biten,  
daz er ir des gunde      mit güetlîchen siten,  
daz man ir friunde brâchte      in der Hiunin lant.  
den argen willen niemen      an frown Kriemhilt ervant.

1420, 3 kusten = kuste (see küssen) in. — 1421, 4 trahen dat. plur. of trahen. We would expect the form trâhenen. — 1422, 2 dar zuo, daz "to the point that". — 1423, 1 wunschtes = wunschte si. — 4 Hagene dative. — 1424, 1 zherze = daz herze. — 1425, 1 sküniges = des küniges. — 2 daz was wol getân "That was well planned." — 1426, 1 wolden = wolde den. — 2 gunde see gunnen.

1427. *Dô si eines nahtes*      *bî dem künige lac*  
*mit armen umbevangen,*      *als er vil dicke pflac*  
*die edelen frowen triuten*      *(si was im sô der lîp),*  
*dô gedâhte an ir vînde*      *daz vil hêrlîche wîp.*

1428. *Si sprach zuo dem künige:*      “*vil lieber herre mîn,*  
*ich wolde iuch biten gerne,*      *möht ez mit fuoge sîn,*  
*daz ir mich sehen liezet,*      *wie ich hete daz versolt,*  
*ob ir mînen friunden*      *wæret inneclîchen holt.”*

1429. *Dô sprach der künic rîche*      *(getriwe was sîn muot):*  
“*ich bringe iuch des wol innen,*      *swâ lieb unde guot*  
*den helden widerfîere,*      *des mîles ich freude hân,*  
*wande ich von wîbes minne*      *bezzer friunde nie gewan.”*

1430. *Dô sprach diu küniginne:*      “*iu ist daz wol geseit,*  
*ich hân vil hôher mâge.*      *dar umbe ist mir sô leit,*  
*daz mich die sô selten*      *ruochent hie gesehen.*  
*ich hære mîn die liute*      *nîwan fîr ellende jehen.”*

1431. *Dô sprach der künic Ezele:*      “*vil liebiu frowe mîn,*  
*diuht ez si nîht ze verre,*      *sô ladet ich über Rîn,*  
*swelh ir dâ gerne sêhit,*      *her in mîniu lant.”*  
*diu rede ir wol behagete,*      *dô si den willen sîn ervant.*

1432. *Si sprach:* “*welt ir mir triuwe*      *leisten, herre mîn,*  
*sô sult ir boten senden*      *von uns über Rîn.*  
*sô enbîute ich mînen mâgen,*      *des ich dâ habe muot.*  
*sô kumt uns her ze lande*      *vil manic edel ritter guot.”*

1433. *Er sprach:* “*swenne ir gebietet,*      *sô lâzet ez geschehen.*  
*ir̄ dorftet iwer friunde*      *nie sô gerne sehen,*

1427, 1 *eines nahtes* cf. §153 b. — 2 *umbevangen* p.p. of *umbevâhen*. — 1428, 2 *möht ez mit fuoge sîn* “if it were at all convenient”. — 1430, 1 *iu ist daz wol geseit* “You know well that . . .” — 4 “I hear that people call me a stranger.” — 1431, 2 *diuht* see *dunken*. — 1433, 2 *dorftet* see *darf*. — 2-3 Note the different aspects of *sehen* and *gesehe*. While for Kriemhilde this visit means seeing again well-known people, Etzel would see them for the first time.



als ich hie gesæhe der edelen Uoten kint.  
mich müet daz harte sêre, daz si uns sô lange fremde sint."

1434. Er sprach: "ob du ez râtest, vil liebiu frowe mîn,  
die mîne videlære nâch den friunden dîn  
wil ich ze boten senden in Burgonden lant."  
die Ezelen videlære hiez man bringen sâ zehant.

1435. Die knappen kômen beide dâ ir herre saz  
bî der küniginne. der künic in sagte daz:  
si solden boten werden in sîner friunde lant.  
dô hiez man in bereiten harte schiere guot gewant,

1436. Unt ir vartgesellen, vier unt zweinzec man,  
die mit in varn solden zen Burgonden dan.  
in tet der künic Ezele kunt den willen sîn,  
wie si laden solden Gunthern mit den friunden sîn.

10. Wie die herren alle zen Hiunen fuoren.

1540. Der vogt von dem Rîne kleidete sîne man,  
sezec unde tûsent, als ich vernomen hân,  
unt niun tûsent knehte gegen der hôchgezît.  
die si dâ heime liezen, die beweinten ez sît.

1542. Dô sprach zuo zir kinden din edele Uote:  
"ir möhtet noch belîben, helde guote.  
ich sach hînte in troume vil angestliche nôt,  
wie allez daz gefüege in disem lande læge tôt."

1543. "Swer geloubet troumen," sprach dô Hagene,  
der enweiz der rehten mære niht ze sagene,  
wenn ez im nâch den êren volleclîchen stê.  
jâ wil ich, daz mîn herre ze hove nâch urloube gê.

1433, 4 müet = müejet, see müejen. — 1543, 1-3 Everyone who believes in dreams is unable to decide when he has to follow the commands of the code of honor.



1544. *Wir suln gerne rîten in Etzelen lant.  
dâ mag wol dienen künigen guoter helde hant,  
dâ wir dâ müezen schouwen Kriemhilde hôhgezît."  
Hagene riet die reise. iedoch gerow ez in sît.*

1545. *Er het ez widerrâten, niwan daz Gêrnôt  
mit ungefüegen sprüchen im sêre missebôt,  
wan er in mante Sîfrides, vroun Kriemhilde man.  
er sprach: "dâ von wil Hagene die grôzen hovereise lân."*

1546. *Dô sprach der von Tronege: "durh vorhte ich nine  
tuo.  
swenne ir helde wellet, sô sult ir grîfen zuo.  
jâ rît ich mit iu gerne in Etzelen lant."  
sît wart von im verhouwen vil manic helm unde rant.*

1553. *Ê daz si schieden dannen, der künic ze râte gie  
mit sînen hêhsten mannen. unberiktet er niht lie  
lant unde bürge. die der solden pflegen,  
den liez er ze huote vil manigen ûz erwelten degen.*

1554. *Diu ross bereitet wâren den künegen unt ir man.  
mit minneclîchem küssen schiet vil maniger dan,  
dem in hôhem muote lebte dô der lîp.  
daz muose sît beweinen vil manic wâtlichez wîp.*

1555. *Wuofen unde weinen des hôrte man genuoc.  
ir kint diu küniginne zem künige ûf armen truoc.  
"wie welt ir nu verweisen unser beider lîp?  
ir sult durch uns belîben," sô seit daz jâmerhafte wîp.*

1556. *"Ir sult niht, frowe, weinen durch den willen mân.  
ir sult in hôhem muote hie heime ân angest sîn.*

1544, 4 *gerow* pret. of *geriuwen*. — 1546, 1 *nine* = *niht ne*. — 1553, 4 *ûz erwelt* = *ûzerwelt*. — 1555, 2 *küniginne* = *Prunhilde*. This stanza cannot possibly be the work of the original poet but must have been added later by a scribe who forgot that the only child Prunhilde and Gunther ever had was born at least 19 years earlier (cf. 725) and could at this moment not be carried on his mother's arm. — 4 *seit* see *sagen*.

wir komen schiere widere.      mit freuden wol gesunt."  
si schieden minneclîchen      von ir friunden sâ zestunt.

1559. In den selben zîten      was noch der gloube kranc.  
doch frumtens einen kapelân,      der in messe sanc.  
der kom gesunder widere,      wand er vil kûme entran.  
die andern muosen alle      dâ zen Hiunen bestân.

1561. Dô si durch Swanfelt      von Ostervranken riten,  
dô mohte man si kiesen      an hêrlîchen siten,  
die fîrsten unt ir mâge,      die helde lobesam.  
an dem zwelften morgen      der kînic ze Tuonowe kam.

1562. Dô reit von Tronege Hagene      zaller vorderôst.  
er was den Nibelungen      ein helflîcher trôst.  
dô stuont der degen kûene      nider ûf den sant.  
sîn ross er harte balde      zuo zeinem boume gebant.

1563. Daz wazzer was engozzen,      diu schiff verborgen.  
ez kom den Nibelungen      ze grôzen sorgen,  
wie si kæmen ûbere.      der wâc was gar ze breit.  
dô erbeizte zuo der erden      vil manic ritter gemeit.

1564. "Leide," sô sprach Hagene,      "mac dir wol hie ge-  
schehen,  
voget von dem Rîne.      nu maht du selbe sehen:  
daz wazzer ist engozzen,      vil starc ist im sîn fluot.  
ich wæn, wir hie verliesen      noch hiute vil manigen ritter guot."

1565. "Waz wîzet ir mir, Hagene?"      sprach dô der kînec  
hêr.  
"durch iwer selbes tugende      untræstet uns niht mêr!  
den furt sult ir uns suochen      hin ûber an daz lant,  
daz wir hinnen bringen      beidiu ross unt ouch gewant."

1559, 2 *frumtens* = *frumten si*. — 1561, 4 *Tuonowe* = Danube. — 1562, 1 *zaller* (= *ze aller*) *vorderôst* "in front of all the others; at the head of all." — 1564, 3 *im sîn fluot* = *sîn fluot*.

1566. "Jan ist mir", sprach dô Hagene, "mîn leben niht  
sô leit,

daz ich mich welle ertrenken in disem wâge breit.  
ê sol von mînen handen ersterben manic man  
in Etezelen landen. des ich vil guoten willen hân.

1567. Belîbet bî dem wazzer, ir stolzen ritter guot.  
ich wil die vergen suochen selbe bî der fluot,  
die uns bringen übere in daz Ezelen lant."  
dô nam der küene Hagene sînen schilt an die hant.

1568. Der helt vil guot gewâfen an sînem lîbe truoc,  
ein helm ûf sînem houbte, lûter genuoc.  
dô truog er ob der brünne ein wâfen alsô breit,  
daz ze sînen ecken harte bitterlîche sneit.

1569. Er suochte nâch den vergen wider unde dan.  
er hôrte wazzer giezen (losen er began).  
in einem schænen brunnen daz tâten wîsiu wîp.  
die kuolten sich dar inne unde badeten ir lîp.

1570. Hagene wart ir inne. er sleich in sanfte nâch.  
dô si den helt ersâhen, dô wart in dannen gâch.  
daz si im entrunnen, des wâren si vil hêr.  
dô nam er ir gewæte. der helt enschadete in niht mêr.

1571. Dô sprach daz eine merewîb, diu was Hadeburc ge-  
nant:  
"her Hagene, gebt uns widere unser gewant.  
sô ir uns, edel recke, gebet wider unser wât,  
ich sag iu, wie iur reise hin zen Hiunen ergât."

1572. Si swebeten sam die vogle vor im ûf der fluot.  
des dûhten in ir liste starc unde guot.

---

1566, 1 jan = jâ ne. — 1571, 4 iur = iurwer. — 1572, 2 "Therefore, he really believed them capable of telling the truth."

*swaz si im sageten, er geloubt inz deste baz.*  
*des er an si gerte, ir einiu sagete im daz.*

1573. *Si sprach: "ir mügt wol rîten in Etselen lant.*  
*des sî mîn triuwe bürge. mîn houpt sî iwer pfant,*  
*daz helde nie gefuoren in deheiniu rîche baz*  
*nâch alsô grôzen êren. ir sult wol gelouben daz."*

1574. *Der rede was dô Hagene in sînem herzen hêr.*  
*er gab in wider ir kleider unt sânte sich niht mêr.*  
*dô si dô an geleiten ir wunderlîch gewant,*  
*dô sageten si im rehte die reise in daz Eselen lant.*

1575. *Dô sprach daz ander merewîp, diu hiez Winelint:*  
*"ich wil dich warnen, Hagene, daz Adriânes kint.*  
*durch der wæte liebe hât mîn nuome dir gelogen.*  
*unt kumestu zen Hiunen, sô bistu sêre betrogen.*

1576. *Jâ soltu kêren widere (daz ist an der zît),*  
*wand ir helde küene alsô geladet sît,*  
*daz ir ersterben müezet in der Hiunen lant.*  
*swelhe dar gerîtent, die habent den tôt an der hant."*

1577. *Des antwurte Hagene: "ir trieget âne nôt.*  
*wie küende ez sich gefüegen, daz wir alle tôt*  
*zer hôchzît gelægen durch iemannes haz?"*  
*dô begunde si im diu mære sagen künllîcher baz.*

1578. *Si sprach: "nu merket, Hagene, jâ muoz ez alsô*  
*wesen,*  
*daz iuwer deheiner dâ niht kan genesen,*

1572, 3 *inz* = *in ez*. — 4 *des er an si gerte* "what he wanted to know from them". — 1574, 3 *geleiten* pret. (= pluperfect) of *gelegen*. — 1575, 2 *Adriânes* gen. of *Adriân*, Hagen's and Dancwart's father. *daz Adriânes kint* vocative with definite article. Cf. 1579, 4. — 4 *unt* "but". *kumestu* = *kumest du*. — 1576, 1 *daz ist an der zît* "It is high time; the last chance". — 1577, 3 *iemannes* gen. of *iemân*. — 4 The comparative adv. *baz* is used here to intensify the comparative *künllîcher*. Cf. *vürbaz* in §24, line 8.

wan eine des küneges kapelân.      dâ bi sî iu bekant,  
der kumet gesunder widere      in daz Guntheres lant."

1579. Dô sprach in grimmem muote      der künene Hagene:  
"daz wære mînen herren      müelîch ze sagene,  
daz wir zen Hiunen solden      verliesen alle den lîp.  
noch zeige uns überz wazzer,      daz allerwîseste wîp."

1580. Si sprach: "sît ir der verte      niht wellet haben rât,  
swâ jenhalp bi dem wazzer      ein herberge slât,  
dâ inne ist ein verge      unt ninder anderswâ."  
der mære, der er vrâgte,      der geloubet er sich sâ.

1585. Der übermüete Hagene      der vrouwen dô neic.  
des râtes unt der lêre      der helt vil stille sweic.  
dô gie er bi der flüete      hôher an den sant,  
dâ er anderthalben      ein herberge vant.

1606. Daz si gewârlîche      kæmen über fluot,  
diu ross si an sluogen.      der swimmen daz wart guot,  
wand in diu starke ûnde      deheinez dâ benam.  
etelîchez owete verre,      als ez ir müede gezam.

1607. Dô truogen si zem schiffe      ir golt unt ouch ir wât,  
sît daz si der verte      niht mohten haben rât.  
Hagene was dâ meister.      des fuort er über sant  
vil manegen künenen recken      in daz unkunde lant.

1608. Zem êrsten brâht er übere      tâsent ritter kêr  
unt sehzec sîner degene.      dannoch was ir mêr:  
niun tâsent knehte      fuort er an den sant.  
des tages was unmîtezec      des vil künenen Hagenen hant.

---

1579, 4 überz = über daz. daz allerwîseste wîp vocative; cf. 1575, 2. This is, of course, meant ironically. — 1580, 4 "He was soon convinced that the information which he received was true." — 1585, 3 hôher "higher up, upstream". — 1606, 2 der gen. plur. — 1608, 2 dannoch = danne noch.

1609. *Daz schiff ze sîner lenge was starc wît unt grôz,*  
*des in dem gedrengē manig helt genôz.*  
*ez truoc wol mit einander vier hundert über fluot.*  
*an riemen muose ziehen des tages manic recke guot.*

1610. *Dô er si wol gesunde brâhte über die fluot,*  
*dô gedâhte vremder mære der snelle degen guot,*  
*diu im ê dâ sageten diu wilden merwîp.*  
*des het des küneges kapelân vil nâch verlorn sînen lîp.*

1611. *Bî dem kapelsoume er den priester vant.*  
*genuoc des heilictuomes lag under sîner hant.*  
*des moht er niht geniezen, dô in Hagene ersach.*  
*der vil arme kapelân muose lîden ungemach.*

1612. *Er swang in ûz dem schiffe. dar zuo was im gâch.*  
*dô riefen ir genuoge: "vâhâ, herre, vâch!"*  
*Gâselher der junge zürnen dô began.*  
*ern wolt ez doh niht lâzen. daz was im leide getân.*

1613. *Dô sprach von Burgonden der starke Gêrnôt:*  
*"waz hilfet iuch nu, Hagene, des kapelânes tôt?"*  
*tæt ez ein ander iemen, ez solt iu wesen leit.*  
*umbe welhe schulde habt ir dem priester widerseit?"*

1614. *Der pfaffe swam genôte. er wolde sîn genesen,*  
*ob im iemen hülfē. des mohte dâ niht wesen,*  
*wan der grimme Hagene zornec was genuoc.*  
*er stiez in zuo dem grunde. daz dâhtes michel ungefuoc.*

1615. *Dô der arme priester der helfe niht ensach,*  
*dô kêrt er wider übere. des leid er ungemach.*

---

1609, 1 *ze sîner lenge* "in addition to its length". — 1610, 1 *brâhte* pluperfect. — 1612, 2 *vâhâ, vâch!* intensified imperative of *vâhen*: "catch on! hold on!" — 1613, 3 *ein ander iemen* "anybody else". — 1614, 1 *swam* (durative) "tried to swim". — 4 *dâhtes = dâhte si*.

swie er niht swimmen kunde, im half diu gotes hant,  
daz er wol kom gesunder hin wider ûz an daz lant.

1616. Dô stuont der arme priester unt schutte sîn gewant.  
dâ bî sach wol Hagene, daz ez wære ungewant,  
daz im ê dâ sageten diu wîsen merewîp.  
er dâhte: "dise degene müezen vliessen den lîp."

1617. Dô si daz schif entluoden unt gar getruogen dan,  
swaz si dar ûfe heten, der drîer kûene man,  
Hagene ez schriet ze stücken unt stiez ez an die fluot.  
des hete michel wunder die recken kûene unde guot.

1618. "Zwiu tuot ir daz, bruoder?" sprach dô Dancwart.  
"wie suln wir komen übere, sô wir die widervart  
rîten von den Hiunen ze lande an den Rîn?"  
sît dô sagete in Hagene, daz des niht kûnde gesîn.

1619. Dô sprach der helt von Tronege: "ich tuon iz ûf den  
wân,  
ob wir an dirre verte deheinen zagen hân,  
der uns entrinnen welle durch zagelîche nôl.  
der muoz an disem wâge doch ligen schamelîche tôt."

---

1615, 4 *hin* and *ûz* belong together: modern German *hinaus*. — 1616, 1 *schutte* pret. of *schütten*. — 1617, 1 *entluoden* and *getruogen* pluperfect.



## II. From KUDRUN

(For a better understanding of this poem, Franz Saran, *Kudrun* [Halle, 1922] is suggested as outside reading)

### 1. *Wie Hagene von dem grîfen wart hin gevüeret.*

1. *Er wuohs in Îrlande ein rîcher künnic hêr.  
geheizt was er Sigebant, sîn vater der hiez Gêr,  
sîn muoter diu hiez Uote und was ein küniginne.  
durch ir hôhe tugende sô gezam dem rîchen wol ir minne.*

2. *Gêre dem rîchen kûnege, daz ist wol erkant,  
dienten vil der bürge. er het siben vürsten lant.  
dar inne het er recken vier lûsent oder mêre,  
dâ mite er tûgelîchen mohte erwerben beide guot und êre.*

3. *Dem jungen Sigebande man gên hove gebôt,  
dâ er solte lernen, ob im des wurde nôt,  
mit dem spere rîten, schirmen unde schiezen,  
sô er zuo den vînden kâeme, daz ers deste baz môhte geniezen.*

4. *Er wuohs unz an die stunde, daz er wâfen trûoc.  
in heldes ahte er kunde alles des genuoc,  
des in solten prîsen man unde mâge.  
des lie der helt edele sich deheine zîte betrâgen.*

5. *Dar nâch in kurzen stunden dô schiet si der tôt,  
sô noch den edelen liuten geschiht ze grôzer nôt.  
jâ erstênt diu urkûnde in aller vürsten rîchen,  
der wir mit grôzen sorgen müezen warten allertûgelîchen.*

---

1, 1 *Îrlant* "Ireland". — 2, 3 *dar inne* "in them". — 4 *dâ mite* "with whom". — 3, 4 *ers* = *er es*. — 4, 1 *daz* "when". — 5, 3 *urkûnde* read *u'rkû'nde* with two accents.

6. *Diu Sigebandes muoter den witewen stuol besaz,*  
*der mære helt guoter dar umbe liez er daz,*  
*daz er niht wolte minnen ze rehter sîner ê.*  
*den edelen küniginnen was nâch Sigebanden wê.*

7. *Sîn muoter riet dem rîchen, daz er im nâme ein wîp,*  
*dâ von getiuret wurde sîn lant und ouch sîn lîp*  
*nâch sô grôzem sêre, er und ouch sîn künne:*  
*nâch sînes vater tôde volgte im beide vreude und michel winne.*

8. *Sîner muoter lêre diu behagete im wol.*  
*der begunde er volgen als man vriunden sol.*  
*er hiez im werben eine die besten von den rîchen:*  
*diu saz in Norwæge. des hulfen im sîne mâge vlîziclîchen.*

9. *Si wart im gemaheret: alsô ist uns geseit.*  
*dô wart ir hovegesinde vil manic schœniu mit*  
*und siben hundert recken von Frideschotten lande.*  
*die vuoren mit ir gerne, wan si den jungen künic wol erkanden.*

22. *In den nâhsten drin jâren, sô wir hœren sagen,*  
*si begunde bî dem künnege ein edel kint tragen.*  
*daz wart getoufet unde sît genennet*  
*bî sînem namen Hagene, dâ von man daz mære wol erkennet.*

23. *Man hiez ez ziehen schône und vil vlîziclîchen phlegen.*  
*geriete ez nâch dem künne, sô wurde ez wol ein degen.*  
*sîn phlâgen wîse vrouwen und vil schœne meide.*  
*sîn vater und sîn muoter sâhen an im ir liechten ougenweide.*

6, 1 *d. witewen st. besaz* "sat down on a widow's chair", i.e., "attained the status of widowhood, became a widow". — 7, 1 *im reflexive!* — 3 *sêre* referring to the death of King *Gêr* which was a great calamity for the country and the dynasty. The young king has not yet won the prestige which his father possessed. A marriage with the daughter of a mighty king would strengthen the position of the country and give the young king more authority. — 8, 3 *im reflexive!* — 4 *Norwæge* "Norway".

24. *Dô ez was gewahsen ze siben jâre tagen,*  
*man sach ez dicke recken ûf ir handen tragen.*  
*im leidet bî den vrouwen und liebte bî den mannen.*  
*sît wart ez in vremede: ez wart von in gewîeret verre dannen.*

54. *Des wirtes ungelîcke nâhen dô began,*  
*dâ von er und vrou Uote grôziu leit gewan.*  
*ez hete der ûbele tiuvel gesant in daz rîche*  
*sînen boten verre. daz ergienc in allen klagelîche.*

55. *Ez was ein wilder grîfe, der kom dar gevlogen.*  
*daz im der künic Sigebant hete ze liebe erzogen,*  
*(sîn grôz ungelîcke mohte er dâ bî kiesē)*  
*sînen sun den jungen muose er von dem starken grîfen vliessen.*

58. *Der grîfe lie sich nidere und beslôz daz kindelîn*  
*in sîne klâwe. dô tete er grôze schîn,*  
*daz er grimnic wære und ûbele genuot.*  
*daz muosten sît beweinen die helde kûene unde guot.*

59. *Ez begunde lâte erschrîen, ez was sêre erschraht.*  
*er truoc ez harte hôhe mit der sîner maht.*  
*dô kêrte er gegen dem luste zuo den wolken verre.*  
*daz muoste dô beweinen ûzer Îrlande der herre.*

67. *Nû lâzen wir belîben, wie dâ gescheiden wart,*  
*und grîfen an diu mære, welch ein swinde vart*  
*mit dem wilden grîfen daz edel kint reit.*  
*ez heten sîne mâge umbe ez vil starkez leit.*

68. *Ez was noch unerstorben, wan ez got gebôt.*  
*iedoch het ez besunder dar umbe grôze nôt,*

24, 2 *handen* dat. plur. without umlaut; cf. §153 a. — 3 *leidet* = *leidete*. — 4 *von in* "away from them". — 55, 1 *kom gevlogen* "came flying along". — 2 *im* reflexive! — 4 *von* "through". — 58, 2 *tete schîn* "showed, made it clear". — 59, 1 *Ez* the child. *erschraht* p.p. of *erschrecken* vv. — 67, 1 *gescheiden wart* impersonal passive construction; cf. Diet. 6. — 68, 2 *besunder dar umbe* "for that very reason": Had the boy been dead, he would not have had to suffer this mortal dread.

wan ez der alte grîfe      den sînen jungen truoc.  
dô ez die vor in heten,      dô hete ez arbeit genuoc.

69. Als diu kunft des alten      zuo dem neste ergie,  
daz kint er ûz den klâwen      zuo den jungen lie.  
dô zuhte ez ir einer.      daz er ez niht verslant,  
dâ wart diu gotes güete      vil verre an bekant.

70. Si woltenz hân zerbrochen,      mit klâwen gar zertragen.  
dâ hæret michel wunder      von sînen sorgen sagen,  
wie dâ den lîp behielte      von Írlant der herre.  
in habet der jungen einer      under sînen klâwen harte verre.

71. Von boume ze boume      er mit dem kinde vlouc.  
den grîfen dô sîn sterke      ein teil ze sêre trouc.  
er gestuont ûf einem aste,      dem was er ze swære.  
des muoste er ûf die erde,      dô er zuo dem neste gerner wære.

72. Von des grîfen valle      daz kindel im enbrast.  
sich barc in einem krûte      der wênige gast.  
er was noch übele enbizzen      an dem sînem libe.  
sît kom er ze trôste      in dem lande manegem schænen wîbe.

73. Got tuot michel wunder:      des mac man verjehen.  
von der grîfen sterke      was ouch ê geschehen,  
daz drîer küenege tohter      wâren dar getragen.  
si sâzen dâ vil nâhen.      nât kan iu niemen gesagen,

74. Wie si den lîp nerten      ie sô manegen tac:  
wan daz ir got von himele      vil gnædichlichen phlac.  
Hagene dâ belîben      solte niht al eine.  
die minneclîchen meide      vant daz kint in einem holen steine.

---

69, 3 zuhte pret. of zucken. — 4 dâ and an belong together. — 70, 1 hân zerbrochen Completion of action; cf. §148 (last sentence). — 4 habet pret. of haben. — 71, 4 gerner comparative of gerne. dô er . . . wære elliptic sentence: add the verb "to fly". — 74, 2 got von himele "God in Heaven".

75. *Dô ez die vrouwen slîchen sâhen an den berc,*  
*dô wolten si des wænen, ez wære ein wildez twerc*  
*oder ein merwunder von dem sê gegangen.*  
*sît kom ez in sô nâhen. jâ wart ez von in güetliche enphangen.*

76. *Hagene wart ir innen: si wichen in daz hol.*  
*alles unmuotes was ir herze vol,*  
*ê daz sî ervunden, daz ez ein kristen wære.*  
*mit sîner arbeite schiet er si sît von maneger herzen swære.*

77. *Dô sprach diu eltiste "wie getarst du zuo uns gân,*  
*sît wir von gote von himele dise herberge hân?*  
*nû suoche dîne genôze in dem wilden sê.*  
*wir lîden doch arbeit und ist uns hie grîulîchen wê."*

78. *Dô sprach daz edele kindel "lât mich iu wesen bî,*  
*ob ir daz welt gelouben, daz ich ein kristen sî.*  
*mich truoc der wilden grîfen einer zuo dem steine.*  
*ich wære bî iu gerne: jâ mac ich niht hie belîben eine"*

79. *Dô enphiengens minneclîchen daz wênige kint.*  
*si gewunnens künde von sînem dienste sint.*  
*si begunden vrâgen, von wannenz komen wære.*  
*von sînes hungers sorgen verdrôz ez gên den vrouwen der mære.*

80. *Dô sprach daz edele kindel "mir wære enbîzens nôt.*  
*welt ir mir mite teilen iwer trinken unde brôt,*  
*deist mir gewesen tiure wol drîer tage wîle.*  
*wande mich der grîfe truoc dâ her wol hundert lange mîle."*

81. *Dô sprach der vrouwen einiu "ez ist sô geschehen,*  
*daz wir unser schenken selten haben gesehen*

---

75, 1 *slîchen* The boy tries to keep out of sight of the griffins. — 3 *sê* dat. of *sê*. — 77, 1 *eltiste* superlative of *alt*. — 4 *und ist uns . . .* "and we feel awfully lonely here." — 79, 4 *ez* accusative referring to the boy. "He did not feel like telling his story to the ladies". — 80, 1 *mir wære . . .* "I should have something to eat". — 3 *deist* = *daz ist*. — 4 *mîle* The German mile was about five times as long as the English mile.

noch unser truhsæzen, die uns solten tragen spîse."  
 si lobeten gotes güete und wâren in ir tumben jâren wise.

82. Si begunden balde suochen wurze und ander krût.  
 si wolten bî in neren daz Sigebandes trût.  
 des si dâ lebeten, des brâhtens im genuoc.  
 ez was ein vremede spîse, die im diu juncvrouwe truoc.

83. Diu krût diu muoste er niezen durch des hungers nôt.  
 müelîch ist ze lîden der bitterlîche tôt.  
 er wonte bî den vrouwen dâ vil manegen tac,  
 daz er ir güetlîche mit sînem dieneste phlac.

84. Ouch heten sin in huote, daz wil ich iu sagen.  
 jâ wuohs er dâ mit sorgen in sînen jungen tagen,  
 unze daz den kinden bî ir grôzen swære  
 vor dem hollen steine erstuonden aber diu sunderbæren mære.

85. Ich enweiz von welhem ende gevlozzen über mer  
 zuo den steinwenden kom ein gotes her.  
 die starken gruntwelle kolten sî vil sêre.  
 die ellenden meide heten ungemüetes deste mêre.

86. Die kiele in zerbrâsten, des liutes niht genas.  
 die alten grîfen kômen dâ daz geschehen was.  
 si truogen zuo ir neste vil manegen tôten man,  
 des der junge Hagene vil der sorgen gewan.

87. Dô si den jungen grîfen ir spîse heten lân,  
 die alten grîfen kêrten von ir geniste dan,  
 ich enweiz in welhen ende ûf des meres strâzen.  
 si heten ûf dem berge einen grimmen nâchgebûren lâzen.

88. Hagene noch der liute sach ligen bî dem mer  
 (die dâ wârn ertrunken, daz was ein gotes her).

---

83, 4 daz . . . phlac "taking care of . . ." — 84, 1 sin = si in. — 85, 1 von  
 welhem ende "for what reason". gevlozzen kom "arrived by ship". — 2 ein  
 gotes her "an army of crusaders." — 87, 4 lâzen p.p.; cf. §32 B.



dô wânde er, daz er solte vinden dâ ir spîse.  
vor den iibelen grîfen sleich er zuo dem stade harte lîse.

89. Dô vant er niemen mêre, wan gewâpent einen man,  
des er von den grîfen grôze nôt gewan.  
er schutte in ûz den ringen, er liez im niht versmâhen.  
bogen und gewæpen vant er der sîner sîten harte nâhen.

90. Dô garte sich selbe daz wênige kint.  
dâ obene in den lûften hôrte er einen wint.  
dô hete sich versûmet der wênige herre.  
dô kom der alte grîfe. Hagene was dem steine gar ze verre.

91. Er swanc sich zorneclîche nider ûf den griez.  
den sînen burgære, den er dâ heime liez,  
den wolte er harte gerne an der zîte hân verslunden.  
dô wart der küene in vil guotes heldes mâze vunden.

92. Mit sîner blæder krefte hete er ûf gezogen  
manic starke strâle schôz er ûz dem bogen.  
er kunde in niht versnîden. wes mohte er dâ geniezen?  
dô versuochte erz mit dem swerte. er hôrte die vrouwen klagen  
unde riezzen.

93. In sînen sîten tumben grimme er was genuoc.  
dem grîfen einen vetech er von der ahsel sluoc  
und verhoute an einem beine in starke unde sêre,  
daz er getragen mohte von der stat sînen lîp niht mêre.

94. Den sige het er erworben. der eine der was tôt.  
schiere kom der ander: des leit er sunderuôt.  
sît sluoc er si alle, die jungen zuo den alten.  
des half im got von himele: jâ mohte er solher krefte niht ge-  
wallen.

---

89, 3 schutte see schütten. — 90, 1 garte pret. of garwen. — 92, 2 manic starke strâle is object of both hete er ûf gezogen and schôz. — 93, 3 verhoute pret. of verhouwen. — 94, 3 zuo "in addition to".



95. Als er daz michel wunder hete dâ getân,  
 dô hiez er sîne vrouwen von dem steine gân.  
 er sprach "lât iu erschînen den luft und ouch die sunnen,  
 sît uns got von himele etelîcher vreuden wil gunnen."

96. Si enphiengen in güellîchen. ofte bî der stunt  
 wart er von den vrouwen geküssset an den munt.  
 ir voget lac dâ veige. waz möhte in dô gewerren,  
 si giengen an dem berge nâch ir willen nâhen oder verren?

97. Dô in der grôzen sorgen von im gar gebrast,  
 dô lernte sô wol schiezen der ellende gast,  
 daz im die vogele kunden vliegende niht entrinnen.  
 er lernte swes er gerte, dô er nâch sîner nôt begunde sinnen.

98. Er wart sô baldes herzen, sô vrevele und sô zam.  
 hei waz er von tieren sneller sprünge nam!  
 als ein pantel wilde lief er âf die steine.  
 jâ zôch er sich selbe: er was aller sîner mâge eine.

99. Wie ofte er zuo den iinden durch kurzwîle gie.  
 er sach in dem wâge die râwen vische ie:  
 die kunde er gevâhen, möht er ir iht geniezen.  
 sîn kuchen diu rouch selten: des mohte in alle tage dâ verdriezen.

100. Von sîner herberge gienc er in den walt.  
 dâ sach er vil der tiere vrevele unde balt.  
 dar under was ir einez, daz wolde in verslinden.  
 daz sluoc er mit dem swerte: ez muoste sînes zornes harte en-  
 phinden.

101. Einem gabilûne was ez anelîch.  
 er begunde ez schinden. dô wart er krefte rîch.

---

96, 3 in dative. — 97, 1 von im "through him". — 98, 2 er nam von tieren "he learned by watching animals; he copied from animals".

*in luste sînes bluotes. dô er des vol getranc,  
dô gewan er vil der krefte. er hete manigen gedanc.*

102. *Mit des tieres hiute der helt sich bewant.  
bî im er harte nâhen einen lewen vant.  
der mohte im niht enphlieden. wie schiere er zuo im gie!  
des beleip er unvrhouwen. der helt ez güetliche enphie.*

103. *Daz tier, daz er hête dâ ze tôde erslagen,  
daz gedâhte er ze hûse heim mit im tragen.  
die vrouwen ze aller zîte genuzzen sîner güete.  
von der vremeden spîse hôhte sich ir herze und ir gemüete.*

104. *Viur was in tiure, walt heten si genuoc.  
ûz einem herten velsen er manegen vanken sluoc.  
daz in vor was vremede, des wurden si berâten.  
jâ tete ez anders niemen, si muostenz selbe bî der gliüete brâten.*

105. *Dô si die spîse nuzzen, dô mêrte sich ir kraft.  
ouch kuhten sich ir sinne. von gotes meisterschaft  
si wurden an ir lîben schæne und lobebære,  
sam iegelîchiu in ir vater lande wære.*

106. *Ouch hete der wilde Hagene krefte zwelf man,  
des er bî sînen zîten hôhen lof gewan.  
in und die juncvrouwen muote daz harte sêre,  
daz si in der wüeste solten belîben immer mêre.*

107. *Dô bâten si sich wîsen zuo des wazzers vlut.  
si giengen schamlîchen. jâ wâren niht ze guot  
ir kleider, diu si truogen. diu strihte ir selber hant,  
dâ si der junge Hagene in ir ellende vant.*

108. *Tage vier und zweinzic si giengen durch den tan.  
an einem morgen vrüege dô sach der junge man*

101, 3 *luste* see *lûsten*. — 4 *er hete manigen gedanc* He received not only physical strength, but also unusual mental capacity enabling him, e.g., to discover how a fire can be kindled (cf. 104). — 103, 4 *hôhte* pret. of *haben*. — 105, 2 *kuhten* see *kücken*. — 106, 3 *muote* see *müezen*.

ein schif geladen swære. ez kam von Garadê.  
den ellenden vrouwen den tete ir arbeit vil wê.

109. Hagene ruofte lûte, daz in des niht verdrôz,  
swie sêre von den winden daz mer mit iinden vlôz.  
daz schif begunde krachen. die bi in vuoren nâhen,  
si vorhten wildiu merkint, dô si die vrouwen an dem stade sâhen.

110. Daz schif het einen herren ûz Salmê.  
Hagene und sîn künne was im vil kunt ê.  
er was ir nâchgebûre dâ her von Írlande.  
sun den Sigebandes der pilgerîne einer niht bekande.

111. Der grâve sînen schifman zem stade niht enliez.  
der ellende recke vûeren sich dô hiez  
durch die gotes gûete von dem wilden sande.  
dô erkaltet ir gemûete, dô er Krist sô vrevellîche nande.

112. Der grâve selbe zwelfte in eine barken spranc.  
ê er diu mære ervûere, diu wîle dûhte in lanc,  
obe ez schrâwaz wâren oder wildiu merwunder.  
er gesach bi sînen zîten nie sô kêrlîchiu kunder.

113. Er begunde vrâgen, ê er zem stade gie  
“sît ir, kint, getoufet, waz tuot ir danne hie?”  
er sach ir lîp den schânen in jungen mies gewunden.  
dô bâten si die geste, daz si in mit in ze varne gunden.

---

109, 1 daz in . . . “without getting tired”. — 110, 4 der pilgerîne einer niht “not one of the crusaders”. — 111, 1 zem cf. §152 a. — 2 d. ellende recke referring to Hagen. vûeren sich dô hiez The direct object of hiez is omitted. Hagen calls on (hiez) the crew of the vessel to take him (sich) and his companions away from this desert place. — 4 erkaltet Cf. erküelet 125, 4. What friendly feeling there might have been in the hearts of the crusaders at first sight vanished completely when they heard Hagen’s reference to God (line 3). In their opinion, heathens have no right to mention the name of God.

2. *Wie Hagene an den kiel kom.*

114. *Ê si zem schiffe giengen, dô brâhte man in gewant,  
daz die pilgerîne vuorten in daz lant.  
swie kiusche sî wâren, daz muosten si dô tragen.  
jâ schamten si sich sêre: iedoch verendet sich ir klagen.*

115. *Dô si die schâenen meide brâhten ûf die vlut,  
dô giengen in engegene die ritter stolz und guot.  
si enphiengen vlâzicliche die vürsten tohter tiure,  
swie si sich ê versâhen, daz si wâren wilde und ungehiure.*

116. *Dô beliben si des nahtes bî in ûf dem sê.  
diu ungewonheite tete den kinden wê.  
hæten siz vür wirde, sô diuhten si mich wise.  
der grâve von Garadîe hiez in geben guote spîse.*

117. *Dô si gespîset wâren und er bî in gesaz,  
der grâve von Garadîe bat im sagen daz,  
wer si sô rehte schæne bræhte zuo dem sê.  
den kinden tete sîn vrâgen und ouch ir arbeite wê.*

118. *Dô sprach diu eltiste, diu under in dâ saz,  
"ich bin von verren landen, herre, wizzet ir daz,  
von Indîâ der guoten, der dâ was künic inne  
mîn vater, dô er laite, dâ ich krône leider nimmer mêt ge-  
winne."*

119. *Dô sprach diu mitteliste "ich bin von verren komen.  
mich hât ein wilder grîfe ze Portigâl genomen.  
der mîn dâ jach ze kinde, der was dâ landes herre,  
ein voget vil gewaltic nâhen unde verre."*

116, 1 *des nahtes* "over night"; cf. §153 b. — 2 *tete . . . wê* "inspired the children with awe". — 3 *hæten siz . . .* "if they regarded it as an honor conferred on them . . ." *diuhten* cf. §103. — 118, 3 *der* (dat.) *dâ . . . inne* "in which". — 4 *laite* = *lebet*. — 119, 1 *diu mitteliste* (note the superlative degree) "the one in between" i.e. "the second one". In modern German the form would be *die mittlere*, a comparative form. — 2 *Portigâl* "Portugal". — 3 *der mîn dâ jach ze kinde* "he who called me his child".

120. *Diu jüingest under den, diu bî dem grâven saz,  
 diu sprach gezogenliche "herre, ich sage iu daz:  
 ich bin von Îserlande, dâ was mîn vater herre.  
 die mich dâ ziehen solten, den kom ich leider al ze verre."*

121. *Dô sprach der ritter edele "got hât vil wol getân,  
 sît er iuch bî den mâgen niht wolte belîben lân.  
 ir sît mit genâden ûz grôzer nôt er bunden,  
 sît ich iuch sô schæne meide hân an diseme stade vunden."*

122. *Waz er dâ vrâgen möhte, des wære im unnôt,  
 wie daz komen wære, daz si den grimmen tût  
 niht von den grîfen nâmen, die si ze neste truogen.  
 si lîten manegez, des si doch nie gewuogen.*

123. *Dô sprach der rîche grâve wider den jungen man  
 "vriunt und geselle, ir sult mich hâren lân,  
 sît daz mir die vrouwen gesaget hânt ir mære,  
 nû weste ich harte gerne, wâ iurwer lant oder künne wære."*

124. *Dô sprach der wilde Hagene "daz wil ich iu sagen.  
 mich hât der grîfen einer ouch dâ her getragen.  
 mîn vater hiez Sigebant. ich bin von Îrrîche  
 und bin bî disen vrouwen gewesen vil lange kumberliche."*

125. *Dô vrâgten si alle "wie mohte daz wesen,  
 daz ir bî den grîfen sô lange sît genesen?"  
 dô sprach der junge Hagene "daz wolte diu gotes güete.  
 an in ist wol erküelet beide mîn herze und ouch mîn gemüete."*

126. *Dô sprach der ûz Gradie "daz solt dû mir sagen,  
 wie dir geringet sî diu nôt." "dâ hân ich erslagen  
 die alten zuo den jungen. ir einer niht genas,  
 bî den ich mînes lîbes in grôzen sorgen was."*

120, 3 *Îserlant* This is the name of an unidentified country which in Wolfram's *Parzival* 196, 28 and 220, 6 appears as *Îserterre* with *Clâmîdê* as its king. — 122, 4 *gewuogen* see *gewâhenen*. — 125, 4 *erküelet* Cf. *erkaltet* III, 4. — 126, 3 *ir einer niht* "not one of them". — 4 Read *bî den ich in grôzen sorgen mînes lîbes was*.

127. *Dô sprâchens al gemeine* "sô ist starc dîn lîp.  
*dich mûgen loben balde* beide man unde wîp.  
*ez möhten unser tûsent* nimmer hân getân,  
*daz wîrs erslagen hâten.* ez ist dir sælicliche ergân."

128. *Der grâve und sîn gesinde* vorhten ditze kint.  
*ez het unmæzliche sterke:* daz geschadete in sint.  
*man wolte in von wâfen* mit listen hân gescheiden.  
*daz werte er zornedliche.* jâ mohte in sîn komen balde leiden.

129. *Dô sprach aber der grâve* "mir ist wol geschehen  
*nâch manegem schaden grôzen,* den ich hân gesehen.  
*und bist dû der mäge* dâ her von Îrlande  
*des viirsten Sigebandes,* sô wil ich dich mir haben ze phande.

130. *Dû bist mir komen rehte,* daz sî dir geseit.  
*mir habent dîne vriunde* getân sô manigiu leit  
*ze Garadîe dem lande* (daz lît in gar ze nâhen):  
*si hiezzen mîne helde* in einer herte slâhen unde vâhen."

131. *Dô sprach der junge Hagene* "unschuldic ich des bin,  
*daz si iu getâten.* nû bringet mich ze in,  
*sô getrouwe ich wol versüenen* ir haz und iurwer strîten.  
*lât mich genædich* zuo mînen kunnen erbîten."

132. *Der grâve sprach zem kinde* "dû muost mîn gîsel sîn.  
*sô sîn mîn hovegesinde* diu schænen magedîn.  
*die wil ich mir ze êren* haben in mînem lande."  
*diu rede dûhte Hagenen,* si wære im beide schade unde schande.

133. *Der recke sprach in zorne* "ich wil niht gîsel wesen.  
*des ennuote niemen,* der welle genesen.  
*ir guote schifliute,* ir bringet mich ze lande.  
*des lône ich iu gerne.* ich gilte mit schatze unde mit gewande.

127, 4 *ez ist dir sælicliche ergân* "It is due to God's blessing that it turned out so well for you". — 128, 4 *in* dative. — 130, 1 *Du bist mir komen rehte* "I am pleased that you came to me." — 3 *lît* see *ligen*. — 133, 2 *ennuote* = *en muote*.



134. *Ir muotet mînen vrouwen, daz si iuwer gesinde wesen.  
âne sîne helfe si mugen wol genesen.  
sî iemen hie sô wîse, der volge mîner lêre.  
kêret umb iur segele, daz man daz schif iht kêre."*

135. *Daz liut in wolte vâhen. ir herre daz gebôt.  
dô stuont er in ze nâhen. des kômen si in nôt.  
er holte bî dem hâre wol drîzic in die ûnde.  
diu kraft sînes lîbes wart den pilgerînen harte kûnde.*

136. *Hæten si niht gescheiden diu minniclîchen kint,  
den helt von Garadie hiet er erslagen sint.  
si wâren im gelîche die armen zuo den hêren.  
die selben schifliute muosten dô gên Îrlande kêren.*

137. *Îlen si begunden, daz si niht wurden vlorn.  
wan si muosten vûrhten des jungen Hagenen zorn.  
tage sibenzehene si vil unmuozic wâren.  
si vorhten in al gemeine, wan sî in sâhen übele gebâren.*

138. *Dô er begunde nâhen in sînes vater lant  
(die vil wîten bûrge hete er ê bekant),  
einen palas hôhen kôs er bî dem vluote.  
driu hundert türne sach er dâ vil veste unde guote.*

139. *Dar inne was her Sigebant und ouch sîn edel wîp.  
die pilgerîne muosten sorgen umbe ir lîp,  
obe ir wurde innen der ûz Îrrîche,  
daz er si alle slîege. daz understuont Hagene lobelîche.*

140. *Dô sprach zuo den gesten der watlîche man  
"ich wil ez gerne siienen, swie ich niht enhân*

---

134, 1 *Ir muotet mînen vrouwen* "You demand of my ladies". *wesen* pres. subj. 3rd plur. instead of the more frequent form *sîn*. The forms are: *wese, wesest, wese, wesen, weset, wesen*. Cf. §25. — 2 *sîne* referring to the Count of Garadê. — 3 "Should anybody here be so wise, . . ." 4 *iur* = *iuwer*. — 136, 3 *die armen zuo den hêren* "the rich as well as the poor". — 137, 1 *vlorn* see *vliesen*. — 139, 4 *slîege* see *slâhen*.



gewalt es hie ze lande.      ich wil dar boten senden  
und wil haz den alten      mit iu und mit dem küenege gar verenden.

141. Der nû welle dienen      an mir michel guot,  
diu mære, diu ich enbiute,      swer daz gerne tuot,  
der diu sage dem küenege,      dem gibe ich golt daz rîche.  
jâ lônet im vil gerne      mîn vater und mîn muoter rîchlîche."

142. Der pilgerîne zwelve      hiez er rîten dan.  
"nû saget daz dem küenege"      sprach der junge man,  
"obe er welle Hagenen      sînen sun sehen,  
an dem von einem grîfen      im herzen leide was geschehen.

143. Ich weiz wol, daz sîn geloubet      der edele künic niht.  
sô vrâget mîne muoter,      ob sî iu des vergiht,  
daz si mich danne welle      haben ze einem kinde,  
ob si ein guldîn kriuze      vor an mîner brust vînde."

144. Die boten riten dannen      nâhen in daz lant.  
dâ saz in einem hûse      vrou Uote und Sigebant.  
dô erkande er, daz si vüeren      dâ her von Garadîne.  
ez wæren sîne vînde.      dar umbe zurnt der wirt und ouch die sîne.

145. Er iesch, wie si getörsten      komen in daz lant.  
dô sprach einer darunder      "dâ hât uns her gesant  
dîn sun der junge Hagene.      swer den gerne sæhe,  
der ist hie sô nâhen,      daz daz in kurzer zîte wol geschæhe."

146. Dô sprach der vürste Sigebant      "ir trieget mich âne nôt.  
er ist sô hin gescheiden,      daz mir des Kindes tôt  
dicke hât erwecket      mînes herzen sinne."  
"ob irs niht geloubet,      sô vrâget iuwer wîp die küniginne.

147. Der ist er alsô dicke      gewesen nâhen bî.  
ob im an sîner brust      ein guldîn kriuze sî,

141, 1 an mir "from me". — 142, 4 herzen leit "deep sorrow". — 143, 2 vergiht see verjehen. — 3 haben ze einem kinde "have as her son". — 144, 4 zurnt pret. of zürnen. — 145, 1 iesch pret. of eischen. getörsten see geturren. — 147, 1 Der and bî belong together. Read bî der ist er . . . nâhen.

ob man des an dem degene die rehten wârheit vinde,  
geruochet ir des beide, sô muget irs iuch wol jehen ze einem  
kinde."

148. Uoten der vrouwen ditz dô wart geseit.  
si vreute sich der mære. ê was ir ofte leit.  
si sprach "wir sulen rîten dâ wirz ze rehte ervinden."  
der wirt hiez dô satelen im und sînen besten ingesinden.

149. Zehant dô sprach ein pilgerîn der schænen Uoten zuo  
"wilt dû mir, vrouwe, volgen, ich râte dir, waz dû tuo.  
dû solt bringen kleider den vil schænen kinden.  
die koment dir ze allen êren. si heizent dînes jungen ingesinde."

150. Man brâhte rîchiu kleider mit der vrouwen dan.  
ouch volgete der küniginne vil manic küener man.  
her Hagene was gestanden nider ûf den sant,  
dâ man die von Garadî bî dem ellenden vant.

### 3. Wie Kûtrûn muoste waschen.

1041. Dô bôt man Kûdrûnen bürge unde lant.  
dô si des niht wolte, sît muoste si gewant  
waschen allertägelîch von morgen unz an die naht.  
des vlôs her Ludewic den sic, dô er mit Herwîge vaht.

1042. Dô bat man Kûdrûnen von dem sedele stân  
und hiez die maget edele mit Ortrûnen gân,  
daz si gemaches phlæge und trunke guoten wîn.  
dô sprach diu ellende "ich wil niht küniginne sîn.

147, 4 *irs* = *ir es* referring to Hagen. — 149, 1 *der sch. U. zuo* = *zuo der sch. U.* — 1041, 4 *Ludewic* king of Normandy: father of *Hartmuot*. *Hartmuot* wants to marry *Kudrun* but has been unsuccessful in his wooing, since she is the wife of *Herwic*, king of Seeland, although the formal wedding has not yet taken place. To break *Kudrun's* resistance, *Hartmuot* invades her country with an army and takes her as a prisoner to his land, hoping eventually to gain her consent. — 1042, 2 *Ortrûn* *Hartmuot's* sister.

1043. *Ir wizzet wol, her Hartmuot, swie iuwer wille stât,  
daz man mich bevestent einem küenege hât  
mit vil stæten eiden ze einem êlîchen wîbe.  
ez ensî daz er sterbe, ich gelige nimmer bî eines recken lîbe."*

1044. *Dô sprach der vürste Hartmuot "ir sent iuch âne  
nôt.*

*uns enscheidet niemen, ez entuo danne der tôt.  
ir sult mit guoten siten sîn bî mîner vrouwen.  
diu senftet iuch iuwer swære. des wil ich ze vlîze wol getrouwen."*

1045. *Hartmuot wænen wolte, daz sich ir stæter site  
dâ mite senften solte, daz ir sîn swester mite  
al gelîche teilte swaz si möhte bringen.  
jâ gedâhten si in beide, daz in möhte noch an ir gelingen.*

1046. *Si begunde enphâhen swer ir dienst bôt.  
Ortrûn saz ze ir nâhen. ir varwe rôsenrôt  
wart in kurzen zîten von trinken und von spîse.  
des wart ir vil bereite. dô enwas diu arme niht sô wîse.*

1047. *Sô si der küenece ie gruozte unde irz schône bôt,  
wie lützel daz ir buozte! si gedâhte an ir nôt,  
die si und ir gesinde dulte in vremeden landen.  
mit rede harte swinde si jach an Hartmuoten ir anden.*

1048. *Daz tete si alsô lange, daz sîn den küenece verdrôz.  
er sprach "vrou Kûdrûn, ich ware wol genôz  
des vürsten Herwîges, den ir vür michel êre  
nemet iu ze vriunde. jâ strâfet ir mich dicke al ze sêre.*

---

1043, 2 *einem küenege* referring to *Herwig*. — 4 *ez ensî* . . . "unless he dies". Cf. §57. *ich gelige nimmer*: *gelige* instead of simple *lige* emphasizes the adverb *nimmer*. — 1044, 1 *sent* = *senct*. — 2 *ez entuo* . . . "unless . . ." Cf. §57. — 3 *bî mîner vrouwen* Hartmuot's mother. — 1045, 2 *ir* . . . *mite* = *mit ir*. — 4 *si beide* Hartmuot and Ortrun. *in* dative reflexive. — 1046, 1 *Si* Kundrun. *swer* "if a person". — 1047, 3 *dulte* see *dulden*. — 1048, 1 *sîn* referring to Kudrun's behavior. — 3 *vür michel êre* "setting (casting) aside great honor" (which she would receive if she married Hartmuot).

1049. *Woltet ir daz lâzen, daz wære uns beiden guot.  
mir ist leit unmâzen, swer iu iht leides tuot,  
dâ mit er iu beswæret daz herze und ouch die sinne.  
swie vînt ir mir wæret, ich wolt iuch gerne lân wesen künni-  
ginne”.*

1050. *Von dannen gie dô Hartmuot, dô er die sînen man  
vlêgte, daz si solten des landes huote hân  
und ander sîner êren. er gedâhte im under stunden  
“man hazzet mich sô sêre, daz ich an dem schaden iht werde  
ervunden.”*

1051. *Gêrlint diu übele dienen ir dô hiez  
die si an vrouwen sedele harte selten liez.  
die man von allem rehte bî vürsten kinden  
alle zît sollte suochen, die muoste man dô bî den swachen vinden.*

1052. *Diu alte wîlpinne sprach ir vîntlîchen zuo  
“ich wil daz mir den dienst diu Hilden tohter tuo.  
nû si sich durch ir übele dunket alsô stæte,  
nû muoz si mir dienen, daz si mir sus nimmer getæte.”*

1053. *Dô sprach diu maget edele “swaz ich dienen mac  
mit willen und mit henden naht unde tac,  
daz sol ich vlîziclîchen tuon in aller stunde,  
sît mir min ungelîcke bî mînen vriunden niht ze wesen gunde.”*

1054. *Dô sprach diu übele Gêrlint “dû solt mîn gewant  
tragen allertügelîche hin nider ûf den sant,  
unde solt daz waschen mir unde mîme gesinde,  
und solt daz behüeten, daz man dich dehein wîle müezic vinde.”*

1055. *Dô sprach diu maget edele “vil rîches küneges wîp,  
sô schaffet daz man lêre mich daz ich den lîp*

1049, 2 *swer* “if a person”. — 1050, 3 *im* reflexive. — 4 Hartmuot leaves his residence to take part in a campaign. Meanwhile Kudrun is left in the care of his mother. — 1051, 1 *Gêrlint* Hartmuot’s mother. — 1052, 1 *ir* . . . *zuo* = *zuo ir*. — 2 *Hilde* Kudrun’s mother, Hagen’s daughter.

*dar zuo bringen künne, daz ich iu wasche kleider.  
ich sol niht haben wünne. ich wolte daz ir mir noch tætet leider.*

1056. *Nû heizet mich ez lêren, sît ich waschen sol.  
ich weiz mich niht sô hêre, ich kunde ez gerne wol,  
sît ich dâ mite dienen sol mîne spîse.  
ich versage ez niemen.” Kûdrûn diu arme was vil wîse.*

1057. *Dô hiez si eine weschen tragen daz gewant,  
diu si dâ lêren solte, mit ir ûf den sant.  
alrêrst begunde si dienen mit sorgen angestlîchen.  
daz understuont dô niemen. Gêrlint quelte dô Kûdrûn die  
rîchen.*

1065. *Si erbeite harte kûme, daz ez âbenden began.  
dâ von diu edele Kûdrûn einen trôst gewan.  
zuo ir gie vrou Hildeburc in eine kemenâten.  
klagen si dô beide von ir dienste herzelîche tâten.*

1066. *Hildeburc diu hêre weinende sprach  
“jâ riuwet mich vil sêre dîn grôzer ungemach.  
ich hân die tievelinne erbeten daz du niht eine  
waschest ûf dem grieze. ich trage mit dir gemeine.”*

1067. *Dô sprach diu ellende “des lône dir Krist,  
daz dû alsô trûrec mînes leides bist.  
wilt dû mit mir waschen, daz gît uns vreude guote  
und kürzet uns die wîle. uns ist ouch deste baz ze muote.”*

1068. *Dô ir daz was erloubet, daz si daz gewant,  
diu vreuden was beroubet, mit ir ûf den sant  
ze waschen tragen müese in ir grôzen leide.  
swaz anders iemen tate, noch muosten mêre waschen dise beide.*

---

1065, 3 *Hildeburc* Kudrun's friend, also a prisoner. — 4 *klagen* (infinitive) *tâten* = *klageten*. — 1067, 3 *gît* see *geben*. — 4 *kürzet uns die wîle* “makes the time pass more quickly”.

1069. *Sô ir ingesinde die muoze mohte hân,*  
*si weinten harte swinde, sô sis sâhen stân*  
*waschen an dem grieze. daz klagetens alle sêre,*  
*und heten si doch arbeit, daz ir in der werlte hete niemen mêre.*

1070. *Daz werte alsô lange, daz ist al wâr,*  
*daz si waschen muosen wol sehstehalp jâr,*  
*bereiten wîziu kleider den Hartmuotes helden.*  
*ez wart nie vrouwen leider. man vant si jâmerlîchen vor den*  
*selden.*

#### 4. *Wie si Hilden boten sanden.*

1561. *Sich huop mit vreuden widere Hegelinge her.*  
*die si mit in hêten gevüeret über mer,*  
*der muoste dâ beliben tôter unde wunder*  
*driu tâsent unde mêre. si klageten ir vriunt heimelîche besunder.*

1562. *Ir schif giengen ebene, ir winde wâren guot.*  
*die den roup dâ brâhten, die wâren hôch gemuot.*  
*swie si daz gevuogeten, ir boten si vîr sanden,*  
*die disiu mære brâhten heim ze Hegelingen landen.*

1563. *Si gâhten swaz si mohten, daz wil ich iu sagen.*  
*si kômen heim ze lande in neizwie manegen tagen.*  
*ez gehôrte vrou Hilde nie sô liebiu mære,*  
*dô si ir daz sageten, daz der künic Ludewic erslagen wære.*

---

1069, 1 *ingesinde* Kudrun's friends and servants who were taken prisoner at the same time as she. — 2 *sis* = *si si*. — 3 *klagetens* = *klageten si*. — 1561, 1 *Hegelinge*. Kudrun's mother had organized an army for the rescue of her daughter. The rescuers were successful and are now returning home from their campaign. The followers of Kudrun's mother are called *Hegelinge*. — 1562, 3 *gevuogeten* see *gefüegen*. — 1563, 2 *neizwie* = *ich enweiz wie*.



1564. *Si sprach "wie lebet mîn tohter und ir magedîn?"*  
*"dâ bringet iu her Herwîc die triutinne sîn.*  
*ez darf niht baz gelingen helden alsô guoten.*  
*si bringent Ortrânen gefangen unde ir bruoder Hartmuoten."*

1565. *"Daz sint mir liebiu mære" sprach daz edele wîp.*  
*"ez was von in bekumbert mîn herze und ouch mîn lîp.*  
*ich solz in itewizzen, gesehent si mîn ougen.*  
*nichel ungemüete leit ich offentlichen unde tougen.*

1566. *Ir boten, ich sol iu lônene daz ir mir habet geseit,*  
*dâ von mir ist entwîchen mîn ungevüegez leit.*  
*ich gibe iu golt daz mîne und tuon daz billîchen."*  
*si sprâchen "vrouwe hêre, jâ muget ir uns sanfte gerîchen.*

1567. *Daz wir dâ hân geroubet, des bringen wir sô vil.*  
*wir tuonz niht durch versmâhen, swer daz iuwer niht enwîl.*  
*jâ sint unser kocken von liehtem golde swære.*  
*wir haben âf unser verte lâzen vil guote kamerære."*

1568. *Vrou Hilde hiez bereiten, sô siz hete vernomen,*  
*gên ir vil lieben gesten, die ir dâ solten komen,*  
*trinken unde spîse, stüele zuo den benken,*  
*dâ si dâ sitzen solten. jâ kunde siz nâch êren wol bedenken.*

1569. *Die ze Matelâne unmüezic man dô vant.*  
*dâ nidene âf dem plâne und ouch âf dem sant*  
*schuof man zimberliute. die îlten des vil sêre,*  
*wie dâ nâch êren sæze Herwîc unde Kûdrîn diu hêre.*

1570. *Ich kan iu niht bescheiden, ob si âf dem mer*  
*heten iht der leide. daz Ortwinnes her*

---

1567, 2 *durch versmâhen* "because we scorn it". *swer* . . . "if any one (of us) . . ." — 4 *lâzen v. g. k.* This refers to the rich enemies who were killed and robbed. — 1568, 3 *st. zuo den b.* "chairs and benches". — 4 *dâ* . . . *dâ* "where". — 1569, 1 *Matelân* Hilde's residence. — 1570, 2 *Ortwin* Kudrun's brother.



*was in sehs wochen hin ze Matelâne.*  
*si brâhten dar die vrouwen unde manege maget wol getâne.*

1571. *Dô si nû komen wâren (daz saget man uns viir wâr),*  
*dô hete ir herverten geweret wol ein jâr.*  
*ez was in einem meien, dô si ir gîsel brâhten.*  
*nû vuoren si mit schalle, swie si maneger arbeit gedâhten.*

1572. *Dô man nû ir kocken vor Matelâne sach,*  
*von trumben und pusûnen hôrte man manegen krach,*  
*vloiten unde blâsen, ûf sumber sêre bôzen.*  
*Waten schif des alten wâren nû in eine habe gestôzen.*

1573. *Dô kômen ouch die degene ûzer Ortlant.*  
*dô reit in enegene nider ûf den sant*  
*vrou Hilde und ir gesinde ûz der burc ze Matelâne.*  
*dô was ouch komen Kûdrûn. dô sach man vrouwen wol getâne.*

1574. *Si wâren von den rossen gestanden ûf den sant,*  
*vrou Hilde und ir gesinde. dô vuorte an sîner hant*  
*die schænen Kûdrûnen Îrolt der mære.*  
*swie si Hilde erkante, si weste niht wer ir deheiniu wære.*

1575. *Si sach mit ir gesinde wol hundert vrouwen gân.*  
*“nu erweiz ich” sprach vrou Hilde, “wen ich sol enphân*  
*viir mîne lieben tohter. diu ist mir gar unkûnde.*  
*willekomen sin mîn vriunde, die getreten sint abe der ûnde.”*

1576. *“Daz ist iurwer tohter” sprach Îrolt der degen.*  
*dô gienc si ir dar nâher. wer möhte in widerwegen*

---

1571, 3 *in einem meien* “one day in May”. — 1572, 2–3 *hôrte man has* three different objects: 1) *manegen krach von trumben und pusûnen*, 2) *vloiten unde blâsen*, 3) *ûf sumber sêre bôzen*. — 4 *Wate* An old champion and lifelong friend and adviser of Kudrun’s family, an uncle of Kudrun’s father Hetel. As Hetel’s vassal he rules the Marches of *Stürmen*. — 1573, 1 *Ortlant* Ortwin’s realm. — 1574, 3 *Îrolt* Wate’s nephew; Hetel’s cousin and vassal who rules *Nordlant*. — 1576, 2–3 *widerwegen mit guote dise vreude* “to pay for this joy with coin of equal weight”.

*mît guote dise vreude die si dô gewunnen ?  
dô si einander kusten, dô was in ir leides zerunnen.*

1577. *Vrou Hilde enphienc Îrolden und alle sîne man.  
Wate sich vil tiefe nîgen began.  
“willekomen helt von Stürmen! dû hâst gedienet schône.  
wer möhte dich versolden, man engebe dir lant und eine krône ?”*

1578. *Dô sprach er zuo der vrouwen “swaz ich iu gedienen  
mac,  
des bin ich iu vil willic unz an den lesten tac.”  
dô kuste si in vor liebe. alsô tet si ouch Ortwinen.  
dô was ouch komen Herwic mit den stolzen werden recken sînen.*

1579. *Der vuorte an sîner hende Ortrîn daz kint.  
Kâdrîn bat ir muoter güetlîchen sint  
“nû küsset, liebin vrouwe, dise maget hêre.  
in mînem ellende bot si mir manegen dienst unde êre.*

1580. *“Ich wil hie niemen küssen, ern sî mir danne bekant.  
wer sint der vrouwen mâge oder wie ist si genant,  
die dû mich heizest küssen sô rehte vriuntlîche ?”  
si sprach “ez ist Ortrîn din junge maget von Ormanierîche.”*

1581. *“Ich sol ir niht küssen. zwîu ratet dû mir daz ?  
daz ich si hieze tæten, daz zæme mir vil baz.  
jâ habent mir ir mâge getân vil der leide.  
swaz ich hân her geweinet, daz was ir kunden bestiu ougen-  
weide.”*

1582. *“Vrouwe, dir riet selten disiu schœne meit,”  
sô sprach aber Kâdrîn, “dehein herzen leit.*

---

1577, 4 *man engebe* Cf. §57. *krône* The symbol of royal rank. — 1578, 3 *vor liebe* “for joy”. — 1579, 4 Read *e’lle’nde* with two accents. — 1580, 1 *ern* (*er ne*) *sî* Cf. §57. — 4 *Ormanierîche* = *rîche* (kingdom) of *Ormanie* (Normandy). — 1581, 4 *ir kunden* “to her people”.

gedenke, liebiu muoter,      waz ich des hiete schulde,  
swen slüegen mîne mäge.      lâz die armen haben dîne hulde.”

1583. Si wolte es ir niht volgen.      weinende allez an  
Kûdrûn ir muoter      vlêgen dô began.  
si sprach “ich wil dich lenger      niht sehen alsô rîezen.  
hât si dir iht gedienet,      des muoz si in diseme lande geniezen.”

1584. Dô kuste diu schæne Hilde      daz Ludewîges kint.  
si gruozte ouch mêr der vrouwen      durch Kûdrûnen sint.  
dô kom ouch vrou Hildeburc,      diu dicke in vremeden landen  
mit ir hete gewaschen.      die vuorte her Fruote an sînen handen.

1585. Dô sprach aber Kûdrûn      “vil liebiu muoter mîn,  
nû grüezet Hildeburgen.      möhte iht bezzers sîn  
dan vriuntlîchiu triuwe?      golt oder edel gesteine,  
swaz des ein rîche hæte,      daz solte man Hildeburgen geben eine.”

1586. Dô sprach diu küniginne      “ez ist mir wol geseit,  
wie si mit dir getragen hât      liep unde leit.  
ich gesitze nimmer      vrælîch under krône,  
daz si dir dâ gedienet,      unze ich irs mit rehten trîwen gelône.”

1587. Dô si die maget kuste      (die andern tete si sam),  
vrou Hilde sprach ze Fruoten      “daz ist mir âne scham,  
daz ich dir gienc engegene      und dînen wîtganden.  
willekomen sît ir degene      alle her ze Hegelingen landen.”

1582, 3 hiete see hân. — 4 slüegen see slaken. — 1583, 1 an This preposition and the expression *ir muoter* (in the next line) belong together. The prepositional phrase *an ir muoter* modifies both *weinende* and *vlêgen*: *weinende an ir muoter* “weeping with her face toward her mother”, *an ir muoter vlêgen* “to cry (for mercy) to her mother”. — 3 si Hilde. — 1584, 1 daz Ludewîges kint Ortrun. — 2 durch Kûdrûnen “because Kudrun wished it”. — 4 Fruote An uncle of Hetel’s who rules in Denmark as Hetel’s vassal. *handen* Cf. §153 a. — 1586, 3 ich gesitze nimmer . . . : *gesitze* has here not the meaning “I sit down” (as in N 824, 1 and 1252, 1), but merely that of simple *sitze*, since the prefix *ge-* only emphasizes the negation. — 1587, 2 daz ist mir âne scham, daz ich gienc . . . “I need not be ashamed of myself for coming . . .”

1594. *Dô ruoweten die mïeden unz an den viinfen tac.*  
*swie wol man doch ir aller mit handelunge phlac,*  
*dar under wart Hartmuot mit sorgen doch berâten,*  
*unz daz die schânen meide vroun Hilten umbe einen vride bâten.*

1595. *Ir tochter unde Ortrân giengen dâ si saz.*  
*si sprach "vil liebiu muoter, gedenket an daz,*  
*daz niemen sol mit übele deheines hazzes lônên.*  
*ir sult iuwer tugende an Hartmuoten dem künige schônên."*

1596. *Si sprach "vil liebiu tochter, des solt dû mich niht*  
*biten.*  
*ich hân von sînen schulden grôzen schaden erliten.*  
*im sol mîn kârkære sînes übermuotes büezen."*  
*wol mit sehziç meiden vielen ir die vrouwen dô zen vüezen.*

1597. *Dô sprach Ortrân "vrouwe, lât in genesen.*  
*daz er iu gerne diene, des wil ich biirge wesen.*  
*ir sult genædîlichen mînen bruoder halten.*  
*eç kumt iu ze allen êren, sol er noch sîner krône wallen."*

1598. *Si weinten al gemeine durch daz er gevangen saz*  
*in vil starken banden. ir ougen wurden naz*  
*umbe Hartmuoten den künec von Ormandînen.*  
*die vil grôzen boien lâgen an im unde an den sînen.*

1599. *Dô sprach diu küniginne "ir sult daz weinen lân.*  
*ich wil si ungebunden ze hove lâzen gân.*  
*si müezen mir erstâten, daz si uns iht entrinnen,*  
*und müezen swercn eide, daz si âne mîn gebot iht rîten hinne."*

1596, 3 *übermuotes* referring to Hartmuot's wooing. Kudrun's parents, Hetel and Hilde, had refused Hartmuot because his father Ludwig was a vassal of the king of Ireland. Only an independent king could be Kudrun's equal. In contrast to Kudrun's more liberal ideas, the old queen, even now, after bloody wars (which caused also the death of King Hetel) and misery of all kinds, still places considerations of rank before everything else. — 1597, 4 *sol er . . .* "should he . . ." — 1598, 3 *Ormandîne* "Normandy". — 1599, 3 *iht* "not". — 4 *sweren = swern. iht* "not".

1600. Die vil edele gîsel      man âz den banden liez.  
*Kûdrûn die helde      tougen baden hiez*  
*unde schône kleiden      und hin ze hove bringen.*  
*si wâren guote degene.      des muoste in deste baz gelingen.*

1601. Dô man Hartmuoten      sach bî den recken stân,  
*man vant wællîcher      nie deheinen man.*  
*in allen sînen sorgen      stuont er in der gebære,*  
*als er mit einem pensel      wol entworfen wære.*

1602. Dô sâhen in die vrouwen      güellîchen an.  
*dâ von er heimliche      bezzer sît gewan.*  
*mit vollen wart versüenet      der haz den si dâ truogen,*  
*daz si des gar vergâzen,      daz ir recken ê einander sluogen.*

1603. Herwîc dô gedâhte,      wie er Hegelingen lant  
*mit êren môhte rûmen.      wâpen und gewant*  
*hiez er zen rossen bringen.      man luot sîne soume.*  
*daz gevriesch vrou Hilde.      si gewerte in der reise harte koume.*

1604. Si sprach "mîn her Herwîc,      ir sult hie bestân.  
*mir ist sô vil der liebe      von iuwer schult getân,*  
*daz ichz immer diene.      jâ sult ir nindert rîten.*  
*ê sich die geste scheiden,      ich wil mit mînen vriunden hôch-*  
*zîten."*

1605. Dô sprach der vûrste Herwîc      "vrouwe, ez ist wol er-  
kant,  
*die ir mâge sendent      in ander kûnege lant,*  
*daz ieslîcher      die sînen gerne sæhe.*  
*si erbeitent des vil kûme,      wann unser widerwart hin heim*  
geschæhe."

---

1603, 2 *rûmen* Herwig's own country is *Seelant*. — 4 *harte koume* "with great difficulty". *koume* for regular MHG *kûme* shows Austro-Bavarian diphthongization. Cf. §137 b.

1606. *Dô sprach aber Hilde* "ir sult mir gunnen hie  
 der êren und der vreude, sô wart mir sanfter nie.  
 vil edel küninc Herwîc, nû gebet mir daz ze lône,  
 daz mîn liebin tochter bî mir armen vrouwen trage die krône."

1607. *Er volgte des ungerne.* si bat und ouch gebôt.  
 dâ mite die ellenden kômen sît ûz nôt.  
 dô er verjehen hête, daz erz gerne tæte,  
 dô wart vrou Hilde mit hôhen vreuden stæte.

1608. *Den helden hiez si sidelen* ie baz unde baz,  
 dâ sît vil manic recke mit êren bî ir saz  
 ze einer hôczîte, die erkante man sît verre.  
 die schænen Kûdrûne hiez dô krænen Herwîc der herre.

1609. *Die mit in komen wâren,* der schiet ê niemen dan,  
 unz man der hôczîte vor Matelâne began.  
 dar zuo kleidete Hilde wol sehzc oder mêre  
 minniclîcher meide. vil liep was ir ir lop und ouch ir êre.

1617. *Dô diu vil minniclîche* bî den gesten saz,  
 nâch Ortwîne si sande. dar umbe tete si daz,  
 daz si im râten wolte nâch Ortrûnen minne.  
 diu Ludewîges tochter saz bî Kûdrûnen ouch dar inne.

1618. *Der helt von Ortrîche* ze ir kemenâten gie.  
 Ortwînen vltziclîche manegiu maget enphie.  
 sîn swester stuont von sedele und nam in bî der hende.  
 Kûtrûn diu cdele gie mit im des hoves an ein ende.

1619. *Si sprach* "vil lieber bruoder. nû solt du volgen mir.  
 mit vil rehten triuwen sô wil ich râten dir.

---

1606, 4 Hilde wishes that the coronation of her daughter take place at her own court. — 1607, 4 From now on Hilde was permanently happy. — 1608, 1 *sidelen* = *sideln*. — 1609, 4 *was ir* (dat. referring to Hilde) *ir* (gen. plur. referring to the people) *lop und ouch ir* (gen. sing. Hilde) *êre*. — 1617, 1 *diu vil minniclîche* Kudrun. — 1618, 1 *Ortrîche* = *Orlant*; cf. 1573, 1.



wilt dū bī dīnem lebene vreuden iht gewinnen,  
swie dū daz gevüegest, sô solt dū Hartmuotes swester minnen."

1620. Dô sprach der ritter künene "diuhte dich daz guot?  
wir sîn sô niht gevriunde, ich unde Hartmuot.  
wir sluogen Ludewigen. swann si dar an gedächte,  
und si bī mir læge, ich wæne ez ir under wīlen siuften brachte."

1621. "Dâ solt du daz verdienen, daz si des niht entuo.  
an mīnen rechten triuwen sô râte ich dir dar zuo,  
die ich zer werlte ze iemen bī mīner zīt gewan.  
dū hâst mit ir wünne, sol si dir werden undertân."

1622. Dô sprach der ritter edele "ist si dir sô bekant,  
daz ir sulen dienen liute unde lant?  
weist dus in den zūhten, ich wil si gerne minnen."  
dô sprach aber Kûdrûn "jane kanst dū bī ir leiden tac ge-  
winnen."

1623. Er sagete ez sīnen vriunden. vrou Hilde ez wider-  
sprach,  
unz er sîn Herwīgen dem recken ouch verjach.  
der riet ez im mit triuwen. ouch sagete er ez Fruoten.  
er sprach "du solt si minnen. dū hâst von ir manegen recken  
goten.

1624. Man sol den haz versīenen den wir hân getragen.  
mit wie getānen dingen, daz wil ich dir sagen."  
alsô redete ûz Tenelant der snelle degen Fruote.  
"dâ sul wir Hildeburge gemahelen dem künene Hartmuoten."

1625. Herwīc der biderbe mit triuwen sprach dar zuo  
"ich wil ez gerne rāten, daz ez diu maget tuo.

1622, 1-2 ist si dir sô bekant, daz . . . "Do you know her as a person worthy of ruling land and people?" — 2 sulen = suln. — 3 dus = du si. weist dus in den zūhten "If you know her to be the right kind." — 4 jane = jâ ne. — 1623, 2 sîn "about it, of it". — 1624, 2 mit wie getānen dingen "in which way". — 3 Tenelant "Denmark". sul wir Cf. §163.



von Hartmuotes landen ist si vrouwe rîche.  
 under sînen handen hât er wol tûsent bûrge gewalticlîche."

1626. Kûdrûn diu schæne heimlîchen sprach  
 zer edelen Hildeburgen. si vnocte ir gemach.  
 si sprach "trûtgespil mîn, wilt dû daz ich dir lône  
 des dû mir hâst gedienet, sô wirt dir ze Ormanîe ein rîchiu  
 krône."

1627. Dô sprach diu schæne Hildeburc "unsanfte mir daz  
 tuot,  
 sol ich einen minnen der herze noch den muot  
 nie an mich gewante ze deheinen stunden.  
 sol ich mit im alten, wir werden etewenne in zorne vunden."

1628. Dô sprach diu vrouwe Kûdrûn "daz solt dû understân.  
 ich wil nâch Hartmuoten balde heizen gân,  
 obe im daz gevalle, daz ich in ûz banden  
 læse mit den recken unde in sende heim ze sînen landen.

1629. Sô saget er mir genâde. zehant râte ich daz,  
 daz erz immer gerne diene deste baz.  
 sô wil ich in vrâgen, obe er welle minnen  
 dâ mite er mîne mâge unde mich ze vriunden müge gewinnen."

1630. Man brâhte Hartmuoten den künec von Normandîn.  
 mit im gie dô Fruote dâ stolziu meidîn  
 vor der Hilden tochter ze kemenâten sâzen,  
 diu sît vil maneges leides von der vrouwen râte vergâzen.

1631. Dô sun der Ludewîges durch den palas gie,  
 diu beste noch diu bæste deheiniu daz verlie:  
 si tâtenz im ze liebe und stuonden von dem sedele.  
 er was bevollen künene. dar zuo was er rîche unde edele.

1626, 2 vnocte see füegen. — 1629, 3-4 minnen dâ mite er . . . "to marry the one through whom he . . ." — 1630, 2 dâ "there where." — 1631, 1 sun der Ludewîges "the son of Ludwig". — 2 . . . daz verlie "There was not one who did not do this", namely, what is said in the second half of line 3.

1632. *Dô bat in sitzen Kûdrîn diu minniclîche mit.*  
*ez hete niht ir grüezen deheiniu im verseit.*  
*dô sprach diu Hilden tohter “zuo der gespilen mînen*  
*solt dû sitzen, Hartmuot, diu ê mit mir wuosch den helden*  
*dînen.”*

1633. *“Ir welt mir itewizzen, kûniginne hêr.*  
*swaz man iu tete ze leide, daz wâren mîniu sêr.*  
*jâ hiez michz alle zîte heln diu vrouwe mîne,*  
*daz ich es niht ervunde noch mîn vater und al die helde sîne.”*

1634. *Dô sprach diu juncvrouwe “ich kan des niht verlân,*  
*ich muoz mit iu, Hartmuot, sundersprâchen gân.*  
*daz sol niemen hâeren wan ich unde ir eine.”*  
*dô gedâhte im Hartmuot “nu gebiete ir got, daz siz mit triuwen*  
*meine.”*

1635. *Dar zuo hiez si niemen niwan Fruoten gân.*  
*dô sprach zuo dem kûnege diu maget wol getân*  
*“welt ir des volgen, Hartmuot, alsô ich iuch lêre,*  
*tuot ir daz williclîche, sô scheidet ir von aller hande sêre.”*

1636. *“Ich weiz iuch in den tugenden” sprach dô Hartmuot,*  
*“daz ir mir niht râtet wan êre unde guot.*  
*ich weiz in mînem herzen niht alsôlher sinne,*  
*ine tuo swaz ir mir râtet harte gerne, edele kûniginne.”*

1637. *Si sprach “sô râte ich gerne: diu vriste dînen lîp,*  
*ich und mîne mâge wir geben dir ein wîp.*  
*dâ mite wirt behalten dîn lant und ouch dîn êre,*  
*und ouch der vîntschefte wirt dâ von gewahenet nimmer mêre”.*

1638. *“Sô lât mich wizzen, vrouwe, wen welt ir mir geben?*  
*ê daz ich alsô minnete, ê lieze ich mîn leben,*

---

1632, 2 *verseit* see *versagen*. — 1633, 3 *michz heln* “to conceal it from me”. *diu vrouwe mîne* his mother Gerlind.

*und daz ez mîne mâge      dâ heime diuhte smæhe,  
sô wolte ich wærlîche,      daz man mich ê veigen gesæhe."*

1639. "Dâ wil ich Ortrûnen,      die schænen swester dîn,  
hie ze wîbe geben      dem lieben bruoder mîn.  
sô nim dû Hildeburgen,      die edelen küniginne.  
dû kanst in der werlte      tiurer maget nindert dir gewinnen."

1640. "Muget ir daz gevüegen,      als ir mir habet geseit,  
daz iuwer bruoder Ortwin      Ortrûn die schænen meit  
nimet wærlîchen      hie ze einem wîbe,  
sô nim ich Hildeburgen,      daz ez immer âne haz belîbe."

1641. Si sprach "ich hânz gevüeget,      daz erz gelobet hât,  
ob dich des genüeget,      daz er dir wider lât  
dîn lant und ouch dîn erbe      und ouch die bürge drinne.  
sô mac dich des wol lûsten,      daz Hildeburc dâ werde küniginne."

1642. Er sprach "daz lobe ich gerne",      und lobete ez an ir  
hant.

"swie schiere sô mîn swester      bî dem von Ortlant  
stât under krône,      sô wil ich niht verzîhen  
die schænen Hildeburge,      si enmüeze mit mir geben unde lîhen."

1646. Dô sprach Wate der alte      "wer möhte ez sîenen ê,  
unz Ortrûn unde Hartmuot      vür vroun Hilden gê  
und biete sich ze vüezen      der edelen küniginne.  
unde lobet siz eine,      sô müge wirs alle wol ze hulden bringen."

1647. Dô sprach diu edele Kûdrûn      "daz wil ich iu sagen:  
si ist in niht ungenædic.      nû sehet ir si doch tragen

---

1638, 3 *und daz* "and if". — 1642, 2 *swie schiere sô* "as soon as". — 4 *enmüeze* Pleonastic negation and subjunctive after negative *verzîhen*. Cf. N 286, 2-3. *geben unde lîhen* are characteristic functions of a king and Hildeburg shall share in them with Hartmuot. — 1646, 4 *müge wirs* (*wir es*) Cf. §163.

*diu kleider diu mîn muoter      gap mir und mînen vrouwen.  
ich wil ez gerne sîenen.      des mûgen die ellenden mir getrouwen."*

1648. *Dô hiez man Ortrûnen      zuo dem ringe gân  
unde ouch Hildeburge,      die maget wol getân.  
Ortwîn unde Hartmuot      die nâmen si ze wîbe.  
"nû wil ich" sprach vrou Hilde      "daz ez immer mit vride be-  
lîbe."*

1649. *Ortwîn von dem ringe      ze im daz meidîn  
zuchte minniclîchen.      ein guldîn vingerlîn  
gap er der kûniginne      in ir vil wîzen hende.  
dâ mite was verdrungen      von ir daz michel ellende.*

1650. *Dô umbeslôz ouch Hartmuot      die meit ûz Írlant.  
ir ietwederz dem andern      daz golt stiez an die hant.  
si hete niht untugende,      diu sich im möhte leiden.  
Hartmuot unde Hildeburc      die wâren sît mit triuwen unge-  
scheiden.*

---

1649, 2 zuchte see zucken. — 1650, 2 ir ietwederz Cf. §134 b.

### III. DER VON KUERENBERG

*Leit machet sorge,      lieb vil winne.  
eines hübschen ritters      gewan ich künde.  
daz mir den benomen hânt      die merker und ir nît,  
des mohte mir mîn herze      nie frô werden sît.*

---

5 *“Ich stuont mir nehtint spâte      an einer zinne.  
dô hôt ich einen ritter      vil wol singen  
in Kürenberges wîse      al ûz der menigîn.  
er muoz mir diu lant rûmen,      alder ich genichte mich sîn.”*

*Nu bring mir her vil balde      mîn ros, mîn îsengewant,  
10 wan ich muoz einer frowwen      rûmen diu lant.  
diu wil mich des betwingen,      daz ich ir holt sî.  
si muoz der mîner minne      iemer darbende sîn.*

---

*Ez hât mir an dem herzen      vil dicke wê getân,  
daz mich des geluste,      des ich niht mohte hân,  
15 noch niemer mag gewinnen.      daz ist schedelîch.  
jone mein ich golt noch silber.      ez ist den liuten gelîch.*

---

*Ich zôch mir einen valken      mêre danne ein jâr.  
dô ich in gezamete,      als ich in wolte hân,  
und ich in sîn gevidere      mit golde wol bewant,  
20 er huob sich ûf vil hôhe      und floug in anderiu lant.*

---

11 This sentence is meant ironically. — 12 Cf. §168. — 14 *geluste* pret. of *gelüsten*. — 16 *jone* = *jâ ne*. *ez ist den liuten gelîch* “it is a human being”. — 17 Cf. Nib. 12 and 13. The falcon as symbol of a young man and especially of the beloved one occurs often. — 18 *gezamete* pret. of *zemen* ww.

*Sit sach ich den valken*      *schône fliegen.*  
*er fuorte an sinem fuoze*      *sîdîne riemen*  
*und was im sîn gevidere*      *alrôt guldîn.*  
*got sende si zesamene,*      *die gelieb wellen gerne sîn.*

---

22 *sîdîne riemen* "leather jesses encased in silk". Straps (jesses) were regularly used by the falconers to tie the falcon. In our case the lady recognizes her falcon by the special kind of jesses she had used and also by his feathers.

## IV. DIETMAR VON EIST

### I.

“Waz ist für daz trüren guot,      daz wîb nâch liebem manne hât?  
gerne daz mîn herze erkande,      wan ez sô betwungen stât.”  
alsô redte ein frouwe genæme.

“vil wol ics an ein ende kâme,  
5 *enwær diu huote.*  
selten sîn vergezzen wirt      in mînem muote.”

“Genuoge jehent, daz grôziu stæte      sî der besten frouwen trôst”.  
“des enmag ich niht gelouben,      sît mîn herze ist unerlôst.”  
alsô zwei geliebe sprâchen,  
10 *dô si von ein ander muosten gâhen.*

“owê minne,  
der dîn âne möhte sîn,      daz wæren sinne.”

Sô al diu werlt ruowe hât,      der muoz ich eine wesen frî.  
daz kumt von einer frouwen schæne,      der ich gerne wære bî.  
15 *an der al min fröide belîben*  
*muoz vor allen werden wîben*  
*ûf der erden.*  
*wes lie si got mir armen man      ze kâle werden?*

---

3 *redte* = *redete*. *genæme* read *gnæme*. — 4 *ichs* = *ich es*: *es* referring to the question in line 1: “I would easily find an answer to it.” — 5 *enwær* “if there were not”. *huote* In MHG poetry lovers always complain of being constantly watched. — 6 *sîn vergezzen wirt* Subject of this sentence is *ez* (omitted); *sîn* is the object of *vergezzen*, since this verb takes the genitive. Such impersonal passive constructions instead of active sentences (*man vergizzet sîn*) are quite frequent in MHG. — 7 Spoken by the man. — 8 Spoken by the woman. — 10 *dô si von* read *dôs vo'n*. — 11–12 Spoken by both. — 12 *der* “if a person.” *daz wæren sinne* “That would be sensible.” — 13 *der* gen. referring to *ruowe*. — 14 *der . . . bî* “with whom”. — 15 *belîben* read *blîben*.



## 2.

*Ez stuont ein frouwe alleine*  
 20 *und warte uber heide*  
*und warte ir liebes.*  
*dô gesach si valken fliegen.*  
*“sô wol dir, valke, daz du bist!*  
*du fliugest swar dir lieb ist.*  
 25 *du erkiusest dir in dem walde*  
*einen boum der dir gevalle.*  
*alsô hân ouch ich getân.*  
*ich erkôs mir selbe einen man.*  
*den erwelten mîniu ougen.*  
 30 *daz nîdent schône frowwen.*  
*owê wan lânt si mir mîn lieb?*  
*joh engerte ich ir dekeines trâtes niet.*

## 3. TAGELIED

*“Slâfest du, friedel ziere?*  
*wan wecket uns leider schiere*  
 35 *ein vogellîn sô wolgetân.*  
*daz ist der linden an daz zwî gegân.”*  
*Ich was vil sanfte entslâfen.*  
*nu rîefestu, kint, ‘wâfen!’*  
*lieb âne leit mag niht gesîn.*  
 40 *swaz du gebiutest, daz leiste ich, friundîn mîn.”*  
  
*Diu frouwe begunde weinen.*  
*“du rîtest hinnen und lâst mich einen.*  
*wenne wilt du wider her zuo mir?*  
*owê du füerest mîne fröide sant dir.”*

20 *uber* older form for *über*. — 30 *schône* = *schæne*. — No. 3 This is a Tagelied. — 44 *fröide* read *fröid*.

## 4.

- 45 *Wart âne wandel ie kein wîb,  
daz ist si gar, der ich den lîb  
hân gegeben für eigen.  
Si roubet mich der sinne mîn.  
si ist schæner alsam der sunnen schîn.*
- 50 *jâ bin ich niht ein heiden:  
Si sol genâde an mir begân  
und sol gedencen daz ich ir was ie vil undertân.*

- Waz bedorste des ein wîb  
daz ich sô gar dur si den lîb*
- 55 *verlôs und al mîn sinne?  
Si ist sô vaste niht behuot.  
(iedoch sô dunket si mich guot)  
des bringe ich si wol inne.  
Ez wære an mîner frouwen ein slag.*
- 60 *si sol gedenken ob si târschen ie bî mir gelag.*

- “Waz wîzet mir der beste man?  
ich habe im leides niht getân.  
er fröit si âne schulde.  
Daz er in hât von mir geseit,*
- 65 *daz ist mir hiute und iemer leit.  
er vliuset mîne hulde.  
Mir wirret niht sîn bæser kîb.  
waz half daz er târschen bi mir lag?      jâ enwart ich nie sîn  
wîb.”*

---

47 für eigen “so that it belongs to her, is hers”. — 52 vil undertân “loyally attached to”. — 56 behuot see behüeten. Cf. line 5. — 57 guot Cf. Anonymous Songs lines 52–53. — 58 si acc. plur. referring to the inefficient chaperons (cf. line 56). — 59 It would be very embarrassing for her if I told her chaperons about it. — 63 si the same people as in 58. — 64 in referring to si in 58 and 63.

## V. HEINRICH VON VELDEKE

In terms of present-day political geography Heinrich von Veldeke would be called a Belgian (province of Limburg). His mother-tongue was Flemish (Low Franconian). However, his lyric poems are preserved to us only in Alemannic manuscripts. Our selection is taken from MS. C.

### I.

*Tristan muose sunder sînen danc  
stete sîn der küniginne,  
Wan in der po'sûn dar zuo twanc  
mêre dan diu kraft der minne.  
5 Des sol mir diu guote danc  
wizzen daz ich solken tranc  
nie genam und (ich) si doch minne  
baz danne er, und mac daz sîn.  
wol getâne,  
10 valsches âne,  
lâ mich wesen dîn  
unde bis du mîn!*

### 2.

*Sît diu sunne ir liechten schîn  
gegen der kelte hât geneiget  
15 Und diu kleinen vogellîn*

---

1 Read *Trista'n muos su'nder*. — 3 Read *Wan i'n der po'isun*. in . . . *dar zuo twanc* "forced him to do it". — 6 *solken* = *solhen*. — 7 Verses 4 and 7 have so-called "identical rhyme" (*rührender Reim*). However, only the visual appearance and phonetic form of such rhyme-words is identical, since the meaning must be different, except for pronouns, auxiliary verbs, and particles. Thus, *minne* in line 4 is a noun, but *minne* in line 7 a verb.

*ires sanges sint gesweiget,*  
*Trûric ist daz herze mîn.*  
*ich wæne ez wil nu winter sîn,*  
*der uns sîne kraft erzeiget*  
 20 *an dien bluomen, die man siht*  
*in liehter varwe*  
*erblichen garwe.*  
*dâ von mir beschiht*  
*leit und anders niht.*

---

16 *ires sanges* = *ir sanges*. — 20 *dien* is characteristically Alemannic instead of *den*, dat. plur. of *der diu daz*. — 23 *dâ von* read *da' von*. Translate: "On account of that I have received . . ."

## VI. REINMAR DER ALTE

### I.

*Wie ist im ze muote, wundert mich,  
dem herzeclîche lieb geschiht?  
Er sælig man, dâ fröit er sich,  
als ich wol wæne, ich enweiz es niht.*

5 *Doch sæhe ich gerne wie er tæte:  
ob er iht pflæge wunneclîcher stæte.  
diu sol im wesen von rehte bî.  
got gebe daz ich erkenne noch      wie solhem ze lebenne sî.*

### 2.

*Sô ez iender nâhet gegen dem tage,  
10 sô getar ich niht gefrâgen "ist ez tac?"  
Daz kumet mir von sô grôzer klage  
daz es mir niht ze helpe komen mac.  
Doch gedenke ich wol daz ich sîn anders pflac  
hie vor, dô mir diu sorge      niht sô ze herzen lac.  
15 iemer an dem morgen      trôste mich der vogel sanc.  
mir enkome ir helpe an der zît,  
mir ist beide sumer unde winter alze lanc.*

---

1 *Wie ist im* read *wiest i'm*. Translate: "How does he feel . . ." — 3 *fröit* = *freut*. — 4 Read *wæn ichn weiz*. — 7 *diu sol im wesen . . . bî* "he should have this". — 8 *solhem* "for such a man" referring to *im* in line 1. *ze lebenne* read *zle'benne*. — 13 *ich sîn* (= *es*) *anders pflac* "I had a different way of life". — 16 *mir enkome* "if her help does not come in time". This line has dactylic rhythm  $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$ : read *mi'rn kom ir he'lf an der zît*. This verse does not rhyme with any other verse of the stanza and is, therefore, called a *Waise* "orphan". It does rhyme, however, with the corresponding verse of the second and third stanza (25 and 34). Such rhymes belonging to different strophes of the same poem are called *Körner* (sing. *Korn*). — 17 *mir ist beide* read *mirst be'ide*.

*Ime ist vil wol, der mac gesagen  
daz er sîn lieb in senenden sorgen lie.*

- 20 *Nu muoz aber ich ein anderz klagē:  
ich gesach ein wîb nâch mir getrûren nie.  
Swie lange ich was, sô tet si doch daz ie.  
diu nôt mir underwîlent     rehte an mîn herze gie.  
wære ich ander iemen     also un-mære manigen tac,  
25 dem het ich gelâzen den strît.  
dis ist ein dinc des ich mich niht getræsten mac.*

- Diu liebe hât ir varnde guot  
alsô geteilet daz ich den schaden hân.  
Der nam ich mêre in mînen muot  
30 danne ich von rehte solte haben getân.  
Doch wæne ich, sist von mir vil unverlân,  
swie lützel ich der triuwen     mih anderthalp verstân.  
si was ie mit fröiden.     ich muoz in sorgen sîn.  
alsô vergie mich diu zît.  
35 ez taget mir leider selten nâch dem willen mîn.*

20 ein anderz "something else". — 21 nâch mir "on account of my departure". — 22 swie lange ich was . . . "However long I stayed away, she would always behave the same way". Literally *daz* refers to *nâch mir getrûren nie* in the preceding line. Thus: "She did always just that", namely, "not grieve", i.e., "she was always unconcerned". — 23 *rehte an mîn herze* "to my very heart". Read *reht a'n mîn*. — 24 *ander iemen* dative. Note the accent *un-mære*. — 25 Dactylic rhythm.  $\overset{\cdot}{\text{u}}\text{---}\overset{\cdot}{\text{e}}\text{---}\overset{\cdot}{\text{t}}$ . *gelâzen* read *glâzen*. — 27 *varnde guot* cf. §131, line 11. In this strophe *liebe* is used in two meanings, a) personified *Love*, something like a goddess of love who metes out her treasures, b) the passion of "love" apportioned by Love as her gift. The first meaning occurs in *Diu liebe* of line 27, the second meaning in *Der* of line 29 and in *sist* (*si ist*) of line 31. — 28 MHG *alsô* has its main stress either on the first or the second syllable according to the phrase accent. Thus in line 28 read *also'*, but *a'ls'o* in line 34. — 31-32 *anderthalp* referring to the beloved lady. "I have not given up a bit of it, however little sincerity I notice on the other side". — 33 *si* the beloved lady. Accent: *si' . . . i'e . . . i'ch mu'oz*. — 34 Dactylic rhythm  $\overset{\cdot}{\text{u}}\text{---}\overset{\cdot}{\text{e}}\text{---}\overset{\cdot}{\text{t}}$ . — 35 *nâch dem willen mîn* "the way I like it". This line refers back to the first line of the poem.

## 3.

*Ein rede der liute tuot mir wê:  
 dâ enkan ich niht gedultelîchen zuo gebâren.  
 Nu tuont siz alle deste mê:  
 si frâgent mich ze vil von mîner frowen jâren  
 40 Und sprechent welher tage si sî,  
 dur daz ich ir sô lange bin gewesen mit triuwen bî.  
 si sprechent daz es möhte mich verdriezen.  
 nu lâ, daz aller beste wîb, ir zühtelôser vrâge mich geniezen!*

## 4.

In this poem Reinmar laments the death of his patron, Leopold VI (or V), duke of Austria (the one who had captured Richard the Lion-Hearted, king of England) who died December 31, 1194 and was succeeded by his elder son Frederick who patronized Walther von der Vogelweide (Cf. Walther v. d. V. line 239). The words are put in the mouth of the widow bewailing her dead husband. Therefore, this poem is called "Witwenklage".

The sad and grave tone of the song is enhanced by the use of the words *verlorn*, *tôt*, and *got* as "waisen" in line 10 of the three stanzas. The wise *verlorn* of the first stanza (line 53) appears as a regular rhyme-word (*verlorn: erkorn*) in the abgesang of the second stanza (line 61). The wise *tôt* of the second stanza (line 64) is repeated as a regular rhyme-word (*tôt: nôt*) in the first stollen of the third stanza (line 67). The third wise *got* (line 75) stands all alone: God is unique. Note the assonance in the three *waisen*.

*Si jehent, der sumer der sî hie,  
 45 diu wunne diu sî komen.  
 und daz ich mich wol gehabe als ê.  
 Nu râtent unde sprechent wie!  
 der tôt hât mir benomen  
 daz ich niemer überwinde mê.  
 50 Waz bedarf ich wunneclîcher zît,*

---

37 Connect *dâ* with *zuo*. — 41 *ich ir . . . bin gewesen bî* "I have been courting her." — 43 *daz aller beste wîb* is vocative.



*sît aller fröiden herre, Liupolt, in der erde lît,  
den ich nie tag getrüren sach!  
ez hât diu werlt an im verlorn  
daz ir an manne nie sô jâmerlîcher schade geschach.*

- 55 *Mir armen wîbe was ze wol,  
dô ich gedâhte an in,  
wie mîn teil an sînem lîbe lac.  
Daz ich des nu niht haben sol,  
des gât mit sorgen hin,  
60 swaz ich iemer mê geleben mac.  
Mîner wunnen spiegel der ist verlorn,  
den ich mir hete ze sumerlîcher ougenweide erkorn,  
des muoz ich leider ænic sîn.  
dô man mir seite er wære tôt,  
65 zehant viel mir der muot von dem herzen uf die sêle mîn.*

- Die fröide mir verboten hât  
mîns lieben herren tôt  
alsô deich ir mêr enberen sol.  
Sît des nu niht mac werden rât  
70 in ringe mit der nôt,  
daz mîn klagedez herze ist jâmers vol.  
Diu in iemer weinet, daz bin ich,  
wan er vil sælic man jâ trôste er wol ze lebenne mich.  
der ist nu hin. waz töhte ich hie?  
75 wis ime gnædic, herre got,  
wan tugenthafter gast kam in dîn ingesinde nie!*

51 *lît* see *ligen*. — 52 *nie tag* Cf. *niemer tag* Walther 88. — 65 *von dem herzen* read *vom he'rzen*. *herze* is the place of good cheer, happiness, and worldly pleasure: *sêle* is the reminder of death and of the life to come. Cf. Hartmann von Aue 48. — 68 *alsô* read *a'lso*. *deich* = *daz ich*. — 69–70 *des* refers to *in (ich en) ringe* (subjunctive) in the following line. "Since it is unavoidable that I wrestle with . . ." Cf. N 286, 2–3. — 71 *d. m. kl. herze* cf. N 63, 4. — 73 He who is now dead used to make me enjoy life. — 75 *wis ime gnædic!* "have mercy on him!" — 76 *tugenthafter* comparative!

## 5.

This is a so-called *Botenlied*: The entire poem consists of a message which a lady sends to her lover.

- Lieber bote, nu wirp alsô,  
sich in schiere und sage im daz:  
Vert er wol und ist er frô,  
80 ih lebe iemer deste baz.  
Sage im durh den willen mîn  
daz er iemer solhes iht getuo,      dâ von wir gescheiden sîn.*
- Frâge er wie ich mich gehabe,  
gich daz ich mit fröiden lebe.  
85 Swâ du mügest, dâ leite in abe,  
daz er mich der rede begeben.  
Ich bin im von herzen holt  
unde sæhe in gerner denne den tac.      daz ab du verswîgen solt.*
- Ê daz du iemer im verjehest  
90 daz ich im holdez herze trage,  
Sô sich daz du alrêrst besehest  
und vernim waz ich dir sage:  
Mein er wol mit triuwe mich,  
swaz im danne muge ze fröiden komen,      daz mîn êre sî, daz  
sprich.*
- 95 Spreche er daz er welle her,  
daz ichs iemer lône dir,  
Sô bit in daz er verber*

---

78 *in* and *im*: her sweetheart. — 80 Read *leb ie'mer*. — 83 *frâge* (see also *meine* 93, *spreche* 95) The present subjunctive introduces here a conditional sentence: "Should he ask . . ." — 84 *gich* see *jehen*. — 89 Read *ê' dazd ie'mer*. — 91 Read *so' sich da'zd alre'rst*. The meaning of this line is: "Be very careful!" — 93 *mein* = *meine*. — 94 *daz mîn êre sî* "that does me credit".

rede di er jungest sprach zuo mir,  
Ê daz ich in an gesehe.

100 wes wil er dâ mit beswæren mich      daz nie doch an mir ge-  
schehe.

Des er gert, daz ist der tôt  
und verderbet manigen lîb.  
Bleich und eteswenne rôt,  
alsô verwet ez diu wîb.

105 Minne heizent ez die man,  
unde möhte baz unminne sîn.      wê im ders alrêrst began!

Daz ich alsô vil dâ von  
hân geredet, daz ist mir leit,  
Wande ich was vil ungewon

110 sô getâner arebeit,  
Als ich tougenlîchen trage.  
dune solt im nimmer niht verjehen      alles des ich dir gesage.

## 6.

Ich welte ûf guoter liute sage  
und ouch durh mînes herzen rât

115 Ein wîb von der ich dicke trage  
vil manige nôt diu nâhe gât.

Die swære ich zallen zîten klage  
wand ez mir kumberlîche stât.

ich tet ir schîn

120 den dienest mîn.

wie möhte ein græzer wunder sîn,  
daz siu mich des engelten lât?

Ze rechter mâze sol ein man  
beidiu daz herze und al den sîn

125 Ze stæte wenden, ob er kan.

98 jungest "at our last meeting". — 100 dâ mit . . . daz "with something that . . ." — 106 Accent: unmi'nne. — 117 zallen = ze allen.

daz wirt im lîhte ein guot gewin.  
 Swem dâ von ie kein leit bekan,  
 der weiz wol wie ich gebunden bin.  
 ich geloube ime wol,  
 130 als er mir sol.  
 von schulden ich den kumber dol.  
 ich brâhte selbe mich dar in.

## 7.

This is a so-called *Wechsel*, a "Gesprächslid" consisting of two strophes each of which is spoken by one of the two lovers. In addition to the regular rhyme, both strophes have so-called *grammatical rhyme*: *gemiten gemeit*, *erliten erleit*, *lîp lîbe*, *wîp wîbe*, *geschach geschæhe*, *gesach sæhe*; *geschehen geschach*, *gesehen gesach*, *muot muote*, *guot guote*, *kan kunde*, *gan gunde*. Grammatical rhyme consists of an alternation of different inflectional forms or derivatives of one and the same word-stem.

"Er hât ze lange mich gemiten  
 den ich mit triuwen nie gemeit.  
 135 Von sîner schulde ich hân erliten  
 daz ich nie græzer nôt erleit.  
 Sô lebt mîn lîp  
 nâch sînem lîbe.  
 ich bin ein wîp,  
 140 daz im von wîbe  
 nie liebes mê geschach,  
 swie mir von im geschæhe.  
 mîn ouge in gerner nie gesach  
 danne ich in hiute sæhe."  
 145 Mir ist vil liebe nu geschehen  
 daz mir sô liebe nie geschach.

---

127 *kan*: *be-kan* "rührender Reim". Cf. Heinrich von Veldeke verse 7. *bekan* = *bekam*. — 145-146 *liebe*: *liebe* Here we have "rührenden Reim" in the middle of the two verses. In its first occurrence the word is a noun, in its second one an adverb. Cf. Heinrich von Veldeke verse 7.

*Sô gerne hân ich si gesehen  
daz ich si gerner nie gesach.*

*Ich scheide ir muot*

150 *von swachem muote.*

*si ist sô guot,*

*ich wil mit guote*

*ir lônên, ob ich kan,*

*als ich doch gerne kunde.*

155 *vil mêre vröiden ich ir gan*

*danne ich mir selben gunde.*

147-148 *gerne*: *gerner* Grammatical rhyme in the middle of the verses.

— 149-150 "I have no evil intentions with regard to her."

## VII. HARTMANN VON AUE

### I.

*Der mit gelücke trûric ist,  
der wirt mit ungelücke selten gemellîche frô.  
Für trûren hân ich einen list.  
swaz mir geschiht ze leide, sô gedenke ich iemer sô:  
5 "Nû lâ varn, ez solte dir geschehen!  
vil schiere kumt  
daz dir gefrumt."  
sus sol ein man des besten sich versehen.*

*Swer anders giht, der misseseit,  
10 wan daz man stætiu wîb mit stætekeit erwerben muoz.  
Des hât mir mîn unstætekeit  
ein stætez wîb verlorn. diu bôt mir alsô schænen gruoz  
Daz si mir erougte lieben wân.  
dô sî erkôs  
15 mich stætelôs,  
dô muose ouch diu genâde ein ende hân.*

*Ez ist mir iemer mêre guot  
daz diu unstæte mîn an fröiden mich versûmet hât.*

---

1 mit gelücke "in times of good fortune". — 2 mit ungelücke "in times of bad fortune". — 5 "Don't let it trouble you; it had to happen to you." Be reconciled with an irreparable loss and hope for better things in the future. — 9 giht see jehen. anders belongs together with wan in the next line: "otherwise than." Any person who speaks otherwise than to the effect that faithful women are to be won with faithfulness is wrong. — 11-12 hât mir . . . verlorn "made me lose". — 13 "That they aroused in me sweet expectations (fond hopes)." — 17 iemer mêre "for the future, for all times to come". — 18 The poet realizes that fickleness is the cause of much unhappiness and this realization determines him to form his new resolution.

*Nu kêre ich mich an stæten muot*  
 20 *und muoz mit heile mînes ungelückes werden rât.*  
*Ich bin einer stæten undertân.*  
*an der wirt schîn*  
*diu stæte mîn*  
*und daz ich an stæte meister nie gewan.*

## 2.

25 *Dem kriuze zimt wol reiner muot*  
*und kiusche site.*  
*sô mag man sælde und allez guot*  
*erwerben mite.*  
*Ouch ist ez niht ein kleiner haft*  
 30 *dem tumben man,*  
*der sîme lîbe meisterschaft*  
*niht halten kan.*  
*Ez wil niht daz man sî*  
*der werke drunder frî.*  
 35 *waz tougt ez ûf der wât,*  
*ders an dem herzen niene hât.*

*Nu zinsent, ritter, iurwer leben*  
*und ouch den muot*

---

19 *stæter muot* = *stætekeit*. — 20 "I shall get out of my distress by saving my soul." *heil* cf. *der sêle heil* in line 48. At this point the poet turns away from *Frauenminne* (love of woman) to *Gottesminne* (love of God). — 21 *einer stæten* His new love is God and God is always faithful, in contrast to line 16. — 24 *daz ich* read *deich*. — 25 *kriuze* This song is a so-called *Kreuzlied* (crusader's song). People who had pledged themselves to go on a crusade "took up the cross", i.e., they fastened a cross on their garment. The religious aspect of this act is emphasized in this song. *reiner muot* "purity of heart". — 26 *kiusche site* "modest demeanor". — 27 *allez guot* "the greatest good" (summum bonum). — 28 *mite* "with it". — 29 *niht ein kleiner haft* "a shackle not to be despised". — 34 *drunder* "under it", i.e., under the cross. — 36 *ders* = *der es*. *der* "if a person". — 38 *den muot* "your thoughts and desires".



*durh in, der iu dâ hât gegeben*

40 *lîp unde guot.*

*Swes schilt ie was zer werlte bereit*

*ûf hôhen prîs,*

*ob er den gote nû verseit,*

*der ist niht wîs.*

45 *Wan swem daz ist beschert*

*daz er dâ wol gevert,*

*daz gillet beidiu teil,*

*der werlte lob, der sêle heil.*

*Diu werlt mich lachet triegende an*

50 *und winket mir.*

*nu hân ich als ein tumber man*

*gevolget ir.*

*Der hacken hân ich manigen tac*

*geloufen nâch.*

55 *dâ niemen stæte vinden mac,*

*dar was mir gâch.*

*Nu hilf mir, herre Krist,*

*der mîn dâ vârende ist,*

*daz ich mich dem entsage*

60 *mit dinem zeichen, daz ich hie trage.*

3.

*Swelh frowe sendet ir lieben man*

*mit rehtem muote ûf dise vart,*

*diu koufet halben lôn dar an,*

---

39 *dâ* "here, on earth". — 41 *swes schilt* "each one whose shield". — 42 *ûf hôhen prîs* "for high stakes". — 43 *den* referring to *schilt*. — 45 "To each who is destined to . . ." — 52 Note the construction *hân gevolget* and not *bin gevolget*. — 53 *Der* gen. sing. fem. referring to *Diu werlt*. *manigen* read *mangen*. — 58 *der* referring to *dem* in the next line (the Evil One). When translating put verses 58 and 59 in inverted order. — 60 *daz ich* read *deich*. — 61 *swelh frowe* "each woman who". *sendet* read *sendt*.

*ob si sich heime alsô bewart,*  
 65 *daz si verdienet kiuschiu wort.*  
*si bete für si beidiu hie,      sô vert er für si beidiu dort.*

## 4.

*Ich var mit iuwern hulden, herren unde mâge.*  
*liut unde lant, die müezen sælig sîn!*  
*Es ist unnôt daz ieman mîner verte vrâge:*  
 70 *ich sage wol für wâr die reise mîn.*  
*Mich vieng diu Minne und lie mich varn ûf mîne sicherheit.*  
*nu hât si mir enboten bî ir liebe daz ich var.*  
*ez ist unwendig. ich muoz endelîchen dar.*  
*wie kûme ich bræche mîne triuwe und mînen eit!*  
 75 *Sich rüemet maniger waz er dur die Minne tæte.*  
*wâ sint diu werk? die rede hære ich wol.*

---

65 *kiuschiu wort* "the reputation of being modest". — 66 *dort* in the Holy Land — 67 *var*: The poet is ready for a crusade or pilgrimage to the Holy Land and takes leave of his friends and relatives. *mit iuwern hulden* does not mean "with your permission or consent" as this passage has often been interpreted, but "with your good wishes". From *Gregorius* 575 (*daz wir der vrouwen hulde sweren*) we learn that *hulde* expresses not only "condescension of a superior to inferiors", but also "loyal attachment of inferiors to their superior". *herren* "my lords", not Hartmann's superiors, for he would probably have only one superior (cf. line 81), but his peers (knights like himself), many of them his kinsmen (*mâge*). — 68 *müezen* cf. §82 d. *die müezen sælig sîn!* "God bless them!" — 69 *mîner verte vrâge* "inquire the reason for my journey". — 70 "I shall willingly and truthfully explain what made me join this campaign." — 71 *diu Minne* Love is here personified as a queen ruling her subjects. The poet, while using terms pertaining to profane love, really speaks of sacred love (love of God). — 72 *bî ir liebe* "with an appeal to my love for her". *ir* is here objective genitive. *liebe* is the allegiance binding the poet to his sovereign (Queen *Minne*). — 74 *triuwe* and *eit* refer to *sicherheit* in line 71. He is bound both as a gentleman (by *triuwe*) and a Christian (by his oath which is a religious act). *wie kûme . . .* "How utterly unthinkable would it be for me to break . . .!" — 75 *maniger* read *manger*.

*Doch sæhe ich gern daz sî ir eteslîchen bæte  
daz er ir diente als ich ir dienen sol.*

*Ez ist geminnet, der sich dur die Minne ellenden muoz!*  
80 *nu seht wie si mich ûz mîner zungen zûhet iiber mer!*  
*und lebte mîn herre, Salatîn und al sîn her,*  
*dien bræhten mich von Vranken niemer einen fuoz!*

*Ir minnesinger, iu muoz ofte misselingen.  
daz iu den schaden tuot daz ist der wân.*

85 *ich wil mich rüemen, ich mag wol von minne singen,  
sît mich diu minne hât und ich si hân.*  
*daz ich dâ wil, seht, daz wil also gerne haben mich.*  
*sô müezet ab ir verliesen underwîlent wânes vil.*

77 *gern* = *gerne*. *sî* = *diu Minne*. — 79 *Ez ist geminnet, der . . .* "That's what I call real love, if a person . . ." — 80 *wie si* read *wies*. *ûz mîner zungen* "away from the people who speak my language". — 81 *lebte* read *lebt*. *und lebt mîn herre* "however, if my liege lord were still alive". *mîn herre* The question, who Hartmann's liege lord was, is not yet solved. So much is clear: Hartmann lived somewhere south of the Rhine, and in terms of modern political geography he would be a Swiss. P. Alban Stöckli, *Hartmann von Aue* (Basel 1933) believes that Berthold IV, duke of Zähringen and rector of Burgundy (who died Sept. 8, 1186), was Hartmann's *herre*, for the salvation of whose soul Hartmann goes on this crusade or pilgrimage. *Salatîn* refers to *Saladin* (1138-93), sultan of Egypt, who succeeded in turning the tide of the Crusades which previously had been favorable to the Christians. His seizure of Jerusalem after 88 years of Christian rule fired Europe to the Third Crusade. All commentators on this poem have tried to draw from this passage some definite chronological data for Hartmann's life. Those who read the verse the same way as we do saw in it support for the contention that Saladin was still alive when Hartmann composed this song and that, as a consequence, Hartmann must have taken part in the Third Crusade under Emperor Frederick Barbarossa in 1189/90. Cf. Eduard Sievers in *Hermæa* 31 (1932), p. 58 sq. — 82 *dien* = *die ne*. *Vranken* "Franconia". *niemer cinen fuoz* "not an inch". — 83 *minnesinger* "singers of profane love". — 85 *ich mag wol*: *ich* and *wol* are emphasized. *wol* "justly". — 86-87 The poet speaks here of sacred love. — 88 *müezet* = *müezet*. *sô . . . ab ir* "you, on the other hand, in contrast (to me)".

*ir ringent umbe lieb daz iurwer niht erwil.*  
 90 *wan müget ir armen minnen solhe minne als ich?*

## 5.

This poem is known as Hartmann's "Witwenklage": The words are put in the mouth of the widow (supposedly the wife of Hartmann's sovereign) lamenting the death of her husband. This funeral song shows considerable resemblance to Reinmar's "Witwenklage" (see Reinmar der Alte No. 4) which apparently served as a model. Since Reinmar's elegy was composed in the spring of 1195, our song must date from a somewhat later time. This has long been regarded as the most positive chronological datum available for Hartmann's life. However, Hartmann's authorship of this poem was justly questioned by Eduard Sievers in *Hermæa* 31 (1932), p. 55. Cf. also A. Leitzmann in *Beiträge* 59 (1935), p. 166 sq.

*Diz wæren wünnecliche tage,*  
*der sî mit fröiden möhte leben.*  
*Nu hât mir got ein swære klage*  
*ze dirre schænen zît geben,*  
 95 *Der mir leider niemer wirdet buoz.*  
*ich hân verloren einen man*  
*daz ich für wâr wol sprechen muoz*  
*daz wîb nie liebern friunt gewan.*  
*dô ich sîn pflac, dô fröit er mich.*  
 100 *nu pflage sîn got! der pfliget sîn baz danne ich.*

*Mîn schade wær nieman recht erkant,*  
*ern diuhte in grôzer klage wert.*

89 *lieb* "a sweetheart". *ringent* Alemannic form for *ringet*. — 90 *wan* = *wanne*. *müget* read *mügt*. — 91 *Diz* referring to summertime, the season of pleasure. — 92 *der* "if a person". — 93 *swære klage* "great grief". — 95 *Der* gen. referring to *klage*. *buoz* = *buoze*. "Of which, unfortunately, I shall never be free". — 99 *dô ich sîn pflac* "as long as I could take care of him". *fröit* = *fröite* pret. of *fröwen*. — 100 *pflage* read *pflæg*. *pfliget* read *pfligt*. — 101 *schade* read *schad*. *nieman* dative. *recht* = *rechte*. — 102 *ern* (= *er ne*) referring to *schade*. *in* referring to *nieman*. *diuhte* pret. subjunctive of *dunken*. For the structure of the sentence cf. §57. "My loss would not be fully realized by anybody if it did not appear to him as worthy of great lamentation", i.e., "Anyone who fully realizes my loss will regard it as worthy of great lamentation."

*An dem ich triuwe und êre ie vant  
und swaz ein wîb an manne gert,  
105 Der ist alze gâhes mir benomen.  
des mac mir unz an mînen tût  
wol niemer niht ze staten komen,  
in müeze lîden sende nôt.  
der nû iht liebers sî beschehen  
110 diu lâze ouch daz an ir gebâerden sehen.*

*Got hât vil wol zuo zir getân,  
sît lieb sô leidez ende gît,  
Diu sich ir beider hât erlân:  
der gêt mit fröiden hin diu zît.  
115 Ich hân klage sô manigen liechten tag,  
und ir gemüete stêt alsô  
daz sî mir niht gelouben mag.  
ich bin von liebe worden frô.  
sol ich der jâre werden alt,  
120 daz giltet sich mit leide tûsentvalt.*

---

103 *An dem* "he with whom". — 104 Note the accusative *swaz*. The verb *gern* usually takes the genitive. — 107 *niht* "nothing". — 108 *in müeze* = *ich enmüeze*. "Unless I suffer (without my suffering) pain caused by longing (for my dead husband)." Any future pleasure she may have will remind her of the happiness enjoyed together with her husband when he was still alive. — 109 *der* dat. sing. fem. referring to *diu* in the next line: "she to whom". *iht liebers* "something more agreeable". — 111 *zuo zir* = *zuo ze ir*, *ir* referring to *Diu* in line 113. — 112 *gît* see *geben*. — 113 *ir beider*: both *liep* and *leit*. — 114 *der* dative. — 115 *klage* read *klag*. *manigen* read *mangen*. — 116 *und* "but, while". *ir* referring to *Diu* in line 113. — 119 *der jâre werden alt* "to live to be old". — 120 *daz* referring to line 118.

## VIII. WALTHER VON DER VOGELWEIDE

### a) Minnelieder

#### I.

This is a parody of a song of Hartmann's on a similar subject. Cf. Hartmann von Aue lines 9-24 of our selection. In contrast to Hartmann's ascetic inclinations, Walther's attitude toward love is professedly worldly.

*Stæte ist ein angest und ein nôt.*  
*in weiz niht ob si êre sî.*  
*si gît michel ungemach.*  
*Sît daz diu liebe mir gebôt*  
5 *daz ich stæte wære bî,*  
*waz mir leides sît geschach!*  
*Lât mich ledig, liebe mîn frô Stæte.*  
*wan ob ich sis iemer bæte,*  
*sô ist si stæter vil danne ich.*  
10 *ich muoz von mîner stæte sîn verlorn,*  
*diu liebe en underwinde ir sich.*

*Wer sol dem des wizzen danc,*  
*dem von stæte lieb geschihht,*

---

1 Read *Stat i'st*. — 2 *ob si êre* read *obs êre*. — 3 *gît* see *geben*. — 5 Read *bî stæte*. — 7 *frô* = *frou*. *liebe mîn frô St.* "my dear lady . . ." In addressing a person, the possessive pronoun is often placed after the adjective. — 8 *sis* = *si es*; *si* referring to *Stæte*. In the preceding line the poet addresses *Stæte* directly. Here, however, he speaks of her in the third person, explaining to his audience why he wants her to release him. — 9 *stæter* Of course, it is the nature of *Stæte* to be always *stæte*, and, therefore, it is natural that she should be more faithful than the poet who is a mere human being. — 10-11 "I shall perish through my faithfulness, unless love intervenes (in my behalf)". — 11 *en underwinde* Cf. §57. *ir* gen. referring to *Stæte*.

*nimt der stæte gerne war?*  
 15 *Dem an stæte nie gelanc,*  
*ob man den in stæte siht,*  
*seht, des stæte ist lûter gar.*  
*Alsô habe ich stæte her gerungen.*  
*noch en ist mir leider niht gelungen.*  
 20 *daz wende, sælig frowe mîn,*  
*daz ich der valschen ungetriuwen spot*  
*von mîner stæte iht müeze sîn.*

*Het ich niht mîner fröiden teil*  
*an dich, herze lieb, geleit,*  
 25 *sô möht es wol werden rât.*  
*Sît nû mîn fröide und al mîn heil*  
*und dar zuo mîn werdekeit*  
*niht wan an dir einer stât,*  
*Solt ich dan mîn herze von dir scheiden,*  
 30 *sô müest ich mir selben leiden.*  
*daz wære mir niht guot getân.*  
*doch solt dû gedenken, sælig wîb,*  
*daz ich nu lange kumber hân.*

---

14 *der* nom. sing. masc. of the demonstrative pronoun referring to *dem* in line 12. *stæte* gen. sing. *nimt der* . . . "if he . . ." — 18 Simple *stæte* instead of *nâch stæte*. Cf. Walther 426. — 19 This verse has one foot more than the metrical pattern requires. By omitting the word *leider* the difficulty can be obviated. Another possibility is to read *nochn i'st* with anacrusis. However, the other three strophes of this song have no anacrusis in the corresponding line. — 21 *die valschen ungetriuwen* People who are not sincere in their love-affairs, "the light o' love". — 22 *iht* "not". — 23 *mîner fröiden teil* "my share of happiness". — 24 *geleit* see *legen*. — 25 "Something could be done about it." — 26 *heil* Cf. Hartmann von Aue 20. — 28 *an dir stât* "is with you". — 29-30 Allusion to Matthew 6, 21: "For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also." — 32-33 Allusion to Matthew 5, 4: "Blessed are they that mourn: for they shall be comforted."



- Frowe, ich weiz wol dīnen muot:*  
 35 *daz du gerne stæte bist,*  
*daz hab ich befunden wol.*  
*Jâ hât dich vil wol behuot*  
*der vil reine wībes list*  
*der guot wīb behüeten sol.*  
 40 *Sus fröit mich dīn sælde und ouch dīn êre,*  
*und enhân niht fröide mêre.*  
*nu sprich, bin ich dar an gewert?*  
*du solt mich, frowe, des geniezen lân,*  
*daz ich sô rehte hân gegert.*

## 2.

- 45 *Sumer unde winter beide sint*  
*guotes mannes trôst, der trôstes gert.*  
*Er ist rehter fröide gar ein kint,*  
*der ir niht von wībe wirt gewert.*

---

35 *stæte* "not departing from virtue or duty". — 37 *behuot* see *behüeten*. Cf. *huote* in Dietmar 5. — 40-41 All he wants is to see her happy. He does not want to disturb her peace of mind nor to jeopardize her good repute. — 42 *dar an* referring to his entreaty; cf. 20. This line does not seem in keeping with the protestation of the two previous lines. But this is quite natural. The poet depicts himself as being torn between two desires, namely, his impetuous love and a tender understanding for the difficulties confronting his beloved and hindering her in her actions. — 44 *daz* is not a relative pronoun but a conjunction (= German *daß*). The emphasis lies on *sô rehte*: "In view of the fact that I have been so correct in pressing my request you should reward me." Allusion to Matthew 7, 7: "Ask, and it shall be given you". — 47 *rehter fröide ein kint* "inexperienced in real joy". The meaning of this introduction is this: "To be sure, both summer and winter give consolation to a man who asks for it. But real happiness can only be afforded by a woman." Not the fact that it is summer or winter has anything to do with a man's happiness, but the circumstance whether he is loved by a woman or not. In medieval songs we often find (spring and) summer depicted as the season of social intercourse and entertainment, and, therefore, of flirting and happiness, while, on the other hand, winter as a time of isolation, loneliness, and painful longing. Cf. Anonymous Songs No. 8-11.

*Dâ von sol man wizzen daz,  
50 daz man elliu wîb sol êren,  
und ie doch die besten baz.*

*Sît daz nieman âne fröide toug,  
sô wolte ouch ich vil gerne fröide hân  
Von der mir mîn herze nie geloug  
55 ez en sagte mir ir güete ie sunder wân.*

*Swenne ez diu ougen sante dar,  
seht, sô brâhtens im diu mære,  
daz ez fuor in sprîngen gar.*

*In weiz niht wol wie ez dar umbe sî:  
60 sin gesach mîn ouge lange nie.  
Sint ir mânes herzen ougen bî,  
sô daz ich âne ougen sihe sie?  
Dâ ist doch ein wunder an geschehen:  
wer gab im daz sunder ougen,  
65 daz ez si zaller zît mag sehen?*

*Welt ir wizzen waz diu ougen sîn,  
dâ mit ich si sihe dur elliu lant?  
Ez sint die gedenke des herzen mîn.  
dâ mit sihe ich dur mære und ouch dur want.*

---

50 *elliu* Cf. §42. — 51 *und ie doch* "always, however". — 52 This is a reference to medieval etiquette which made cheerfulness a social duty. — 54 *Von der* double relationship; cf. §146. Read *fröide hân von der, von der mir . . .* — 55 Read *ezn . . . güet ie*. The negative verb (*ge*)*liegen* "to lie" is followed by a subordinate clause with the verb in the subjunctive and with a pleonastic negation. Cf. *N* 286, 3. "My heart never lied to me about her but always told me the truth about her excellence." — 56 Read *Swe'nn ez d'o'ugen*. The figure of the heart having eyes is taken from the religious literature of the time. *dar* "to her". — 57 *brâhtens* = *brâhten si; si* referring to *ougen*. — 58 *in sprîngen varn* "to (ride at a) gallop". — 59 *In* = *ich en. wie ez* read *wiez. dar umbe* "in this respect" referring to the following lines. — 60 *sin* = *si ne*. — 62 Read *ân o'ugen*. — 63 Read *Dâ'st do'ch . . .* Connect *Dâ* and *an*. — 64 *ougen* Cf. 71 and Reinmar 16. — 65 *zaller* = *ze aller*. — 67 *dâ mit* "with which". — 68 *gedenke* plur. of *gedanc*. Read *gede'nke's he'rzen*.

- 70 *Nû hūeten swie si dunke guot:*  
*sô sehent si doch mit vollen ougen*  
*herze wille und al der muot.*
- Wirde ich iemer ein sô sælig man,*  
*daz si mich âne ougen sehen sol?*
- 75 *Siht si mich in ir gedanken an,*  
*sô vergiltet si mir mîne wol.*  
*Mînen willen gelte mir,*  
*sende mir ir guoten willen.*  
*mînen den habe iemer ir.*

## 3.

- 80 *Ich gesprach nie wol von guoten wîben,*  
*was mir leit, ich wurde frô.*  
*Sende sorge konde ich nie vertriben*  
*minneclîcher danne alsô.*  
*Wol mich, daz ich in hôhen muot*
- 85 *mit mînem lobe gemachen kan,*  
*und mir daz sanfte tuot!*
- Ôwê wolte ein sælig wîp alleine,*  
*sô getrârte ich niemer tag,*  
*Der ich diene, und hilfet mich vil kleine*
- 90 *swaz ich si geloben mag.*

---

70 *hūeten* The subject (not expressed here; cf. §82 b) is "they". *si swie si* is acc. plur. — 71 *si* acc. sing., namely, the girl. *ougen* Cf. 64. — 76 *mîne*, namely, *gedenke*. — 77 *gelte* Cf. §82 b. — 78 *sende* Cf. §82 b. — 79 *habe* read *hab*. Cf. §82 b. *ir* reflexive dative. — 80 Note the occurrence of *wîben* or *wîb* in the first verse of each of the three stanzas, but each time in a different metrical foot. — 81 *was mir leit* "if I was dejected". *ich wurde* (subjunctive) = *ich enwurde*. "I have never praised good women without becoming cheerful." — 82 *konde* Cf. §80. — 87 "if only she were willing". His happiness depends on her decision. *ein sælig wîp* is the antecedent of the relative clause *Der ich diene* in line 89. — 88 *getrârte* instead of *trârte* in order to emphasize the adverb *niemer* which is furthermore emphasized by the addition of *tag*; cf. Reinmar 52. — 89 *und* "but, however".

*Daz ist ir lieb und tuot ir wol:  
ab si vergizzet iemer mîn,  
sô man mir danken sol.*

*Frömdiu wîb diu dankent mir vil schône.  
95 daz si iemer sælig müezen sin!  
Daz ist wider mîner frowen lône  
mir ein kleinez denkelîn.  
Si hab den willen den si habe.  
mîn wille ist guot, und klage diu werc,  
100 gêt mir an den iht abe.*

## 4.

*Mich nimt iemer wunder waz ein wîp  
an mir habe ersehen,  
Dazs ir zouber leit an minen lîp.  
waz ist ir geschehen?  
105 Jâ hât si doch ougen:  
wie kumt dazs als übel gesiht?  
ich bin aller manne schænest niht.  
daz ist âne lougen.  
Habe ir ieman iht von mir gelogen,  
110 sô beschou mich baz.  
Si ist an mîner schæne gar betrogen,  
wil si niht wan daz.*

---

95 *daz si . . . sælig . . .* Cf. Hartmann 68. — 97 *denkelîn stn (a)* is a diminutive form of *danc stm (a)*. The applause of other ladies (e.g., among the audience) is for him of very little importance compared to the reward (imaginary only) from the beloved one. — 99 *klage* Subject is *si*; cf. §82 b. It is not due to any lack of good intention if my acts are not satisfactory. — 103 *Dazs = Daz si. leit see legen.* — 106 *dazs = daz si. als = alsô.* — 107 *schænest* Superlative of *schæne*; uninflected form of the superlative with a preceding genitive. — 109 “Should anybody have lied to her . . .” — 110 *beschou = beschouwe 3rd sing.* Cf. §82 b. — 111 *Si ist* read *Si' st.* — 111-12 “If all she wants is good looks, she will be sadly disappointed in me.”

- Wie stât mir mîn houbet!*  
*daz enist niht ze wol getân.*  
 115 *si betriuget lihte ein tumber wân,*  
*ob si; niht geloubet.*
- Dâ si wont, dâ wonent wol tûsent man*  
*die vil schæner sint.*  
*Wan daz ich ein lützel fuoge kan,*  
 120 *sô ist mîn schæne ein wint.*  
*Fuoge hân ich kleine:*  
*doch ist si genæme wol,*  
*sô daz si vil guoten liuten sol*  
*iemer sîn gemeine.*
- 125 *Wil si fuoge für die schæne nemen,*  
*sô ist si wol genuot.*  
*Kan si daz, sô muoz ir wol gezemen*  
*swaz si mir getuot.*  
*Sô wil ich mich neigen*  
 130 *und tuon allez daz si wil.*  
*waz bedarf si denne zoubers vil?*  
*ich bin doch ir eigen.*
- Lât iuch sagen wie ez umbe ir zouber stât,*  
*des si wunder treit:*  
 135 *Si ist ein wîp diu schæne und êre hât,*  
*dâ bî liep und leit.*

---

114 Read *da'z nist ni'ht*. — 116 *ob . . . niht* "even if not". *si; = si ez*. Apparently in this stanza the poet gives a picture of his real self. According to his own testimony, then, he was no Adonis. — 117 This line may refer to the City of Vienna, Austria. — 120 *sô ist* read *sô'st*. *ein wint* "of no account". — 121 *Fuoge* genitive governed by *kleine*. — 124 *gemeine* It is part of the poet's *fuoge* to be ready to serve and help at any time those who might appeal to him for assistance. — 126 *sô ist* read *sô'st*. — 133 Read *wiez u'mb ir*. — 134 *wunder* with gen. "an amazing quantity of". *treit* see *tragen*. — 135 *Si ist* read *Si'st*. — 136 *dâ bî* "with them; in addition to them".

*Daz si iht anders künne,  
des sol man sich gar bewegen,  
wan daz ir vil minnedlîchez pflegen*  
140 *machtet sorge und wünne.*

## 5.

*Under der linden  
an der heide,  
dâ unser zweier bette was,  
Dâ mugt ir vinden*  
145 *schône beide  
gebrochen bluomen unde gras.  
Vor dem walde in einem tal,  
tandaradai,  
schône sanc diu nahtegal.*

150 *Ich kam gegangen  
zuo der ouwe:  
dô was mîn friedel komen ê.  
Dâ wart ich enpfangen,  
hêre frowe,*  
155 *daz ich bin sælig iemer mê.  
Kuster mich? wol tûsent stunt!  
tandaradai,  
seht wie rôt mir ist der munt!*

---

137 *Daz si* read *Dâ'zs*. — 141 *u'nde'r* with two accents and no "Senkung" (cf. §138) between them. — 144 *Dâ' mu'gt* with two accents and no "Senkung" between them. *mugt* = *muget*; cf. §33 e. — 145 *beide* Connect *beide bluomen unde gras*. — 146 *gebrochen* is used not attributively, but predicatively, in fact almost adverbially. — 148 *tandaradai* An imitation of the caroling of the nightingale. — 150 Read *i'ch ka'm gega'ngen* "I came walking." — 154 *hêre frowe* referring to the Holy Virgin, used here as an exclamation with a meaning similar to *Oh God!* Cf. German *Jesus Maria!* used for all kinds of situations. — 155 *ich bin sælig* "I am in heaven." — 156 *Kuster* = *kuste* (see *küssen*) *er*. — 157 *tandaradai* The imitation of the caroling of the nightingale serves here as a musical accompaniment to their kissing.

- Dô het er gemachet*  
 160 *alsô rîche*  
*von bluomen eine bettestat.*  
*Des wirt noch gelachet*  
*inneclîche,*  
*kunt iemen an daz selbe pfat.*  
 165 *Bî den rôsen er wol mac,*  
*tandaradai,*  
*merken wâ mirz houbet lac.*
- Daz er bî mir læge,*  
*wessez iemen*  
 170 *(nu enwelle got!), sô schamt ich mich.*  
*Wes er mit mir pflæge,*  
*niemer niemen*  
*bevinde daz, wan er und ich,*  
*Und ein kleinez vogellîn,*  
 175 *tandaradai,*  
*daz mac wol getriuwe sîn.*

## b) Political Poems

### 6.

In 1197 Emperor Henry VI, son of Frederick Barbarossa, prepared a new crusade, but died suddenly on September 28, 1197, only 32 years of age. As a result of his death, Germany lost the position of the foremost world-power, and a ruinous civil war broke out for the succession to the throne. The two main rivals were Philip, duke of Swabia, younger brother of the deceased emperor, candidate of the "Staufers" or "Waiblingers", and Otto of Poitou, candidate of the "Guelphs". Pope Innocent III (1198-1216) supported Otto. Walther von der Vogelweide composed this poem as a partisan of Philip some time before September 8, 1198, on which day the coronation of Philip as king of Germany (and designated emperor) took place.

*Ich hôrte ein wazzer diezen*  
*und sach die vische fliezen.*

---

167 *mirz* = *mir daz*. — 169 *wessez* = *wesse ez*. — 177 The poet depicts himself as having a vision.



- ich sach swaz in der werlte was:*  
 180 *velt walt loup rôr unde gras.*  
*swaz kriuchet unde fliuget*  
*und bein zer erde biuget,*  
*daz sach ich, unde sage iu daz:*  
*der keinez lebet âne haz.*  
 185 *daz wilt und daz gewürme*  
*die strîtent starke stürme.*  
*sam tuont die vogel under in.*  
*wan daz si habent einen sin:*  
*si diuhten sich ze nihte,*  
 190 *si enschüefen starc gerichte.*  
*si kiesent künige unde reht,*  
*si setzent herren unde kneht.*  
*sô wê dir, tiutschiu zunge,*  
*wie stêt dîn ordenunge!*  
 195 *daz nû diu mugge ir künig hât,*  
*und daz dîn êre alsô zergât.*  
*bekêrâ dich, bekêre!*  
*die cirkel sint ze hêre.*

---

180 Note that this verse has no anacrusis. — 182 *bein zer erde biegen* “to walk on the ground” in contrast to *fliezen* (178), *kriechen*, and *fliegen* (181). We have here the popular grouping of the animal world into four kingdoms, namely, quadrupeds, fish, reptiles, birds. — 184 *der keinez* “none of those creatures”. — 186 *die* and not *diu*, although both *wilt* and *gewürme* are neuter nouns. However, they are not regular neuters but collective nouns. — 188 “But they all agree in one thing.” — 189 *diuhten* see *dunken*. *ze nihte* “doomed”. — 190 *enschüefen* “if . . . not”; cf. §57. *starc gerichte* “a rigorous system of justice”. — 192 “They establish a distinction between master and servant.” — 193 *sô* “on the other hand”. *tiutschiu zunge* “the people who speak German”; cf. Hartmann 80. — 195 The gnat appears here as a representative of the birds, and the king of the birds is also king of the gnats. — 197 *bekêrâ* The particle *-â* is used to intensify words (nouns, imperatives, interjections, etc.) shouted in a loud tone of voice. Cf. *neinâ* in *N* 932, 1. Often the imperative is repeated afterwards in its regular form. — 198 *cirkel* (Latin *circuli*) diadems of gold (coronets) worn on the head by kings in contrast to the *weise* of line 200.

*die armen künige dringent dich.*  
 200 *Philippe setze en weisen úf*  
*und heiz si treten hinder sich.*

## 7.

This poem reflects the events of the years 1198-1201. It is especially directed against the help given Otto and his party by Pope Innocent III.

*Ich sach mit mînen ougen*  
*man unde wîb tougen,*  
*daz ich gehôrte und gesach*  
 205 *swaz iemen tet, swaz iemen sprach.*  
*ze Rôme hôrte ich liegen*  
*und zwêne künige triegen.*  
*dâ von huob sich der meiste strît*  
*der ê was oder iemer sît,*  
 210 *dô sich begunden zweien*

---

199 *die armen künige* "vassal kings" (Latin *reguli*) referring to Richard the Lion-Hearted of England and Philip Augustus of France who had been vassals of Frederick Barbarossa and Henry VI. Of course, at the time when this poem was composed, the terms *armen künige* was not justified any longer. But Walther is still thinking in terms of the past glory and is unwilling to admit its loss. Moreover, it helps his cause to remind the German people of the fact that those foreign kings who try to influence the election of a new emperor should be put in their proper place. — 200 *Phili' ppe* dative. *en* = *den*. *weise wîb* "orphan" (Latin *lapis orphanus*) the most precious gem in the imperial crown. He on whose head this stone rests is the real and true ruler. The stone received its name because it was unique in its kind, and this gem is mentioned in a verse, which is also called a "Waise". Cf. Reinmar line 16. — 201 *hinder sich* "back". — 203 Read *wîb to'ugen* with a rest between the two words. *tougen* adv. "invisibly; without anybody seeing me". — 204 *daz* "while". — 206 *ze Rôme* "in Rome". — 207 *zwêne künige*: Philip and Frederick, both Staufers. Before going on his crusade, Emperor Henry had induced his vassals to elect his small son Frederick (who later ascended the throne as Frederick II) king of Germany. But Frederick was still a child when his father died, and, therefore, nobody heeded him.

- die pfaffen unde leien.*  
*daz was ein nôt vor aller nôt:*  
*lib unde sêle lag dâ tôt.*  
*die pfaffen striten sêre.*  
 215 *doh wart der leien mêre.*  
*diu swert diu leiten si dâ nider*  
*und griffen zuo der stôle wider:*  
*si bienen die si wolten*  
*und niht den si solten.*  
 220 *dô stôrte man diu goteshûs.*  
*dô hôrte ich verre in einer klûs*  
*vil michel ungebære:*  
*dâ weinde ein klôsenære.*  
*er klagte gote sîniu leit,*  
 225 “*owê, der bâbest ist ze jung!*  
*hilf, herre, dîner kristenheit!”*

## 8.

*Diu krône ist elter danne der künig Philipptes st:*  
*dâ mugent ir alle schouwen wol ein wunder bî,*  
*wie si ime der smit sô ebne habe gemacht.*

---

211 *pfaffen* Adherents of the clerical party and supporters of Otto; the Guelphs. *leien* Adherents of the anticlerical party and supporters of Philip. — 213 Excommunication was used as a spiritual weapon to kill the soul. — 215 The anticlericals obtained numerical superiority. — 216 *leiten* see *legen*. *si* referring to *pfaffen*. — 217 *stôle* and *swert* often used as symbols of the church and the state respectively. — 218 *biene* see *bannen*. — 219 Referring to Otto. — 223 *klôsenære* This is an imaginary person of symbolic meaning: the great masses of faithful Christians who were not interested in politics but could not escape the ravages of the political struggle. — 225 Innocent III was 37 years of age when he was elected pope in 1198. — 226 *herre* “Lord.” — 227 This poem refers to Philip’s coronation in Mainz on September 8, 1198. *elter* comp. of *alt*. *Phili’ppes* nominative = Latin *Philippus*. — 228 Connect *dâ* and *bî*. — 229 *wie si ime* read *wies i’me*. *ebne* = *ebene* “made it fit so nicely”.

- 230 *Sîn keiserlîchez houbet zimt ir alsô wol,  
 daz si ze rehte nieman guoter scheiden sol:  
 ir dewederz dâ daz ander niht enswachet.  
 Si liuhtent beide ein ander an,  
 daz edel gesteine wider den jungen süezen man:  
 235 die ougenweide sehent die fürsten gerne.  
 swer nû des rîches irre gê,  
 der schouwe wem der wise ob sînem nackte stê:  
 der stein ist aller fürsten leitesterne.*

## 9.

- Dô Friderich ûz Ôsterrîch alsô gewarþ,  
 240 daz er an der sêle genas und im der lîp erstarþ,  
 dô fuort er mînen krenechen trit in die erde.  
 Dô gieng ich slîchent als ein pfâwe swar ich gie,  
 daz houbet hanht ich nider unz ûf mîniu knie:  
 nû riht ich ez ûf nâch vollem werde.  
 245 Ich bin wol ze fiure komen,*

---

230 Philip was not emperor. However, being king of Germany, he was designated to become emperor. — 231 *si*: *houbet* and *krône*. *guoter* partitive gen. plur. — 232 “In this combination neither degrades the other,” i.e., “They enhance each other.” — 234 *jungen man* Philip was 22 years old. — 235 *die* demonstrative adjective. — 236 *rîche* = “the king”. — 237 *der wise* Cf. 200. — 238 *der* demonstrative adjective. — 239 Frederick, duke of Austria (son of Leopold VI; cf. Reinmar No. 4) and Walther’s patron (employer), died on a crusade, on April 15 or 16, 1198. His brother Leopold who succeeded him as duke of Austria was not friendly toward Walther, and, therefore, our poet left Austria to start out on his endless wanderings like a strolling minstrel. With this event his poetry takes a new turn. He begins to compose political poems. — 240 *daz er* read *dêr*. — 241 The crane, stretching its long neck, was regarded as a symbol of haughtiness. *die erde* read *d’erde*. “When Frederick died, he took my haughty stalking with him under the ground.” — 242 The peculiar gait of the peacock with lowered head was regarded as a symbol of humility. — 243 *hanht* see *henken*. — 245 *ze fiure komen* “to find hospitality at the fireplace of a home”.

*mich hât daz rîche und ouch diu krône an sich genomen.  
 wol ûf, swer tanzen welle nâch der gîgen!  
 mir ist mîner swære buoz:  
 êrste wil ich ebne setzen mînen fuoz  
 250 und wider in ein hôhgemüete stîgen.*

## 10.

*Ez gieng, eins tages als unser herre wart geborn  
 von einer maget die er im ze muoter hât erkorn,  
 ze Megdeburg der künig Philippes schône.  
 Dâ gieng eins keisers bruoder und eins keisers kint  
 255 in einer wât, swie doch die namen drîge sint:  
 er truoc des rîches zepter und die krône.  
 Er trat vil lîse, im was niht gâch.  
 im sleich ein hôhgeborniu küniginne nâch,  
 rôse âne dorn, ein tûbe sunder gallen.*

---

246 *daz rîche und ouch diu krône* "the Empire and even the Crown". The king (Philip) has accepted him as a (temporary) member of his retinue. This new position lasted at least through the fall of 1201. — 249 *êrste* "now finally". *ebene* He is weary on account of his long wandering. — 251 This poem refers to Philip's stay in Madgeburg on Christmas 1199. During the past year Philip had been successful in his campaign against Otto. The power and influence of the Guelphs was broken. A severe blow struck Otto when his uncle and strong supporter, Richard the Lion-Hearted, king of England, died April 6, 1199. — 252 *die er read dier*. — 253 *Megdeburg* Magdeburg, a city situated on the Elbe, 88 miles southwest of Berlin. *Phili'ppes* Cf. 227. — 254-5 Philip was a son of Emperor Frederick Barbarossa, a brother of Emperor Henry VI, and himself a king (designated to become emperor later). This union of three in one is pointed out as a clear allusion to the Holy Trinity. The number three was regarded as a good sign in keeping with the Latin proverb *omne trinum perfectum* "Three is the perfect number." — 256 Sceptre and crown, the insignia of the empire, were in Philip's possession at the outset and gave him a formal and a moral superiority over Otto. — 258 The queen was the former imperial princess Irene (*Erina Augusta*) of Byzantium. In Germany she was usually called by the name Maria. Therefore, the poet gives her (in line 259) the epithets otherwise used only for the Holy Virgin.

260 *diu zuht was niener anderswâ:*  
*die Düringe und die Saksen dienten alsô dâ,*  
*daz ez den wîsen muoste wol gevallen.*

## II.

*Constantîn* referred to in this poem is Constantine I or Constantine the Great (c. 286–337), Roman emperor. Our poem deals with the so-called “Donation of Constantine”, a forged document of the eighth century professing to be the record of a gift bestowed by Constantine upon Pope Sylvester I. By it the Bishop of Rome was granted the temporal sovereignty over Rome and the western regions of the Roman Empire (*omne regnum Occidentis*). In addition, the pope received from Constantine also the insignia mentioned in line 265. Basing his claims on this document Pope Innocent III regarded the emperor as a vassal of the church. At that time nobody questioned the authenticity of the document; the two warring factions differed only in their interpretation of the text. Philip’s supporters contended that they had the right to elect the king of Germany and that the pope was bound to crown the man of their choice. Walther, too, believed in the authenticity of the document but in our poem deplors its existence as a calamity for the entire Christian world.

The melody of this political song is preserved to us in a manuscript at Colmar, Alsace. It is there called *Her Walthers von der Vogelweyde hofwysse oder wendelwys*.

*Künc Constantîn der gab sô vil,*  
*als ich ez iu bescheiden wil,*  
 265 *dem stuol ze Rôme: sper, kriuze unde krône.*

---

260 *diu* demonstrative adjective. “This kind of good breeding could not be found anywhere else”. — 261 *Düringe* “Thuringians”: Landgrave Hermann of Thuringia had long been in the camp of the enemies, but now recognizes Philip’s sovereignty. *Saksen* The prince of Saxony. — 262 *den wîsen* “to those able to judge; who knew the situation.” — 263 *Künc* = *künig*. *der gab sô vil* Constantine was so generous that he entrusted the Holy See with the insignia of temporal sovereignty. — 265 *stuol* dative. *kriuze* This was believed to be the cross on which Christ had died. According to the legend, it was discovered by St. Helena, Constantine’s mother. Cross and lance used to be carried before the future emperor at the coronation procession in Rome.

- Zehant der engel lûte schrê*  
*“owê, owê, zem dritten wê!*  
*ê stuont diu kristenheit mit zûhten schône:*  
*Der ist nû ein gift gevallen.*
- 270 *ir honc ist worden zeiner gallen.*  
*daz wirt der werlt her nâch vil leit.”*  
*alle fürsten lebent nû mit êren,*  
*wan der hœhste ist gewachtet:*  
*daz hât der p̄saffen wal gemachtet.*
- 275 *daz s̄ dir, s̄iezer got, gekleit.*  
*die p̄saffen wellent leien reht verkêren.*  
*der engel hât uns wâr geseit.*

## 12.

This poem is one of the frequent contemporary predictions of the Last Judgment and of the horrors preceding it. The description is founded entirely on the data given in the New Testament. If line 284 refers to something which actually happened in Walther's days it can only mean the solar eclipse of November 27, 1201. In this case our poem reflects the political situation of the time immediately following the Bamberg meeting (cf. line 276).

*Nû wachet! uns gêt zuo der tac*  
*gein dem wol angest haben mac*

---

266 *der engel* “an angel”. The definite article is used here because the legend of the angel weeping over the Donation of Constantine was well known. *schrê* pret. of *schrîen*. — 269 *gift* The meaning of this word is purposely ambiguous referring to both “donation” and “poison”. — 273 Referring to Philip. — 274 *p̄saffen* Cf. 211. *wal* referring to the election of Otto. — 275 *gekleit* (= *geklaget*) This form is characteristic of the Austrian dialect. — 276 *leien* Cf. 211. The clerical party is accused of breaking up law and order because they interfered in the king's election regarded as a prerogative of the princes. An assembly of princes protested vigorously against this encroachment on their rights at Bamberg on September 8, 1201, and again at Halle in 1202. — 277 *geseit* see *sagen*. — 278 Cf. Matthew 25, 13: “Watch therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour wherein the Son of man cometh.”



- 280 *ein ieglich kristen, juden unde heiden.*  
*Wir hân der zeichen vil gesehen,*  
*dar an wir sîne kunft wol spehen,*  
*als uns diu schrift mit wârheit hât bescheiden.*  
*Diu sunne hât ir schîn verkêret,*
- 285 *untriuwe ir sâmen ûz gerêret*  
*allenthalben zuo den wegen:*  
*der vater bî dem kinde untriuwe vindet,*  
*der bruoder sînem bruoder liuget.*  
*geistlich orden in kappen triuget,*
- 290 *die uns ze himel solten stegen:*  
*gewalt gêt ûf, reht vor gerihte swindet.*  
*wol ûf! hie ist ze vil gelegen.*

## 13.

*Philippes künig, die nâhe spehenden zîhent dich,*  
*dun sîst niht dankes milte: des bedunket mich*

---

281 *zeichen* According to the writings of the Middle Ages there are 15 different signs announcing the day of the Last Judgment. All those mentioned by Walther in this poem also occur in the Gospels. Cf. Mark 13, 8-; Matthew 24, 7-; Luke 21, 9-. — 285 *untriuwe* Cf. §131, line 21. — 287-8 Cf. Mark 13, 12: "Now the brother shall betray the brother to death, and the father the son; and children shall rise up against their parents, and shall cause them to be put to death." — 289 *in kappen* "even while wearing the copes", i.e., "while performing religious services (e.g., benedictions, sermons)". This is a reference to the false prophets of the Bible, e.g., Matthew 24, 5: "For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and shall deceive many." — 290 *die* nom. plur. referring to the collective noun *geistlich orden*. — 291 Cf. §131, lines 22-23. — 292 The poem begins and ends with a forceful call to the people to wake up, i.e., to rise from their state of sin. Cf. the end of Mark chapter 13. Note the resemblance of this poem with the type of the *Tagelied*. Cf. Dietmar No. 3. — 293 *Philippes* Cf. 227. *die nâhe spehenden* "people who keep an eye on you". — 294 *dun* = *du ne*: "that you don't like to give gifts; that you are grudging with your gifts". It is assumed that Walther, in reminding the king to be more generous, acts in behalf of some prince, perhaps Hermann, landgrave of Thuringia, who wants to get some compensation for the support given Philip's cause.

- 295 *wie dû dâ mite verliesest michels mêre.*  
*Du möhtest gerner dankes geben tûsent pfunt,*  
*dan drîzec tûsent âne danc. dir ist niht kunt*  
*wie man mit gâbe erwirbet prîs und êre.*  
*Denke an den milten Salatîn:*  
 300 *der jach daz küniges hende dürkel solten sîn:*  
*sô wurden si erforht und ouch geminnet.*  
*gedenke an den von Engellant,*  
*wie tiure er wart erlöst von sîner milten hant.*  
*ein schade ist guot, der zwêne frumen gewinnet.*

## 14.

- 305 *Der in den ôren siech von ungestihte sî,*  
*daz ist mîn rât, der lâz den hof ze Dîrengen frî:*  
*wan kumet er dar, dês wâr er wirt ertæret.*  
*Ich hân gedrunge unz ich niht mê dringen mac.*  
*ein schar vert ûz, diu ander in, naht unde tac.*  
 310 *grôz wunder ist daz iemen dâ gehæret.*  
*Der lantgrâve ist sô gemuot*  
*daz er mit stolzen helden sîne habe vertuot,*

---

295 *wie* = *daz*. — 297 *danc* = *danne*. — 298 *prîs* "praise, honor". *êre* "prestige, respect". — 299 *Denke* read *denk*. *Salatîn* Cf. Hartmann 81. Sultan Saladin's generosity was proverbial throughout the western world. — 301 *erforht* p.p. of *fürhten*. — 302 *gedenke* This imperative is more emphatic than *denke* in line 299. *der von Engellant* Richard the Lion-Hearted. He was captured in Walther's own time by Leopold (cf. Reinmar No. 4) and turned over to the Emperor Henry VI who released him in 1194 for the heavy ransom of 150000 marks. — 303 *von sîner milten hant* "through his own liberal hand". At his court Richard had been very generous toward poets and minstrels. — 304 *zwêne frumen*, namely, *prîs* and *êre* (line 298). *gewinnet* read *gwinnet*. — 306 *Dîrengen* Thuringia. Walther, brought up in the refinement of Upper German chivalry, was shocked by the life found at the court of Thuringia. — 307 *dês wâr* = *daz ist wâr*. — 311 Read *la'ntgra'v ist* "the landgrave himself . . ." *sô gemuot daz . . .* "has set his mind on spending . . ." Referring to landgrave Hermann. — 312 *stolzen* used ironically.

*der iegeslîcher wol ein kenpfe wære.  
 mir ist ein hôhiu fuore kunt:  
 315 und gulte ein fuoder guotes wînes tûsent pfunt,  
 dâ stüent doch niemer ritters becher lære.*

## 15.

*Philipppe, künig hêre,  
 si gebent dir alle heiles wort  
 und wolten liep nâch leide.  
 320 Nu hâstu guot und êre:  
 daz ist wol zweier künige hort:  
 diu gib der milte beide.  
 Der milte lôn ist sô diu sât,  
 diu wînnelîche wider gât  
 325 dar nâch man si geworfen hât:  
 wirf von dir milteclîche.  
 swelh künig der milte geben kan,  
 si gît im daz er nie gewan.  
 wie Alexander sich versan!  
 330 der gab und gab, und gab si im elliu rîche.*

## c) In Honor of the Deceased Reinmar

## 16.

*Owê daz wîsheit unde jugent,  
 des mannes schæne noch sîn tugent,  
 niht erben sol, sô ie der lip erstirbet!  
 Daz mac wol klagen ein wîser man,*

---

315 *und* "even if". — 315-16 Walther disapproves of heavy drinking as being out of harmony with the conduct of a gentleman. — 318 *heiles wort* "good wishes". — 320 *hâstu* = *hâst du*. — 322 *milte* should be appointed treasurer. — 323-4 Cf. the parable of the sower: Matthew 13, 3; Mark 4, 3; Luke 8, 5. — 329 *Alexander* Alexander the Great (356-323 B.C.), king of Macedon and conqueror of the Persian Empire. — 330 *si im* read *sim*.

- 335 *der sich des schaden versinnen kan,  
Reimâr, waz guoter kunst an dir verdirbet.  
Du solt von schulden iemer des geniezen,  
daz dich des tages wolte nie verdriezen,  
dun spræchest ie den frowen wol und guoten wibes siten.*
- 340 *des sîn si iemer danken dîner zungen.  
hetst anders niht wan eine rede gesungen,  
"sô wol dir, wîp, wie reine ein man!", du hetest alsô gestriten  
an ir lop, daz elliu wîp dir gnâden solten biten.*

## 17.

- Dêst wâr, Reimâr, du riuwes mich*
- 345 *michels harter danne ich dich,  
ob dû lebtest und ich wær erstorben.  
Ich wilz bî mînen triuwen sagen,  
dich selben wolt ich lützel klagen:  
ich klage dîn edelen kunst, daz sist verdorben.*
- 350 *Du kundest al der werlte fröide mêren,  
sô dûz ze guoten dingen woltes kêren.  
mich riuwet dîn wol redender munt und dîn vil süezer sanc,  
daz die verdorben sint bî mînen zîten.*

---

338 *des tages* adv. used here to intensify the adv. *nie*. *des tages nie* "not a single day." — 339 *dun* = *du ne*. — 340 *sîn* = *suln*. — 341 *hetst* = *hetest*. *eine rede* "one song", namely, the one quoted in the next line. — 342 The song of Reinmar's mentioned in this verse is preserved to us. Cf. *Minnesangs Frühling* 165, 28. — 343 *lop* = *love* dative. *striten an* w. dat. "to fight for". *dir gnâden solten biten* "that all women should pray to God for the salvation of your soul." — 344 *Dêst* = *daz ist*. *riuwes mich* "Your death fills me with sorrow." — 347 *wilz* = *wil ez*. — 349 *sist* = *si ist*. — 351 *dûz* = *dû ez*. *ez* belongs together with the verb *kêren* without referring to any previous noun or pronoun. *ez kêren ze guoten dingen* "to have good things in view; to aim at good things." In Walther's opinion Reinmar devoted too much time to literary feuds. — 352 *süezer sanc* "melodious song" referring to the melodies of Reinmar's compositions while *dîn wol redender munt* refers specifically to the text. The meaning is: The memory of you singing your songs and the realization that you are dead fills me with sadness.

*daz dû niht eine wîle mohtest bîten!*  
 355 *sô leist ich dir geselleschaft: mîn singen ist niht lanc.*  
*dîn sêle müeze wol gevarn, und habe dîn zunge danc.*

## d) Religious Songs

18.

This is a crusader's song which enjoyed great popularity.

*Allerêrst lebe ich mir werde,*  
*sît mîn sündig ouge siht*  
*Daz reîne lant und ouch die erde,*  
 360 *der man sô vil êren giht.*  
*Mirst geschehen des ich ie bat:*  
*ich bin komen an die stat,*  
*dâ got mennischlîchen trat.*

*Schæniu lant rîch unde hêre,*  
 365 *swaz ich der noch hân gesehen,*  
*Sô bist dûz ir aller êre.*  
*waz ist wunders hie geschehen!*  
*Daz ein magt ein kint gebar,*  
*hêre über aller engel schar.*  
 370 *was daz niht ein wunder gar?*

*Hie liez er sich reîne toufen,*  
*daz der mensche reîne sî.*  
*Sît liez er sich hie verkoufen,*  
*daz wir eigen wurden frî.*

---

355 *leist* = *leiste* (for *leistete*) pret. subj. to be translated by a pluperfect. — 356 *dîn zunge habe danc* "your tongue be praised". — 357 "Only now my life is worth living." — 359 *lant* "Palestine". *erde* "soil". — 360 *giht* see *jehen*. — 361 *Mirst* = *mir ist*. — 366 *dûz* = *dû ez ir aller êre* "the most excellent of all". — 368 *magt* = *maget*. — 369 Read *hêr übr aller*. — 371 *er . . . reîne* "he who was without sin". — 374 *wir eigen* "we who were in bondage (to sin)". *wurden* subjunctive.

375 *Anders wæren wir verlorn.*  
*wol dir, sper, kriuze unde dorn!*  
*wê dir, heiden! deist dir zorn.*

*Hinnen fuor der sun ze helle*  
*von dem grabe dâr inne lac.*

380 *Des was ie der vater geselle,*  
*und der geist, den nieman mac*  
*Sunder scheiden: êst al ein,*  
*sleht und ebener danne ein zein,*  
*als er Abrahâme erschein.*

385 *Dô er den tievel dô geschande,*  
*daz nie keiser baz gestreit,*  
*Dô fuor er her wider ze lande.*  
*dô huob sich der juden leit,*  
*Daz er herre ir huote brach*  
 390 *und man in sît lebendig sach,*  
*den ir hant sluog unde stach.*

*In diz lant hât er gesprochen*  
*einen angeslîchen tac.*

*Dâ diu witwe wirt gerochen*  
 395 *und der wise klagen mac*  
*Und der arme den gewalt,*

---

376 *sper* This refers to the lance of Longinus with which the side of Christ was pierced on the cross. Cf. 481. *dorn* "the crown of thorns". — 377 *wê dir* "woe be to you!" *heiden* referring to the Saracens. *deist* = *daz ist*. *zorn* "something to be afraid of". — 379 *dâr* = *dâ er*. Connect *dâ* and *inne* "in which". — 382 *êst* = *ez ist*. — 383 *sleht und ebener* "slicker and smoother". Here both adjectives are in the comparative degree although only the second one has a comparative ending. The phrase consisting of two synonymous words was felt as a unit. — 384 Cf. I Moses 18. — 385 *Dô er* read *dô'r*. *geschande* pret. of *geschenden*, however, with pluperfect meaning. — 390 *lebendig* read *le'bdig*. — 391 *sluog* and *stach* pluperfect meaning. — 392 *diz lant* Palestine. According to a prophecy of Joel chapter 3 the last Judgment is to take place in the valley of Josaphat between Jerusalem and the Mount of Olives. — 395 *klagen mac* "has a chance to complain of".

*der dâ wirt an ime gestalt.  
wol im dort, der hie vergalt!*

*Kristen, juden und die heiden*  
400 *jehent, daz diz ir erbe sî:  
Got müeze ez ze rehte scheiden  
durch die sîne namen drî!  
Al diu welt diu strîtet her.  
wir sîn an der rehten ger.*  
405 *reht ist, daz er uns gewer.*

## 19.

*Owê waz êren sich ellendet tiutschen landen!  
witze unde manheit, dar zuo silber und daz golt,  
Swer diu beidiu hât, belîbet der mit schanden,  
wie den vergât des himeleschen keisers solt!*  
410 *Dem sint die engel noch die frowen holt.  
arm man zuo der welte und wider got,  
wie der fürhten mac ir beider spot!*

*Owê ez kumt ein wint, daz wizzent sicherlîche,  
dâ von wir hæren beide singen unde sagen:*

---

397 "To which he is exposed here". — 398 *dort* "there (in heaven)", *hie* "here (on earth)". — 405 In the last two verses the poet takes strong side with the Christians asking God to validate their claim. — 406 This song, an appeal to the German knights to go on a crusade, was composed during the winter of 1227-8. "How much prestige has left Germany!" The knights who left the country constitute its power and prestige. The poet realizes the weakened position in which the country is left. — 407 *witze* read *witz*. — 408 *diu beidiu*: *witze* and *manheit* on the one hand, and *silber* and *golt* on the other. *belîben* "to stay at home". — 410 *die engel* read *d'engel*. *noch* "neither . . . nor". — 411 *arm man* In spite of his wealth he would be a poor miserable man, *arm* referring both to poverty and wretchedness. — 413 *wizzent* = *wizzet*. *wint* The wind is one of the signs announcing the coming of the Last Judgment. Cf. Walther No. 12. At the same time the poet refers by this to the excommunication pronounced by Pope Gregory IX against Emperor Frederick II for delaying the crusade. Cf. 459.



- 415 *Der sol mit grimme ervaren elliu künigrîche.  
daz hære ich waller unde pilgerîne klagē:  
Boume, tîrne ligent vor im zerslagen:  
starken liuten wæt erz houbet abe.  
nu suln wir fliehen hin ze gotes grabe.*
- 420 *Owê wir müezigen liute, wie sîn wir versezzen  
zwischen zwein fröiden nider an die jâmerlichen stat!  
Aller arebeite heten wir vergezzen,  
dô uns der kurze sumer sîn gesinde wesen bat.  
Der brâhte uns varnde bluomen unde blat:*
- 425 *dô troug uns der kurze vogelsanc.  
wol im der ie nach stâten fröiden ranc!*
- Owê der wîse, die wir mit den grillen sungen,  
dô wir uns solten warnen gegen des kalten winters zît!  
Daz wir vil tumben mit der âmeizen niht rungen,*
- 430 *diu nû vil werdeclîche bî ir arebeiten lît!  
Daz was ie der welte meiste strît.  
tôren schulden ie der wîsen rât:  
man siht wol dort, wer hie gelogen hât.*

## 20.

- Owê war sint verschwunden alliu mîniu jâr!  
435 ist mir mîn leben getroumet? oder ist ez wâr?  
daz ich ie wânde daz 'z iht wære, was daz iht?*

415 *grimme* read *grimm*. — 417 *zerslagen* see *zerslahen*. — 418 *wæt* 3rd sing. pres. of *wæjen*. *erz* = *er daz*. — 421 *zwein fröiden* namely, worldly (temporal) and heavenly (everlasting) joy. — 423 *gesinde* Summer is here represented as a war-lord. — 424 *varnde* “transitory”. — 427 This verse is connected with 425 by means of grammatical rhyme: *sanc/sungen*. In this stanza we have an allusion to the old fable of the cricket and the ant: Aesopus No. 295. — 429 *rungen* and *ranc* in 426 form grammatical rhyme. *mit der âmeizen* “at the same time as the ant.” *âmeizen* read *a'meize'n*. — 430 *arebeiten* “the results of labor”. *lît* see *ligen*. — 433 *dort* at the Last Judgment. — 435 *ist . . . getroumet?* “Has my life been only a dream?” — 436 *wânde* see *wânen*.

- dar nâch hân ich geslâfen und enweiz es niht.*  
*nû bin ich erwachet, und ist mir unbekant*  
*daz mir hie vor was kündic als mîn ander hant.*  
 440 *Liute unde lant, dar inn ich von kinde bin erzogen,*  
*die sint mir frömde worden reht als ez sî gelogen.*  
*die mîne gespilen wâren, die sint træge und alt.*  
*bereitet ist daz velt, verhouwen ist der walt:*  
*wan daz daz wazzer flûzet, als ez wilent flôz,*  
 445 *für wâr, mîn ungelücke, wânde ich, wurde grôz.*  
*Mich grüezet maniger træge, der mich bekande ê wol.*  
*diu welt ist allenthalben ungenâden vol.*  
*als ich gedenke an manigen wunneclîchen tac,*  
*die mir sint enphallen als in daz mer ein slac,*  
 450 *iemer mêre ouwê!*

- Ouwê wie jæmerlîche junge liute tuont,*  
*den nû vil niurweclîche ir gemüete gestuont.*  
*die kunnen niurwan sorgen: ouwê wie tuont si sô?*  
*swar ich zer werlte kêre, dâ ist nieman frô.*  
 455 *tanzen unde singen zergât mit sorgen gar:*  
*nie kristen man gesach sô jæmerlîchiu jâr.*  
*Nu merkent, wie den frouwen ir gebende stât!*  
*die stolzen ritter tragent dörpellîche wât.*  
*uns sint unsenste brieve her von Rôme komen,*

---

437 *dar nâch* "according to this; if this is true". — 439 *mîn ander hant* "my own hand": *ander* is here used pleonastically. — 440 *erzogen* see *erziehen*. — 441 *reht als* "just as if". — 443 Where in his childhood there was nothing but forest, he now finds a clearance and even tilled land. Everything has changed. — 444 Only the river has not been changed. — 445 *wânde* (see *wânen*) subjunctive. He feels unhappy, not because he does not approve of progress, but because he is a stranger, out of place, a natural feeling for anyone who after long years of absence returns to the scene of his childhood days. — 451 In this second strophe (in sharp contrast to the first one) the poet deplors the new way of living. — 457 *merkent* = *merket*. — 459 In October 1227 Pope Gregory IX announced the excommunication of Emperor Frederick II to the archbishop of Magdeburg and the German princes.

- 460 *uns ist erloubet trüren und fröide gar benomen.*  
*daz müet mich inneclîchen (wir lebten ie vil wol),*  
*daz ich nu für mîn lachen weinen kiesen sol.*  
*Die wilden vogele betrüebet unser klage:*  
*waz wonders ist, ob ich dâ von verzage?*
- 465 *waz spriche ich tumber man durch mînen bæsen zorn?*  
*swer dirre wunne volget, hât jene dort verlorn,*  
*iemer mêre ouwê.*

- Ouwê wie uns mit süezen dingen ist vergeben!*  
*ich sihe die gallen mitten in dem honige sweben:*
- 470 *diu welt ist ûzen schæne, wîz, grüen unde rôz,*  
*und innân swarzer varwe, vîenster sam der tôz.*  
*swen si nu habe verleitet, der schouwe sînen trôz:*  
*er wirt mit swacher buoze grôzer sînde erlôz.*  
*Dar an gedenket, ritter: ez ist irwer ding.*
- 475 *ir tragent die liechten helme und manigen herten ring,*  
*dar zuo die vesten schilte und diu gewîhten swert.*  
*wolte got, wære ich der sigenünfte wert!*  
*sô wolte ich nôtig man verdienen rîchen solt.*  
*joch meine ich niht der huoben noch der herren golt:*
- 480 *Ich wolte sælden krône êweclîchen tragen:*  
*die mohte ein soldenære mit sîme sper bejagen.*  
*môhte ich die lieben reise gevaren über sê,*  
*sô wolte ich denne singen "wol!"*  
*und niemer mer "ouwê!"*

---

461 müet see müejen. — 466 dirre "temporal". dort in heaven. — 473 mit swacher buoze They can do penance by going on the crusade. — 474 gedenket = gedenket. Only knights could take part in this crusade. — 475 tragent = traget. — 476 gewîhten When a person was knighted a priest blessed his sword. — 477 Walther was not knighted and could, therefore, not take part in the campaign. — 480 sælden krône "heavenly crown". Cf. Hartmann 45-48. — 481 mohte "was able to". ein Cf. §144. soldenære referring to Longinus. Cf. 376. According to one version of the legend Longinus was converted to the Christian faith while standing under the cross. Another version was to the effect that Longinus who had formerly been blind was healed by the blood and water that came out of Christ's wound. — 482 gevaren = gevarn.

## IX. NEIDHART VON REUENTAL

### I.

*Der walt stuont aller grîse  
vor snê und ouch vor îse.  
derst in liehter varwe gar.  
nemt sîn war,  
5 stolziu kint,  
und reiet dâ die bluomen sint.*

*Ûf manegem grüenem rîse  
hôrte ich süeze wîse  
singen kleiniu vogelîn.  
10 bluomen schîn  
ich dâ vant:  
heide hât ir lieht gewant  
Ich bin holt dem meien.  
dar inne sach ich reien  
15 mîn liep in der linden schat.  
manic blat  
ir dâ wac  
für den sunnenheizen tac.*

### 2.

*Ûf dem berge und in dem tal  
20 hebt sich aber der vogele schal,  
hiur als ê  
grüener klê.  
râme ez, winder, du tuost wê.  
Die boume die dô stuonden grîs,  
25 die habent alle ir niuwez rîs*

---

1 *aller* inflected nom. masc. sing. of *al*. — 3 *derst* = *der ist*. *liehter* the color of the forest in summer as opposed to the "dreary gray" (*grîse*) of winter. — 15 *schat* = *schate*.

*vogele vol.*  
*daz tuot wol.*  
*dâ von nimt der meie den zol.*  
*Ein altiu mit dem tôde vaht*  
 30 *beide tac und ouch die naht.*  
*diu spranc sider*  
*als ein wider*  
*und stiez die jungen alle nider.*

## 3.

*Sumer, dîner süezen weter müezen wir uns ânên:*  
 35 *dirre kalde winder trâren unde senen gît.*  
*ich bin ungetræstet von der lieben wolgetânên:*  
*wie sol ich vertriben dise lange swære zît,*  
*diu die heide velwet unde mange bluomen wolgetân ?*  
*alsô sint die vogele in dem walde des betwungen, dazs ir singen*  
*müezen lân.*  
 40 *Alsô hât diu vrouwe mîn daz herze mir betwungen,*  
*daz ich âne vröude muoz verswenden mîne tage.*  
*ez vervæhet niht, swaz ich ir lange hân gesungen:*  
*mir ist alsô mære, daz ich mære stille dage.*  
*ich geloube niht des, daz si mannen immer werde holt.*  
 45 *wir verliesen, swaz wir dar gesingen und gerûnen, ich und jener*  
*Hildebolt.*

*Der ist nû der tumbist under geilen getelingen,*  
*er und einer, nennet man den jungen Willeher.*  
*den erkunde ich disen sumer nie von ir gedrungen,*  
*sô der tanz gein âbent an der strâze gie entwer.*

28 *zol nemen* "to levy tribute" a prerogative of the sovereign. — 35 *kalde* = *kalte*. *gît* see *geben*. — 38 *mange* = *manege*. — 39 *dazs* = *daz si*. — 42 *vervæhet* Cf. §52 VII. — 43 *mir ist alsô mære, daz . . .* "It is just the same to me (I get the same result), if . . ." *mære* "in the future". — 46 *tumbist* superlative of *tump*. — 47 *einer, nennet man W.* "a guy whom they call W.; a guy called W." Cf. 62.

50 *mangen twerhen blic den wurfen sî mich mit den ougen an,*  
*daz ich sunder mînes guoten willen vor in beiden ie ze sweime*  
*muose gân.*

*Wê daz mich sô manger hât von lieber stat gedrungen*  
*beidiu von der guoten und ouch wîlent anderswâ.*  
*ædelîchen wart von in ûf mînen traz gesprungen.*

55 *ir gewaltes bin ich vor in mînem schopfe grâ.*  
*doch sô neic diu guote mir ein lûtzel über schildes rant.*  
*gerne mugt ir hœren, wie die dörper sint gekleidet: ûppedlîch ist*  
*ir gewant.*

*Enge rœcke tragent sî und enge schaperûne,*  
*rôte hûete, rinkelohte schuohe, swarze hosen.*

60 *Engelmâr getet mir nie sô leide an Vriderûne,*  
*sam die zwêne tuont. ich nîde ir phellerûne phosen,*  
*die si tragent: dâ lît inne eine wurze, heizet ingeber.*  
*der gap Hildebolt der guoten eine bî dem tanze; die gezuhte ir*  
*Willeher.*

*Sagte ich nû diu mære, wie siz mit ein ander schuofen,*  
 65 *des enweiz ich niht: ich schiet von danne sâ zchant.*  
*manneglîch begunde sînen vriunden vaste ruofen.*  
*einer der schrê lûte: "hilf, gevater Wezerant."*  
*er was lûhte in grôzen næten, dô er sô nâch helfe schrê.*

*Hildeboldes swester hôrte ich eines lûte schrîen: "wê mir mînes*  
*bruoder wê!"*

---

50 *mangen* = *manegen*. ein dinc einen an werfen "to throw a thing against a person". — 51 *sunder mînes guoten willen* "against my firm resolution." — 52 *manger* = *maneger*. — 54 *gesprungen* Cf. *den reigen springen*. — 55 *ir gewaltes* "on account of their brutality". *vor* adv. "before the proper time". — 56 *doch sô* "but then again". *über schildes rant* The figure is taken from a combat: She deigned to cast a glance at me. — 57 *gerne* "willingly" refers to the poet and not to the audience. Therefore: "I shall be glad to let you know how . . ." — 60 *Vriderûn* a former sweetheart. — 62 *wurze, heizet ingeber* "a spicy root called ginger" (cf. 47), something to suck or to chew. — 63 *gezuhte* pret. of *gezucken*. — 64 *Sagte ich . . .* "If I were to tell . . ." *siz* = *si* ez. — 69 *wê mir . . .* Cf. Anonymous Songs line 22.

## X. ANONYMOUS SONGS

### 1.

*Floret silva undiquê,  
nâh mîme gesellen ist mir wê.  
gruonet der walt allenthalben,  
wâ ist mîn geselle also lange?  
5 der ist geriten hinne:  
owê, wer sol mich minnen?*

### 2.

*Wær diu werlt alliu mîn  
von dem mere unz an den Rîn,  
des wolt ih mih darben,  
10 daz diu künegîn von Engellant  
læge an mînen armen.*

### 3.

*Mich dunket niht sô guotes      noh sô lobesam  
sô diu liehte rôse      und diu minne mînes man.  
diu kleinen vogellîn,  
15 diu singent in dem walde:      dêst menegem herzen liep.  
mir enkome mîn holder geselle,      ine hân der sumerwunne niet.*

---

1 *Floret silva undiquê* (Latin) "The forest is verdant everywhere." —  
2 *nâh* = *nâch*. — 12 *niht* "nothing". The genitive *guotes* stands here for a  
nominative *guot* belonging to the verb *dunket*. The genitive was caused by  
the proximity of *niht* (grammatical attraction) and it looks now as if the  
word were part of the subject. *lobesam*, however, which is farther removed  
from *niht* appears in the proper nominative form and is not affected by this  
attraction. — 13 *man* "the beloved one". — 15 *dêst* = *daz ist*. *menegem* =  
*manegem*. — 16 *mir* "to me". *enkome* "if not, unless . . ."; cf. §57. *ine* = *ich*  
*ne*. *niet* = *niht*.



## 4.

*Diu linde ist an dem ende nu jârlanc licht und blôz.  
 mich vêhet mîn geselle: nu engilte ich des ich nie genôz.  
 Vil ist unstâter wîbe, diu benement ime den sin.  
 20 got wizze wol die wârheit daz ich ime diu holdeste bin.  
 Si enkunnen niewan triegen vil manegen kindeschen man.  
 owê mir sîner jugende! diu muoz mir al ze sorgen ergân.*

## 5.

*“Mir hât ein ritter”, sprach ein wîp,  
 “gedienet nâch dem willen mîn.  
 25 Ê sich verwandelôt diu zît,  
 sô muoz im doch gelônet sîn.  
 Mich dunket winter unde snê  
 schæne bluomen unde klê,  
 swenn ich in umbevungen hân.  
 30 und wærez al der welte leit,  
 sô muoz sîn wille an mir ergân.”*

## 6.

*Der walt in grüener varwe stât:  
 wol der wunneclîchen zît.  
 Mîner sorgen wirdet rât.  
 35 sælic sî daz beste wîp,  
 Diu mich træstet sunder spot.  
 ich bin vrô: dêst ir gebot.*

---

17 The summer is over. The leaves of the trees have already fallen. —  
 22 *owê m.s. jugende* “How much I have to suffer on account of his youth!”  
 — 25 *verwandelôt* (with an archaic ending) = *verwandel(e)t*. — 29 “every  
 time I hold him in my arms”. *umbevungen hân* in this passage is not a  
 perfect, since *hân* has here the meaning “I hold”. — 30 *wærez = ware ez*. —  
 34 “My sorrows are over.” — 37 *dêst = daz ist*.

*Ein winken und ein umbe sehen  
wart mir dô ich si nâhest sach.*

- 40 *Dâ moht anders niht geschehen,  
wan daz si minneclîche sprach:  
"Vriunt, du wis vil hôchgemuot!"  
wie sanft daz mînem herzen tuot!*

- "Ich wil weinen von dir hân",  
45 sprach daz aller beste wîp.  
"Schiere soltu mich enphân  
unde træsten mînen lîp."  
"Swie du wilt, sô wil ich sîn.  
lache, liebez frowelîn."*

## 7.

- 50 *Jâ lige ich mit gedanken der alre besten bî.  
mirst leit daz ich sie ie gesach, sol si mir fremede sîn.  
ichn mac ir niut vergezzen deheine zît; sist guot,  
und ist behuot: des trûret mir der muot.  
ir sult mir alle helfen klagen diu leit diu man mir an ir  
tuot.*

## 8.

- 55 *Ich hân eine senede nôt,  
diu tuot mir alsô wê.  
Daz machet mir ein wînder kalt  
und ouch der wîze snê.  
Kæme mir diu sumerzît,  
60 sô wolde ich prîsen mînen lîp  
umb ein vil harte schænez wîp.*

---

39 *nâhest* superlative of *nâch*. — 43 *sanft* = *sanfte*. — 44 *von* (with emphatic accent) "away from, removed from"; *Ich will . . . hân* "I want weeping to be far from you". — 50 *alre besten* = *aller besten*. — 51 *mirst* = *mir ist*. — 52 *sist* = *si ist*. — 53 *behuot* see *behüeten*.

## 9.

*Springe wir den reigen*  
*nu, vrowe mîn,*  
*Vröun uns gegen dem meigen!*  
 65 *uns kumet sîn schîn.*  
*Der winder der der heide*  
*tet senede nôt,*  
*der ist nû zergangen.*  
*sist wunneclîch bevangen*  
 70 *von bluomen rôl.*

## 10.

*In liechter varwe stât der walt,*  
*der vogele schal nu dænet.*  
*Diu wunne ist worden manicvalt.*  
*des meien tugent krænet*  
 75 *Senede liebe: wer wær alt,*  
*dâ sih diu zît sô schænet?*  
*her Meie, iu ist der brîs gezalt.*  
*der winder sî gehænet.*

## 11.

*Nu suln wir alle fröude hân,*  
 80 *die zît mit sange wol begân.*  
*Wir sehen bluomen schône stân.*

---

62 *springe wir* Cf. §163. — 64 *vröun* = *fröwen*. *gegen d. m.* "in expectation of May". — 65 *sîn schîn*. The picture of the rising sun is here applied to the coming of May, the typical spring month, after the dark and gloomy winter season. — 67 The meadow (with its flowers) is represented as having human feeling. It longs for its lover (sunshine). — 69 *sist* = *sî ist*: *sî* referring to *heide*. *wunneclîch bev*. Again the meadow is somebody's prisoner, but this time (in contrast to lines 66-67) the chains (*bluomen*) binding it are pleasant, more like an embrace. — 77 *gezalt* see *zellen*.

*diu heide ist wunneclîch getân.*  
*Tanzen reien springen wol*  
*mit fröude und ouch mit schalle:*  
 85 *daz zimet kinden als iz sol.*  
*nu schimphen mit dem balle!*  
*mîn vrowe ist ganzer tugende vol.*  
*in weiz wiech ir gevalle.*

## 12.

*Vrowe, ih bin dir undertân,*  
 90 *des lâ mih geniezen.*  
*Ih diene dir sô ih beste kan.*  
*des wil dih verdriezen.*  
*Nu wildu mîne sinne*  
*mit dîme gewalte sliezen.*  
 95 *nu wold ih dîner minne,*  
*vil süeze minne, niezen.*  
*vil reine wîp, dîn schæner lâp*  
*wil mih ze sêre schiezen.*  
*ûz dîme gebot ich nimmer kume,*  
 100 *obz alliu wîbe hiezen.*

## 13.

*Kume kum, geselle mîn,*  
*ih enbite harte dîn:*

83 Apparently each of the three verbs (*tanzen*, *reien*, *springen*) refers to a different mode of dancing. — 85 *iz* = *ez*. — 88 *in* = *ich ne*. *wiech* = *wie ich*. — 93 *wildu* = *wil du*. — 100 *obz* = *ob ez* "even if". *wîbe* nom. plur. instead of the regular form *wîp*. In analogy with the strong masculine nouns (cf. *tac* — *tage*, *gast* — *geste*), the ending -e for the nominative and accusative plural intruded also into the declension of the strong neuter nouns. However, in classical MHG such forms are still rare. New High German remnants of this innovation are to be seen in forms like *Worte* and *Lande* (beside *Wörter* and *Länder*). The original MHG endingless plural form (*diu wort*, *diu lant*) has been entirely lost in the modern standard language.

*ih enbîte harte dîn:  
kume kum, geselle mîn.*

- 105 *Süezer rôsenvarwer munt  
kum und mache mich gesunt.  
kum und mache mich gesunt,  
süezer rôsenvarwer munt.*

## 14.

- Ich wil den sumer grüezen, sô ih beste kan.*  
110 *der winder hât mir hiure leides vil getân.  
Des wil ich in rüefen in der vrowen ban.  
ich sihe die liechte heide in grüener varwe stân.  
Dar suln wir alle gâhen,  
die sumerzît enphâhen.*  
115 *des tanzes ich beginnen sol, wil ez iu niht versmâhen.*

## 15.

- Ich wil trûren varen lân.  
âf die heide sul wir gân,  
ir vil liebe gespilen mîn,  
dâ seh wir der bluomen schîn.*  
120 *ich sage dir, ich sage dir,  
mîn geselle, kum mit mir.*

*Süeze Minne, râme mîn,  
mache mir ein krenzeln.  
daz sol tragen ein stolzer man,*

---

101 *kume kum!* As a rule the ending *-e* in the 2nd sing. imperative is confined to weak verbs while strong verbs end in consonant (with a few exceptions). Cf. *kum* (stv) *und mache* (wv) in lines 106 and 107. In cases like this one (in lines 101 and 104) where the imperative is repeated (to indicate insistent or impatient command) the first imperative form has the ending *-e* in spite of the strong inflection of the verb. — 115 *wil ez...* "if it does not..." 116 *varen = varn.* — 117 *sul wir* Cf. §163. — 118 *seh wir* Cf. §163.

125 *der wol wîben dienen kan.  
ich sage dir, ich sage dir,  
mîn geselle, kum mit mir.*

## 16.

“Töhterlîn . . . du solt niht minnen  
ê du kumest ze vier und zweinzec jâren.  
130 *Wie sol ich der selben rede beginnen?  
ez minnte noch ein kint nie bî zwelf jâren.”*  
“Müeterlîn,  
lâ daz sîn.  
ich wil iemer leben nâch dem willen mîn.”  
135 *tochter dâ, tender lender lenderlîn.*

“Töhterlîn, genc âz dem boumgarten  
unde volge dîner muoter lêre.  
Du solt niht tumber liute rede warten.  
tuostu daz, des hâstu prîs und êre.”  
140 “Müeterlîn,  
lâ daz sîn.  
ich wil iemer leben nâch dem willen mîn.”  
*tochter dâ, tender lender lenderlîn.*

“Töhterlîn, gedenke an Friderûnen,  
145 <sup>she</sup> *wie diu wart mit einem man ze schalle.*  
*Dô wolte si ze vil mit im gerûnen.*  
*dô machte er ir daz hâr ze einem balle.*  
*Daz geschach:*  
*ich daz sach*

150 *daz er ir den spiegel an der sîten brach.”*  
*tochter dâ, tender lender lenderlîn.*

---

128 Poem No. 16 is an anonymous imitation of Neidhart's art. Cf. Selected Readings IX. — 136 *genc* = *ganc* cf. §56. — 144 *Friderûne* is mentioned in Neidhart's songs.

## XI. *Wie der duffel zwey elitt verwurtte.*

(Cf. W. Hartmann, *Salomon und Markolf* [Halle: Niemeyer, 1934] v. 947-v. 1033. Cf. Alfred Senn in *The Journal of English and Germanic Philology*, Vol. 36, No. 1 (January 1937, p. 131 sq.)

- Iz was ein gut man und sin wip,  
die ire sele und iren lip  
hielden in aller bescheidenheit.  
Daz was dem duffel allzu leit  
5 und riet allez, daz er wiste  
mit mancher hande liste,  
wie daz er sie brechte zu falle.  
Daz enhalff in nit mit alle.  
Ein bose wip im wider quam.*
- 10 *Ir rede sie alsus anheben began:  
"Sage an: wan kommestu?"  
Der duffel sprach: "ich sagen dir nu:  
ich enkan mit keinen sachen  
die zwei uneindrechtig gemachen".*
- 15 *Sie sprach: "daz dich got schende!  
Wie bist du so unbehende!  
Wuldestu mir etwaz geben,  
ich wulde sie dun mit schanden leben".  
"Ja" sprach der duffel, "daz wil ich dun;  
20 ich brengen dir zwen nurwe schun".  
Alsus vollen ging ir zweier mart.  
Daz bose wip zu rade wart,  
daz sie zu der frauwen ging,  
ir rede alsus ane fing:*
- 25 *"Frauwe, wuldet ir iz vor gut verstan:  
uwern schaden ich vernommen han;  
den wolde ich uch gerne kunden  
als miner lieben frunden."  
Sie sprach: "ja nu saget mir an!"*
- 30 *Sie sprach: "ir hant einen man,*



- der uch groze undruwe deit  
 und mit andern wiben umb geit".  
 "Ich engleubenz nit", sprach daz wip.  
 Sie sprach: "iz ist ware uff minen lip.  
 35 Dar zu kan ich wol geben rat,  
 obe uch min rat nit versmat".  
 Die frauwe sprach da einfeldigliche:  
 "Nein ich sicherliche".  
 Sie sprach: "So er noch hint bi uch sitzet  
 40 und bi dem fure inthützet,  
 so beginnet er zu slaffen.  
 Behendecliche sollet ir rauffen  
 ein lang har under siner kelen.  
 Daz sollet ir ime stelen,  
 45 mit eime mezzzer abe sniden.  
 Des ensal mich nieman widerstriden,  
 daz ime daz wip wirt leit,  
 daz er iz nummer me gedeit."  
 Die frauwe sprach: "Daz wil ich geruchen  
 50 und wil die buze versuchen".  
 Sus schiet die zeuberin von danne  
 und quam zu dem selben manne,  
 da er bi sime pluge ging.  
 Ir rede sie alsus ane fing:  
 55 "Uch mag wondern, wo her ich kommen:  
 ich kommen her durch uwer frommen;  
 wan ir sint ein guder lip.  
 Ir sollent wizzen, daz uwer wip  
 eime andern manne ist heimelich."  
 60 "Daz ist nit ware sicherlich".  
 "Und wellet ir die warheit sehen,  
 so irfarent ir, waz uch mag geschehen,"  
 sprach die bose alde.  
 "Noch hint also balde  
 65 nach dem ezzen sollet ir slaffen.

- So sal sie uch nach der kelen rauffen  
und wil uch die enzwei sniden.  
Den dot muzzent ir da liden,  
were ich nit zu uch kommen.*
- 70 *Daz han ich verwar vernommen.  
Her umb so sollet ir slafen nit,  
biz ir die warheit selber gesiet.”  
Des nachtes, da er heim quam,  
slaffens er sich ane nam.*
- 75 *Die frauwe hatte ein mezzter gesucht.  
Sie wolde iz dun durch gut  
und begunde ime abe sniden daz har.  
Da daz der man wart gewar,  
er begreiff sie bi der strozzen*
- 80 *und begunde sie slahen und stozzen,  
biz daz sie da dot bleib.  
Daz bose wip daz dreib,  
da daz der duffel nit kunde gedun.  
Des bracht er ir zwen nuwe schun,*
- 85 *die langete er ir an eime stecken;  
den muzt er ir dar recken  
und sprach: “sam mir min wan:  
ich engagedar nit nahe bi dich gan.  
Des geben ich dir die meisterschaft”.*

This poem, whose language shows many forms characteristic of the Middle Franconian dialect, is recorded in five manuscripts of the 15th century. Its original form, however, goes probably back to the 13th century. The language of this text differs from regular MHG (Upper German) mainly in the following points:

1) It has *d* instead of *t*: (ge)dun = (ge)tuon, duffel and diufel = tiufel, rade = râte, hielden = hielten, guder = guoter, alde = alte, dot = tôt, dreib = treib, engagedar = engetar, undruwe = untruwe, uneindrechtig = uneintrechtic.

2) Initial *p*- instead of *ph*-: pluge = phluoge.

3) *u* instead of *uo*: gut = guot, zu = zuo (ze), (ge)dun = (ge)tuon, schun = schuon, buze = buoze, geruchen = geruochen, versuchen = versuochen, pluge = phluoge.

4) *u* instead of *iu* or *ü* or *üe*: *nurwe* = *nirwe*, *urwer(n)* = *iurwer(n)*, *uch* = *iuch*, *undruwe* = *untruwe*, *fure* = *fiure*, *frunden* = *friunden*, *kunden* = *künden*, *muzzent* = *müezent*.

5) *o* instead of *æ*: *bose* = *bæse*.

6) *i* instead of *ie*: *ging* = *gienc*, *fing* = *fienc*.

7) The first person sing. ind. pres. ending in *-en*: *sagen* (12), *brogen* (20), *gleuben* (33), *kommen* (55, 56), *geben* (89).

8) The third person sing. ind. pres. *deit* = *tuot*, *geit* = *gât* or *gêt*.

9) The second plur. ending in *-nt*: *ir sint*, *ir sollent*, *irfarent ir*, *muzzent ir*; but also *sollet ir*.

10) Preterit subjunctive of *wellen*: *wulde*, *wuldest*, *wuldet*. Cf. §92.

11) *die* instead of *din*. Cf. §12.

12) *nit* = *niht*.

13) *brogen* instead of *bringen* "to bring".

14) The preterit *quam quâmen* of *komen* (*quemen*) is characteristic of Middle German in contrast to Alemannic *kam kâmen* and Bavarian *kom kômen*.

15) Notice the following spellings: a) *sele* = *sêle*, *brechte* = *brächte*, *were* = *wære*, *ware* = *wâre*, *sin* = *sîn*, *wip* = *wîp*, *lip* = *lîp*, etc. b) Double consonants: *duffel*, *uff*, *rauffen*, *slaffen*, *enhalff*, *begreifff* = *tiufel*, *ûf*, *roufen*, *slâfen*, *enhalf*, *begreif*; *vernommen*, *kommen*, *frommen* = *vernomen*, *komen*, *fromen*; *stozzen* = *stôzen*; *verwurte* = *verwurte*.

Annotations to various verses:

Title: *elitt* = *ê-liute* "married people". — 4 *allzu* = *alze*. — 6 *mancher* = *maneger*. — 8 *nit mit alle* "not at all". — 9 *im wider quam* "met him". — 11 *sage an* "speak up!" — 13 *mit keinen sachen* "with nothing". — 20 *zwen* = *zwêne*. *schun* weak plural of *schuo* "shoe". — 33 *gleuben* = *geloube*. — 36 *versmat* = *versmât* (*versmâhet*), inf. *versmâ(he)n* wv. — 37 *einfeldigliche* "in her simple way". — 38 *nein* has here already the modern German meaning. — 39 *hint* = *hînte*. 42 *sollet* = *sult*; cf. §33 d. *rauffen* wv "to pluck". — 46 *ensal* cf. §33 d. — 47 "that he will get tired of the woman". — 48 *nummer* = *nimmer*. — 51 *zeuberin* "the old hag". — 55 *wondern* = *wundern*. *wo her* "from where". — 56 *durch uuern frommen* "in order to help you". — 60 *sicherlich* = *sicherlîchen*. — 62 *irfarent* cf. *ervarn*. — 66 *sal* cf. §63. *rauffen* wv "to stretch out one's hand after a th." — 71 *her umb* "therefore". — 72 *gesiet* = *gesehet*. — 73 *des nachtes* cf. §153 b. — 74 *sich an nemen* with gen. of the infinitive "to get ready to". — 75 *hatte* cf. §81 b. — 76 *durch gut* cf. verse 56. — 86 *muzt* = *muose*; cf. §79 b. — 87 *sam mir mîn wân* elliptic expression: "Well, I never!" Cf. §86, 39.



# APPENDICES

---

## I. Biographical Notes on MHG Authors.

1. The authors of the *Nibelungenlied* and *Kudrun* are not known.

2. *Der von Kürenberg*. This poet, either an Austrian or Bavarian, composed his short songs during the second half of the twelfth century. We have, however, no data enabling us to identify this person. Cf. Bartsch-Golther, *Deutsche Liederdichter des zwölften bis vierzehnten Jahrhunderts*. Seventh edition. pp. XXXII-XXXIV. Friedrich Vogt, *Des Minnesangs Frühling*. Fifth edition. pp. 266-276.

3. *Dietmar von Eist*. Austrian. His poems were composed around 1180. Cf. Bartsch-Golther pp. XXXIV-XXXV. Friedrich Vogt pp. 305-317. Kurt Rathke, *Dietmar von Aist (Form und Geist 28)*.

4. *Heinrich von Veldeke*. A Low German (Belgian) who flourished during the last quarter of the twelfth century. He is the author of songs (in which he imitated the French) and of two epic poems, namely *The Legend of St. Servatius* and the *Eneit* (*Æneid*). The latter epic, on which he worked in the year 1174 and then again about ten years later, made him famous. Cf. Bartsch-Golther p. XXXVII-XXXVIII. Friedrich Vogt pp. 335-347. Friedrich Wilhelm, *Sanct Servatius oder Wie das erste Reis in deutscher Zunge geimpft wurde. Ein Beitrag zur Kenntnis des religiösen und literarischen Lebens in Deutschland im elften und zwölften Jahrhundert*. Munich 1910.

5. *Reinmar* (around 1155-1210). Since there was a younger poet by the name of Reinmar (called *Reinmar von Zweter*) our poet is called the *Elder Reinmar* or *Reinmar von Hagenau*. He was born an Alsatian (at Hagenau) but lived later at the court of the duke of Austria in Vienna. Walther von der Vogelweide was his pupil. Cf. Bartsch-Golther pp. XLIII-XLIV. Friedrich Vogt pp. 409-437.

6. *Hartmann von Aue*. Born around 1165 somewhere south of the Rhine (in present-day Switzerland), died between 1210 and 1220. In addition to his lyric poetry, he is also the author of several epic poems: *Erec*, *Iwein*, *Gregorius*, *Armer Heinrich*, and the so-called *Büchlein*. Cf. Bartsch-Golther pp. XLVI–XLVII. Friedrich Vogt pp. 437–449. H. Sparnaay, *Hartmann von Aue. Studien zu einer Biographie*. Halle 1933.

7. *Walther von der Vogelweide*. Apparently an Austrian, born shortly before 1170, died around 1230. He is today the most popular representative of Middle High German lyric poetry. Cf. Bartsch-Golther pp. XLVIII–L. Wilmanns-Michels, *Walther von der Vogelweide*. I: *Leben und Dichten Walthers von der Vogelweide*; 2nd edition, Halle 1916. II: *Lieder und Sprüche Walthers von der Vogelweide mit erklärenden Anmerkungen*; 4th edition, Halle 1924. Lachmann-Kraus, *Gedichte Walthers von der Vogelweide*; 10th edition, Berlin and Leipzig 1936. Carl von Kraus, *Walther von der Vogelweide. Untersuchungen*. Berlin and Leipzig 1935. These last two publications critically reviewed by Alfred Senn in *The Journal of English and Germanic Philology*, Vol. 36, No. 4 (October, 1937).

8. *Neidhart von Reuental*. A Bavarian knight who lived from the end of the twelfth to the middle of the thirteenth century. He was very successful and much imitated as an author of popular and satiric poems in which he ridiculed the peasants. Cf. Bartsch-Golther pp. LII–LIV.

9. *Der Stricker*. He flourished between 1220 and 1250 in Austria as the author of numerous short stories in verse and of the epic poems *Daniel von Blumental* and *Karl*. Cf. Carl von Kraus, *Mittelhochdeutsches Übungsbuch*; 2nd edition, pp. 279–287.

## II. Middle High German Versification

10. The *rhyme* is either masculine (stumpf) or feminine (klingend).

11. **Monosyllabic** rhyme is always masculine, e.g., *hêr/Gêr, erkant/lant, gebôt/nôt, truoc/genuoc*.

12. **Dissyllabic** rhyme is:

A) *masculine*, if the accented syllable is light, i.e., if it consists of a short vowel followed by one short consonant, e.g.,

*abe, habe, gehabe, grabe; trage, klage, tage, sage, entsage, verzage, missehage. lebe, gebe, begeben; pflege, lege, gelege; sehe, gesehe, geschehe. mile, site.*

*klagen, tagen, dagen, sagen, gesagen, tragen, getragen, bejagen, behagen, erslagen, zerlagen. geben, leben, gegeben, vergeben, sweben; pflegen, degen, wegen, bewegen, gelegen, stegen; jehen, sehen, versehen, gesehen, geschehen, beschehen, speken; nemen, gezemen; wesen, gewesen, genesen. biten, siten, ritzen, gemiten, erliten, gestritzen. gelogen, betrogen, erzogen; komen, genomen, benomen, vernomen; kosen, phosen.*

*nider, wider, sider.*

*kumet, frumet.*

*verjehet, beschest.*

*jugent, tugent.*

B) *feminine*, if the penult is heavy with either a long or a short vowel, e.g.,

1) with a long vowel or a diphthong:

*mâge, vrâge; gebâren, jâren, slâfen, wâfen, sprâchen, gâhen. êre, mêre. lâge, pflâge, sâhe, geschâhe, stâte, tâte, bâte. libe, wibe, wiben, vertriben. lône, schône, krône. schânet, gehânet. biuget, fliuget. leien, zweien, meien, reien, scheiden, leiden, eigen, neigen; alleine, kleine, gemeine. ougen, lougen; houbet, geloubet. liegen, triegen, diezen, fliezen, geniezen, verdriezen. muote, guote; schuofen, ruofen.*

2) with a short vowel followed by one long consonant or by a group of consonants, e.g.,

a) *gallen, gevallen; schalle, gevalle, balle; helle, geselle.*

*mannen, dannen; genennet, erkennet; inne, drinne, minne, sinne, küniginne, zinne; minnen, beginnen; geminnet, gewinnet; gewonnen, zerunnen, sunnen, gunnen; wünne, künne.*

*verre, herre.*

*versezzen, vergezzen.*

*gemachet, gelachet, enswachet, gewachet; gerochen, gesprochen.*

b) *nihete, gerihete; varwe, garwe, gerne, sterne, erde, werde, erstirbet, verdirbet, erstorben, verdorben; gewürme, stürme. wolten, sollten; schulde, hulde. geschande, lande; landen, schanden; kunde, gunde; wunder, besunder; vindet, swindet; linden, vinden; singen, misselingen; rungen, gerungen, gelungen, sungen, gesungen, zungen, betwungen; gegangen, enpfangen.*



13. **Trisyllabic rhyme** (so-called "Gleitender Reim") is always feminine, e.g., *sedele/edele*.

14. In the older poems, especially Kudrun, Kürenberg, Dietmar, to a certain extent also in the Nibelungenlied, we often find only correspondence of the vowels, but not of the consonants (so-called **assonance**) e.g., *wünne/künde, zinne/singen, sî/sîn, jâr/hân, fliegen/riemen, alleine/heide, liebes/fliegen, walde/gevalle, ougen/frouwen, lieb/niet, eigen/heiden*.

15. In classical Middle High German (Veldeke, Reinmar, Hartmann, Walther) the vowels of rhyming syllables had to be completely identical both in quality and quantity. In the earlier period (e.g., Nibelungenlied) the rule was not so strict. Hence, we find there such rhymes as *man/getân, gewan/undertân*. Walther von der Vogelweide in his elegy has a rhyme *gar/jâr* (455/56) since he imitated there the archaic meter of the Nibelungenlied.

### Rhyme Combinations

16. **Rhyme-couplet** (Reimpaar): *a a b b c c, etc.*

17. **Alternating rhyme** (gekreuzter or überschlagender Reim): *a b a b*.

18. **Zwischenreim** or **Schweifreim**: *a a b c c b*.

19. **Embracing rhyme** (umarmender or umschließender Reim): *a b b a*.

20. **Internal rhyme** (Binnenreim): Two rhyming words occurring in the same line, e.g., *süezen . . . müezen* Neidhart 34.

21. **Adjacent rhyme** (Schlagreim): Two rhyming words in the same line without any other word separating them, e.g.,

*singen springen sol diu jugent  
die alten walten alter tugent.*

22. **Interlocking rhyme** (Kettenreim): The last word of a line rhymes with a word inside a preceding or a following line, e.g.,

*betwungen* Neidhart 39 and 40.  
*gesingen/getelingen* Neidhart 45/46.

23. **Intensified rhyme.** Where correspondence of the vowel sounds (assonance) reaches beyond the accented syllable we have intensified or increased rhyme. a) We speak of **extended rhyme** (erweiterter Reim) if the additional corresponding vowels belong to the same word as the rhyming syllables proper, e.g.,

<i>betwu'ngen/gesu'ngen</i>	Neidhart	40/42
<i>ingebe'r/Willehe'r</i>	"	62/63
<i>gemi'nnet/gewi'nnet</i>	Walther	301/304
<i>ersto'rben/verdo'rben</i>	"	346/349.

b) If, however, the additional vowels do not belong to the same word, we get **rich rhyme** (reicher Reim), e.g.,

<i>stat gedru'ngen / traz gespru'ngen</i>	Neidhart	52/54
<i>ander schu'ofen / vaste ru'ofen</i>	"	64/66
<i>er ze swære / gerner wære</i>	Kudrun	71, 3-4
<i>wilden sê / griulichen wê</i>	"	77, 3-4
<i>tage wîle / lange mîle</i>	"	80, 3-4.

24. Grammatical Rhyme Cf. Reinmar No. 7.

Rührender Reim (perfect rhyme) Cf. Reinmar 127, 145; Veldeke 7. Körner Cf. Reinmar 16 and Walther 64.

Waise Cf. Reinmar 16 and No. 4.

### Rhythm

25. In classical MHG poetry there is regular alternation of one accented and one unaccented syllable. However, a final vowel is often dropped if the next word begins with a vowel. Furthermore, words like *es*, *sî*, *ez* often lose their vowel and the remaining consonant (*s* or *z*) is attached to the preceding (or the following) word. The prefixes *be-* and *ge-* lose their vowel very frequently. Light syllables, when accented, are often followed by two unaccented syllables instead of only one, e.g.,

<i>ich klage dîn edelen kunst</i> (Walther 349):	$\times\acute{\times}\times\acute{\times}\times\acute{\times}$ .
<i>und habe dîn zunge danc</i> (Walther 356):	$\times\acute{\times}\times\acute{\times}\times\acute{\times}$ .
<i>künige</i> (Walther 199 and 207):	$\acute{\times}\times$ .

26. For the versification of the **Nibelungenlied** cf. §138.

27. In the *Kudrunstrophe* a couplet of masculine rhymes is regularly followed by a couplet of feminine rhymes and the eighth half-line has five beats instead of four. Otherwise there is no difference from the *Nibelungenstrophe*. There are, however, quite a number of pure *Nibelungenstrophes* to be found in *Kudrun*.

28. *Kürenberg's strophe* is almost identical with the *Nibelungenstrophe*. Cf. §138.

### Metrical Patterns of the Lyric Poems

29. In the following discussion letters (*abc...*) refer to the rhyme while figures indicate the number of beats occurring in a line. A line of four beats with an unaccented syllable at its beginning (anacrusis) and with a masculine rhyme *a* is represented as  $\times 4a$  while a line of four beats with an accented syllable at its beginning and with a feminine rhyme *b* appears as  $4b\times$ .

If a song consists of more than one stanza, the metrical structure of all stanzas is the same.

#### 30. Dietmar von Eist:

No. 1 (lines 1-18): 1st stanza:  $8a$   $8a$   $4b\times$   $\times 4b\times$   $\times 2c\times$   $6c\times$   
 2nd " :  $\times 8a$   $8a$   $4b\times$   $\times 4b\times$   $2c\times$   $6c\times$   
 3rd " :  $\times 8a$   $\times 8a$   $4b\times$   $4b\times$   $2c\times$   $\times 6c\times$ .

No. 2:  $\times 3a\times$   $\times 3a\times$  |  $\times 3b\times$   $\times 3b\times$  ||  $\times 4c$   $\times 4c$  ||  $\times 3d\times$   $\times 3d\times$  ||  $4e$   $4e$  ||  
 $\times 3f\times$   $\times 3f\times$  ||  $\times 4g$   $\times 5g$ .

In two instances there is no "Senkung" between two beats:

*warte* ( $\acute{\quad} \acute{\quad}$ ) in line 21

*lieb ist* ( $\acute{\quad} \acute{\quad}$ ) in line 24.

Several times there are two (even three) syllables in one "Senkung" (cf. §138), e.g.,

25  $\times \times \acute{\quad} \times \times \acute{\quad} \times \acute{\quad} \times$ , 26  $\times \times \acute{\quad} \times \acute{\quad} \times \acute{\quad} \times$ , 28  $\acute{\quad} \times \acute{\quad} \times \acute{\quad} (\times) \times \times \acute{\quad}$ ,  
 29  $\times \times \acute{\quad} \times \acute{\quad} \times \acute{\quad} \times$ , 32  $\times \times \acute{\quad} \times \acute{\quad} \times \acute{\quad} \times \acute{\quad} \times \acute{\quad}$ .

These words lose their unaccented *e*: *frouwe* (19), *gesach* (22), *selbe* (28), *engerte* (32).

No. 3: The pattern is  $\times 3a\times$   $\times 3a\times$   $\times 4b$   $\times 5b$ .

Peculiarities: Line 33 has no anacrusis; 42 has four feet instead of three.

31. In classical MHG lyric poetry (approximately beginning with the year 1184) we find a **tripartition** of each stanza, namely,

- 1) the so-called first "Stollen",
- 2) the second "Stollen",
- 3) the so-called "Abgesang".

The rhythmic structure of the second Stollen is always the same as that of the first one. The Abgesang may be short or long. In modern publications the beginning of each part is indicated by a capital letter. Cf. Heinrich von Veldeke:

No. 1: *Tristan* (line 1), *Wan* (line 3), *Des* (line 5).

No. 2: *Sît* (13), *Und* (15), *Trûric* (17).

32. Dietmar von Eist No. 4 shows this tripartition:

$\times 4a \times 4a \times 3b \times \mid \times 4c \times 4c \times 3b \times \parallel \times 4d \times 7d.$

Peculiarity: 47 has no anacrusis.

33. Heinrich von Veldeke:

No. 1:  $\times 4a \ 4b \times \mid \times 4a \ 4b \parallel$   
 $4a \ 4a \ 4b \times \ 4c \ 2d \times \ 2d \times \ 3c \ 3c.$

No. 2:  $4a \ 4b \times \mid 4a \ 4b \parallel$   
 $4a \ \times 4a \ 4b \times \ 4c \ \times 2d \times \ \times 2d \times \ 3c \ 3c.$

34. Reinmar der Alte:

No. 1:  $\times 4a \ \times 4b \mid \times 4a \ \times 4b \parallel$   
 $\times 4c \times \ \times 5c \times \ \times 4d \ \times 7d.$

No. 2:  $\times 4a \ \times 5b \mid \times 4a \ \times 5b \parallel$   
 $\times 5b \ \times 6b \ 7c \ 3d \ \times 6c.$

Verses 6 and 7 have a long cesura followed by an unaccented syllable in verse 6, but by an accented syllable in verse 7.

Verse 8 is dactylic.

Verse 6:  $\times \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \mid \times \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times}$

" 7:  $\acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \mid \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times}$

" 8:  $\acute{\times} \times \acute{\times} \times \acute{\times}$ .

No. 3:  $\times 4a \ \times 6b \times \mid \times 4a \ \times 6b \times \parallel$   
 $\times 4c \ \times 7c \ \times 5d \times \ \times 9d \times.$

No. 4:  $\times 4a \times 3b \ 5c \mid \times 4a \times 3b \ 5c \parallel$   
 $5d \times 7d \times 4e \times 4f \times 7e.$

No. 5:  $4a \ 4b \mid 4a \ 4b \parallel$   
 $4c \ 9c.$  Long cesura between the fifth and the sixth beat of the last line ( $\text{'}\times\text{'}\times\text{'}\times\text{'}\times\text{'}\times\text{'}\mid\text{'}\times\text{'}\times\text{'}\times\text{'}$ ). The last line can be divided into two verses in which case verse 6 of each stanza would be a "Waise" (cf. Reinmar 16).

No. 6:  $\times 4a \times 4b \mid \times 4a \times 4b \parallel$   
 $\times 4a \times 4b \times 2c \times 2c \times 4c \times 4b.$

Reinmar's authorship of this poem has been questioned.

No. 7:  $\times 4a \times 4b \mid \times 4a \times 4b \parallel$   
 $\times 2c \times 2d \times \times 2c \times 2d \times \times 3e \times 3f \times \times 4e \times 3f \times.$

### 35. Hartmann von Aue:

No. 1:  $\times 4a \times 7b \mid \times 4a \times 7b \parallel$   
 $5c \times 2d \quad \times 2d \times 5c.$

No. 2:  $\times 4a \times 2b \times 4a \times 2b \mid \times 4c \times 2d \times 4c \times 2d \parallel$   
 $\times 3e \times 3e \times 3f \times 4f.$

No. 3:  $\times 4a \times 4b \mid \times 4a \times 4b \parallel$   
 $\times 4c \times 8c.$

No. 4:  $\times 6a \times \times 5b \mid \times 6a \times \times 5b \parallel$   
 $\times 7c \quad \times 7d \quad \times 6d \times 6c.$

No. 5:  $\times 4a \quad \times 4b \mid \times 4a \times 4b \parallel$   
 $5c \quad \times 4d \quad \times 4c \times 4d \times 4e \times 4e.$

### 36. Walther von der Vogelweide:

No. 1: First and second Stollen in stanzas 1 and 3:  
 $\times 4a \ 4b \ 4c \mid \times 4a \ 4b \ 4c \parallel$

First and second Stollen in stanzas 2 and 4:  
 $4a \ 4b \ 4c \mid 4a \ 4b \ 4c \parallel$

Abgesang:

$5d \times \ 4d \times \times 4e \times 5f \times 4e.$

No. 2:  $5a \ 5b \mid 5a \ 5b \parallel$   
 $4c \ 4d \times \ 4c.$

Anacrusis in lines 53, 55, 63, 65, 69, 70, 71.

No. 3:  $5a \times 4b \mid 5a \times 4b \parallel$   
 $\times 4c \times 4d \times 3c.$   
 Anacrusis in line 95.

No. 4:  $5a \ 3b \mid 5a \ 3b \parallel$   
 $3c \times 4d \ 5d \ 3c \times.$

No. 5:  $3a \times 2b \times \times 4c \mid 3a \times 2b \times \times 4c \parallel$   
 $4d \ 2e \ 4d.$

Nos. 6 and 7 ("Reichston"): Alternating rhyme-couplets with rising  
 rhythm:  $\times 3a \times \times 3a \times \mid$   
 $\times 4b \times 4b \mid \times 3c \times \times 3c \times \mid \times 4d \times 4d \mid,$  etc.

The lines with feminine rhyme have three beats and those with  
 masculine rhyme four.

Peculiarities: 180  $\acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times}$   
 203  $\times \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \mid \acute{\times}$   
 219  $\times \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times}.$

A tripartition can be established in the following way:

I	II	III
$\left( \begin{array}{l} (\times 3a \times \\ \times 3a \times \\ (\times 4b \\ \times 4b \end{array} \right)$	$\left( \begin{array}{l} (\times 3e \times \\ \times 3e \times \\ (\times 4f \\ \times 4f \end{array} \right)$	$\left( \begin{array}{l} (\times 3i \times \\ \times 3i \times \\ (\times 4j \\ \times 4j \end{array} \right)$
$\left( \begin{array}{l} (\times 3c \times \\ \times 3c \times \\ (\times 4d \\ \times 4d \end{array} \right)$	$\left( \begin{array}{l} (\times 3g \times \\ \times 3g \times \\ (\times 4h \\ \times 4h \end{array} \right)$	$\left( \begin{array}{l} (\times 3k \times \\ \times 3k \times \\ (\times 4l \\ \times 4m \\ \times 4l \end{array} \right)$

The same rhythm occurs also in §131.

Nos. 8, 9, 10, 13, 14 (The "First Philippton"):  
 $\times 6a \times 6a \times 5b \times \mid \times 6c \times 6c \times 5b \times \parallel$   
 $\times 4d \times 6d \times 5e \times \quad \times 4f \times 6f \times 5e \times.$

Peculiarities: 244  $\acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times}$   
 245  $\acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times}$   
 248  $\acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times}$   
 249  $\acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times}$   
 311  $\times \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times} \acute{\times}.$

Nos. 11 and 12 ("Wiener Hofton"):

$\times 4a \quad \times 4a \quad \times 5b \times \mid \times 4c \quad \times 4c \quad \times 5b \times \parallel$   
 $\times 4d \times \quad \times 4d \times \quad \times 4e \quad \times 5f \times \quad \times 4g \times \quad \times 4g \times \quad \times 4e \quad \times 5f \times \quad \times 4e.$   
 There is no anacrusis in lines 269, 272, 273, 286, 289.

No. 15 (The "Second Philippston"):

$\times 3a \times \quad \times 4b \quad \times 3c \times \mid \times 3a \times \quad \times 4b \quad \times 3c \times \parallel$   
 $\times 4d \quad \times 4d \quad \times 4d \quad \times 3e \times \quad \times 4f \quad \times 4f \quad \times 4f \quad \times 5e \times.$

Nos. 16 and 17 ("Leopoldston"):

$\times 4a \quad \times 4a \quad \times 5b \times \mid \times 4c \quad \times 4c \quad \times 5b \times \parallel$   
 $\times 5d \times \quad \times 5d \times \quad \times 7e \quad \times 5f \times \quad \times 5f \times \quad \times 7e \quad \times 7e.$   
 There is no anacrusis in lines 343, 345, 346.

Note that the name *Reimâr* (336 and 344) has the main stress on the second syllable.

No. 18:  $4a \times \quad 4b \mid 4a \times \quad 4b \parallel$

$4c \quad 4c \quad 4c.$

Anacrusis in line 359.

No. 19: The general metrical pattern has rising rhythm in the two Stollens and falling rhythm in the Abgesang:

$\times 6a \times \quad \times 6b \mid \times 6a \times \quad \times 6b \parallel$   
 $5b \quad 5c \quad 5c.$

There are, however, several infractions to this rule:

a) Falling rhythm: 408, 421, 422.

b) Rising rhythm: 419, 424, 426, 433.

c) Lines 421, 423, 428, and 430 have one metrical foot more than the corresponding lines of the first two stanzas.

No. 20: In this poem, the so-called elegy, Walther imitated the archaic meter of the Nibelungenstrophe. Each line is divided by a cesura and each half-line has three beats. Cf. §15 of the Appendix.

### 37. Neidhart von Reuenthal:

No. 1:  $\times 3a \times \quad \times 3a \times \quad 4b \quad 2b \quad 2c \quad 4c.$

Peculiarities: a) Falling rhythm: 8, 13.

b) Rising rhythm: 6.

No. 2:  $4a \quad 4a \quad 2b \quad 2b \quad 4b.$

Anacrusis: 24, 25, 29, 33.

No. 3:  $7a \times \quad 7b \quad 7a \times \quad 7b \quad 8c \quad 11c.$



# VOCABULARY

---

Plain figures refer to sections of the grammar but figures preceded by capital letters to the footnotes to the selected readings. The following abbreviations are used: A = Anonymous Songs, D = Dietmar von Eist, H = Hartmann von Aue, K = Kudrun, N = Nibelungenlied, R = Reinmar der Alte, V = Heinrich von Veldeke, W = Walther von der Vogelweide, Neid. = Neidhart von Reuenthal.

## A

**ab, abe** *prep. w. dat.* from

**ab** *adv.* = **aber**

**âbenden** *ww impers.:* ez âbendet  
evening is drawing near

**âbent(d)** *stm (a)* evening

**aber** *adv.* again; however

**adelvri** noble and free, belonging to the independent aristocracy (in contrast with such noblemen who are vassals of kings)

**aventure** *stf (ô)* authority, sources from which a writer draws his information

**ahsel** *stf (ô)* shoulder; **über a.** over her shoulder

**ahte** *stf (ô)* manner, way

**ahte, ähte** eight

**ahten** *ww impers.:* ez ahtet mich  
I care; it matters to me

**ahten** *ww* to arrange

**al** *adj.* all, entire, every. 42.

any: **ân alle helfe** without any help; **al and allez** *adv.* entirely;

**al dâ** at the very place where

**alder** or, otherwise

**aleine, alleine** all alone

**allenthalben** everywhere

**allerbeste** (the) best of all

**allerêrst(e)** for the first time; only now

**allergrœziste** the greatest

**allerhœchste** the highest of all

**allertâgeliç(en)** *adv.* every single day

**allerwiseste** the wisest of all

**allesam** all together

**allez** *adv.* 1) entirely; 2) all the time

**alrêrst(e)** (for) the (very) first time

**alrôt** all red

**als** like; as; just as; according to what; as soon as; as far as;

just so. *In a clause denoting a consequence:* that (N 288, 3);

**als . . . als** as . . . as

**alsam** 1) *adv.* likewise. *After a comparative:* than D 49; 2) *adj.*

just like; as; as if

**a'lse** so, like this. R 24; A 4

**alsô** 1) *adv.* thus, so, in such a way; so much, to such a degree;

2) *conj.* just as, just like; as soon as  
**alsoh** = emphasized **solh**  
**alsölich** *such.* K 1636, 3  
**alsus** like this, thus, so  
**alt** old  
**alten** *ww* to grow old  
**alze** far too (much)  
**alzelanc** far too long  
**âmeize** *wf ant*  
**an** *prep.* 1) *w. dat.* on, in, at; **an der hant** in his hand; from (N 1224, 4); about (N 100, 1); with regard to (N 328, 3); **an behaben** to win from (N 330, 3); 2) *w. acc.* to, at; **an dîne hant** into your hand; **an sehen** to look at  
**ân** *prep. w. acc.* without  
**ande** *wm* grievous wrong  
**ander** second; other; **a. niemen** nobody else  
**anders** *adv.* otherwise  
**anderswâ** elsewhere  
**anderthalben, anderthalp** *adv.* on the other side  
**âne** 1) *prep. w. acc.* without; 2) *postpos. w. gen.* without, free of  
**anelich** similar, like  
**ânen** *wv refl. w. gen.* to be without a th.  
**ange** *adv. (adj. enge)* secretly, exclusively. 131, 6  
**anger** *stm* (a) meadow  
**angest** *stf* (i) fear  
**anges(t)lich** *adj.* dreadful, terrible  
**angestliche** *adv.* dreadfully (N 466, 4)  
**angestlichen** *adv.* full of fear (N 991, 2)  
**anheben** *stv* (VI) to start

**antwürten** *wv* (*pret. antwurte*) *w. dat. of p. and gen. of th.* to answer, to reply. 102  
**ar** *wm* eagle. 119  
**arc(g)** wicked  
**ar(e)beit** *stf* (i) hardship, labor, toil, trouble  
**arbeiten** *stn* hardship  
**arm** poor; miserable. W 411  
**arm** *stm* (a) arm  
**art** *stf* (i) nature, quality  
**ast** *stm* (i) branch

## Æ

**ænic(g)** *adj. w. gen.* without. R 63

## B

**bâbest** *stm* pope  
**baden** *wv* to bathe  
**bâgen** *stv* (VII) to quarrel  
**bal** (balles) *stm* (a) ball  
**bald, balde** *adv.* fast, quickly, promptly, immediately  
**balt(d)** *adj.* bold  
**ban** *stm* (a) jurisdiction  
**banc** *stm* (i) bench  
**bannen** *stv* (VII) to pronounce an anathema against, to excommunicate  
**bant(d)** *stn* (a) *pl.* fetters, irons  
**barke** *wf* little boat  
**baz** *compar. of wol* better. N 1577, 4  
**becher** *stm* (a) (drinking)-cup, goblet  
**bede'nken** *refl. w. gen.* to consider, to decide a th.  
**bêde** = beide  
**bedu'nken** to seem  
**bedu'rfen** *w. gen.* to need

- bevâ'hen** (*p.p.* **beva'ngen**) to hem in, to chain  
**beve'lhen** *stv* (III b) to entrust, to commit to  
**beve'stenen** *wv* to betroth to a p., to promise  
**bevi'nden** to hear, to learn about  
**bevo'llen** *adv.* completely; **b. küene** remarkably brave  
**begâ'n** to perform, to do (N 465, 3; 1006, 2); to commit (N 990, 4); to celebrate (A 80); **vriuntliche liebe b.** (N 1258, 2; literally: to enter into marital love) to obtain marital love  
**bege'ben** *w. gen.* to free, to excuse from  
**bege'gene** = **engegene**  
**begi'nnen** *stv* (III a; *cf.* 122 B) to begin, to start (*w. gen.*)  
**begra'ben** *stv* (VI) to bury  
**begrî'fen** *stv* (I a) to catch  
**beha'ben** to obtain; **an b. w. dat.** to win from; **die meisterschaft b.** to win, to be victorious  
**beha'gen** *wv* to please  
**beha'lten** *stv* (VII) to keep, to retain, to take and store away. 78 b  
**behe'ndecliche** adroitly  
**behü'eten** *wv* (*p.p.* **behüetet** and at the end of a verse: **behuot**) to look after, to guard, to watch over, to preserve, to prevent  
**beide** both. 134. **beide . . . unde** both . . . and  
**bein** *stn* (a) leg  
**beja'gen** *wv* to acquire  
**beka'nt** known; **mir ist b.** I know; **daz tuot er uns b.** he will let us know (about that)  
**beke'nnen** *wv* to become acquainted with; to identify, to recognize; to find out; to know  
**bekê'ren** to convert; **sich b.** to mend one's way  
**bekla'gen** *wv* (*p.p.* **bekleit**) to mourn, to deplore  
**beko'men** *stv* (IV) to come, to arrive; to happen to a p. (*dat.*)  
**beku'mbern** *wv* to (make) worry  
**beli'ben** *stv* (I a) to remain, to stay; **b. lân** to leave  
**bene'men** to take away, to rob (a p. of)  
**berâ'ten** *stv* (VII) *w. acc. of p. and gen. of th.* to provide, to supply a p. w. a th.; **berâten mit** provided with . . . ; **mit sorgen berâten** full of anxiety; **sich b. w. gen.** to deliberate, to take counsel about a th., to decide  
**berc(g)** *stm* (a) mountain; **ûf ze berge** up-stream  
**bere'den** *w. gen.* to clear a p. of, to vindicate a p.'s honor, to defend against  
**bere'it** *w. gen.* ready for  
**bere'ite** = **bereit**  
**bereiten** *wv* (*pret.* **bereite**, *p.p.* **bereitet**, but **bereit** in the rhyme) to make ready. 101 b  
**bergen** *stv* (III b) *refl.* to hide  
**bern** *stv* (IV) to give, to yield  
**bero'uben** *wv w. gen.* to rob a p. of  
**besche'hen** *stv* (V) to happen to a p.  
**besche'iden** *stv* (VII) to explain  
**besche'idenheit** *stf* (i) good sense, prudence  
**besche'rt sîn** to fall to a p.'s share  
**bescho'lten** disgraced, dishonored  
**bese'hen** *stv* (V) to examine

- bese'nden** to raise, to levy, to call to arms
- besi'tzen** 1) to own; 2) to sit down on (K 6, 1)
- besli'ezen** to enclose; to take K 58, 1
- best** best
- bestâ'n** 1) to remain, to stay (N 259, 3; 261, 1; 975, 4) (*p.p.* **bestân**); 2) to attack (N 93, 4; 1002, 3); to enter (into a contest) (N 432, 2); **mit strite b.** to face a p. in a combat (N 118, 4; 350, 4)
- besu'nder** *adv.* particularly, especially
- bewæ'ren** *ww* to afflict
- beten** *ww* to pray
- betiu'ten** *ww* to mean
- betrá'gen** *ww impers.* to bore, to tire
- betri'egen** to deceive, to mislead, to trap
- betrü'eben** to sadden, to bring grief upon, to make unhappy
- bette** *stn* (ja) bed
- bettestat** *stf* (i) bed, a place to lie down
- betwi'ngen** 1) to defeat, to conquer; 2) *w. gen.* to force, to compel (to do a th.); 3) *p.p.* **betwungen** distressed, afflicted: D 2
- bewa'nt: ze ieman wol bewant sin** to be closely related to, to belong to somebody for good reason
- bewa'rn** *ww* to save, to protect; to avoid, to shun, to abstain from; *p.p.* **bewart vor** *w. dat.* protected, safe from, proof against; **sich b.** to be on one's guard, to be careful
- bewæ'ren** *ww* to prove
- bewe'gen** *stv* (V) *refl. w. gen.* to put a th. out of one's mind
- bewe'inen** to deplore, to bewail
- bewi'nden** *stv* (III a) to wind, to coat with; **sich b. mit** to put on a th., to envelope o.s. in a th.
- bewi'sen** *ww* 1) to instruct, to teach; 2) *w. gen.* to indicate, to call attention to
- beze'igen** to stake out, to trace out
- bezi'te** soon
- bezzer** *adj.* better. 88 a.
- bî** *prep. w. dat.* by, at, on, with, near to, close to; during; **bî ir** by her side; **bî iu** (N 1216, 1) through you
- bide'rbe** 1) honest, upright (K 1625, 1); 2) capable, able, smart (N 457, 3; 827, 2)
- biegen** *stv* (II a) to bend
- bieten** *stv* (II b; 95 b) to offer, to propose; to extend, to stretch out; **êre b.** to do a p. honor; **ez schône b.** *w. dat.* to be kind toward; **sich b.** to throw o.s. (at a p.'s feet)
- bîhel** > **bîl** hatchet. 125
- bilde** *stn* (ja; 73) picture
- billichen** *adv.* justly
- binden** *stv* (III a; 52) to bind
- biten** and **bitten** *stv* (V; 116 d) *w. gen.* to ask (for), to entreat
- biten** *stv* (I a) to wait, to hesitate
- bitterlich** *adj.* bitter, pitiful
- bitterliche** *adv.* pitifully
- biz** until
- blâsen** *stv* (VII 1) to blow; 2) to wind; to sound the bugle, to play on the bugle
- blat** *stn* (a) leaf. W 424
- bleich** pale

**bliben = beliben**  
**blic (bliches) stm (a)** glance  
**blint(d) adj.** (37 a) blind  
**blôz** unarmed (N 458, 2), free of  
 (N 973, 3), stripped (of leaves)  
 (A 17)  
**blæde** feeble  
**bluome wm** or *wf* flower  
**bluot stn (a)** blood  
**boge wm** bow  
**boie wf pl.** fetters, shackles  
**bote wm** messenger, envoy  
**botenbrôt stn (a)** reward (for good  
 news) given to a messenger  
**botenmiete stf (ô) = botenbrôt**  
**boteschaft and botschaft stf (i)**  
 duties of a messenger, (diplo-  
 matic) mission; **in botscheffe**  
 with a message  
**boum stm (a)** tree  
**boumgarte wm** orchard  
**bowen ww** (but *p.p.* **gebowen** and  
**erbowen**) to build  
**bôzen stv (VII)** to beat (the drum)  
**bœse** wicked  
**bracke wm** bloodhound  
**brâten stv (VII)** to roast  
**brechen stv (IV; 52)** to break; to  
 surpass, to beat  
**breit** broad, wide, vast  
**brennen ww** (99 c; 102) to burn  
**bresten stv (IV)** to spurt  
**brief(v) stm (a)** letter  
**bringen ww** (69; 103; 136) to  
 bring, to take to, to call; **dar**  
**zuo br., daz . . .** to induce a p.  
 to do a th.; **zu falle br.** to cause  
 a p.'s downfall  
**bris stm (a) = pris** prize (of  
 victory), trophy  
**brôt stn (a)** bread  
**brunne wm** spring, well

**bruoder stm (142 a)** brother  
**brust stf (i)** breast  
**brût stf (i)** bride  
**brünne stf (ô)** mail-coat, cuirass  
**buckel wf** boss (in the middle of  
 the shield)  
**bunt** colored  
**buoze stf (ô) and buoz 1)** remedy;  
**mir ist buoz w. gen.** I am freed  
 of (W 248); 2) penance (W 473)  
**burc(g) stf (i)** castle, city  
**burgære stm (ja)** inhabitant of a  
 castle or a city  
**büezen ww (pret. buozte) 1)** to  
 make up for; 2) *w. dat. of p. and*  
*gen. of th.* to cure a p. of a th.  
 (K 1596, 3)  
**bürge wm** security; **bürge sîn** to  
 vouch

## D

**dâ adv. and conj. 1)** here; there;  
 where; there where (N 61, 1;  
 104, 4; 1000, 1). Often used  
 pleonastically together with in-  
 dications of places or directions:  
 N 952, 4; 976, 3; **dâ her** hither,  
 here (K 124, 2); **dâ . . . hine**  
 (N 978, 3) there; **dâ heime** at  
 home, back home; **dâ . . . dâ**  
**where; dâ her von** (K 110, 3;  
 129, 3; 144, 3) from; 2) If fol-  
 lowed by prepositions (in that  
 case more justly called "post-  
 positions") or postpositional  
 adverbs, **dâ** takes the place of  
 the dative or accusative singular  
 or plural of any gender of the  
 pronoun **der diu daz: dâ . . . ane**  
 (N 135, 2) from that; **dâ bi** by  
 that; **dâ inne** (N 1580, 3) in it,

- in there; **dâ von** (N 44, 4) = **von der**; from that (N 70, 3; 346, 4); from them (N 50, 2); on account of that, because of that (N 842, 4); of which, about which (N 21, 3; cf. 154); **dâ vor** (N 451, 2) against that, against this woman; **dâ mit** or **dâ mite** with which (N 66, 2); with them (N 138, 3); by means of which, wherewith (N 58, 4; 291, 4); in that way (W 295); **dâ wider** against that; **dâ... zuo** in regard to this (R 37)
- dach** *stm* (a) roof
- dagen** *wv* (*p.p.* **gedaht** and **gedaget**) to be silent
- dan** *adv.* 1) away to; away from; 2) then; 3) than
- danc** *stm* (a) 1) compliment, respect (N 472, 2); **d. sagen** to be thankful (N 303, 2); **einem d. sagen** *w. gen.* to applaud a p. for, to honor (N 939, 3); **einem danc wizzen** to show o.s. grateful to a p. (V 5 sq.), *w. gen.* to praise a p. for (W 12); 2) intention; **dankes** *adv.* willingly, voluntarily, of one's own accord; **sunder danc** and **âne danc** unwillingly, against one's will
- danewert** *adv.* away from, aside
- danken** *wv* 1) to thank; 2) to respond, to applaud
- danne** 1) *adv.* then, at that time. Cf. 32 A, line 23; 2) = **dannen**; 3) *conj. of comparison* than. *After a negation* but
- dannen** *adv.* away from there; **von d.** away from there
- dannoeh mêr** even more
- dar** *adv. and conj.* 1) there (N 80, 1; 299, 1; 437, 3; 538, 4); to him (N 463, 3); to her (Neid. 45); to them, toward them (N 1275, 1; 282, 2 toward the ladies); to that, for that (purpose) (N 59, 3); there where (N 52, 3 referring to a person: "that girl whom I love"); 2) = **dâ** 2.: **dar an** (N 438, 4) on it; **dar in** (N 440, 4) into it; **dar inne** (N 343, 2; 345, 2) in it; (W 440) in which; **dar nâch** after that (N 129, 1), after that (time) (N 933, 4), after it (the stone) (N 330, 1; 434, 1), in pursuit of that scheme (N 349, 4), that for which (N 544, 4), according to this (W 437); **dar ûf** and **dar ûffe** on it; **dar umbe** and **darumbe** therefore, for that reason (N 60, 4; 107, 4; 331, 4; 874, 3); upon that (N 109, 4); on account of her (N 2, 4); for which (*pl.*) (N 103, 4); for what, on account of what (N 874, 4); **dar under** and **darunder** under it, behind it, among it (N 443, 4; 972, 3; 1137, 1); among them (N 116, 2; 124, 2); under which, behind which (N 444, 4); **dar zuo** in addition to it (N 449, 1); to it, to that (V 3); in addition to them (N 96, 1); **dar zuo... daz** for that that (N 260, 1 "He was too rich to accept any payment")
- darben** *wv w. gen.* to miss, to be deprived of; to renounce, to give up
- darf** *pret.-pres. v* (33 c; 161 d) I need; I am able to. *Mostly*



- negative:* I cannot possibly, I am absolutely unable. N 56, 3; 350, 4; 926, 4
- darunder** among them; **einer d.** one of them (K 145, 2). See also **dar** 2
- daz** 1) *rel. pron.* that, what, which; 2) *conj.* that; if (A 10; N 279, 2); until (N 303, 1); because (N 293, 3); insofar as (N 475, 4); introducing a wish (120, 31); **unt daz** and when (N 1166, 2)
- dechein = dehein**
- decken** *vv* (131, 2) to cover
- degen** *stm* (a) valiant warrior, champion
- degenheit** *stf* (i) bravery
- degenliche** *adv.* like a hero
- dehein** any; no. Cf. 128; 132
- denken** *vv* (*pret.* **dâhte**; 103; 136) to think (N 137, 1; 287, 1; 470, 1); **d. an** to think of (W 299)
- denn** *after a comparative* than
- denne = danne** 1 and 3
- der, diu, daz.** Cf. 12
- der** *adv.* = **dar**; **der zuo** for it (N 450, 2)
- des** *adv.* for that (N 62, 4), therefore (N 22, 4; 100, 3; etc.)
- deste = G. desto** all the (more so); **d. baz** all the better; **d. mêr** all the more
- deweder** either
- dicke** *adj.* thick
- dicke** *adv.* often
- dienen** *vv* 1) to serve, to be subject to; 120, line 20; N 114, 3; 115, 4; 2) to deserve; N 1001, 4; 3) to earn; K 141, 1; 1056, 3; 4) to be thankful, to be grateful, to reward; N 546, 4; 862, 4; 5) to be at a p.'s disposal; N 306, 1; 6) to be of service; N 554, 1; 7) to attend to, to wait on, to receive or entertain hospitably. N 126, 3; 280, 2; 972, 2
- dienest** and **dienst** *stm* (a) 1) service (N 93, 2; 99, 2); help, assistance, aid (N 290, 2; 1142, 4); 2) work done (N 992, 4); **min d.** what I have done (N 998, 2); 3) work which a person is compelled to do, forced labor, servitude (K 1065, 4); 4) respects, regards (N 544, 2; 1217, 2)
- dienstlich** *adv.* **d. undertân sîn** to be bound to render service
- diep(b)** *stm* (a) thief
- diezen** *stv* (II b) to murmur. W 177
- dîhen** *stv* (I b; 121 b; 149) to prosper
- dîn** *pron.* Cf. 31 b and e
- dinc(g)** *stn* (a) thing, affair, concern; **zallen dingen** in every regard
- dirre** *pron.* this. 143
- diu** *stf* (ô) (maid-)servant. 127
- dô** 1) *adv.* then, at that time; 2) *conj.* when, as, once as.
- doch** *adv.* 1) however, yet, still; 2) also, too (W 32)
- doln** *vv* to suffer, to endure
- done = dô ne**
- dorf** *stn* (a) village
- dorn** *stm* (a) thorn
- dort** there
- dânen** *vv* to resound, to be heard
- dörplich** *adj.* boorish, rude



**dörper** *stm* (a) a coarse rustic, an ill-bred fellow, boor  
**dræjen** *wv* (*pret.* *dræte*) to whirl, to tumble  
**dri**, **drie** three. 21  
**drige** = **drie**. W 255  
**dringen** *stv* (II a) 1) to press forward; 2) to press, hard (upon); W 199; 3) to push away. Neid. 52; 4) to pay flattering attention to guests and prominent persons, to play the toady. W 308  
**drinne** *adv.* in it  
**dritte** third  
**drizec**, **drizic** thirty. 60 e  
**drumbe** (= **dar umbe**) *adv.* for it. N 115, 2; 274, 3  
**drunder** (= **dar under**) *adv.* among them. N 90, 2; 1150, 2  
**du** *pron.* you, thou. 31 b; 75 a  
**dulden** *wv* (*pret.* *dulte*) to endure, to bear  
**dûme** *wm* thumb  
**dunken** *wv* (103; 136) to seem; **mich dunket** it seems to me; **mich dunket es guot** I deem it right, proper; **sich d.** to consider o.s. as, to think o.s.  
**dur** and **durch** (**durh**) *prep. w. acc.* 1) through, across; 2) on account of, because of, for the purpose of, for the sake of; **d. uns** for our sake; **d. waz** why; **d. daz** *conj.* because  
**durst** *stm* thirst  
**dürkel** *adj.* pierced with holes  
**dürsten** *wv* (*pret.* *durste*) *impers.* **mich durste harte** I felt very thirsty  
**dwingen** *stv* (III a) to overcome (N 95, 4), to torture (N 979, 1)

## E

**ê** *stf* (**ô**. 126) 1) order, religion (N 1285, 1); 2) marriage, matrimony (N 327, 3)  
**ê** 1) *adv.* before, previously, earlier. Cf. 88 b and N 306, 2; 2) *conj.* before; **ê iz iemen erfünde** without anybody noticing it; **ê daz** before (*conj.*)  
**eben** *adj.* even (W 383)  
**ebene** *adv.* 1) at full gallop, at full tilt; **e. gân** to gallop at full speed, in hot haste. N 71, 4; 1366, 2; 2) fast (K 1562, 1); 3) carefully (N 434, 3), fittingly (W 229), comfortably (W 249)  
**ecke** *stf* (**ô**) edge  
**edel** *stn* (a) noble birth  
**edel** *adj.* noble, of noble birth; **edel stein** precious stone, jewel, gem; **e. gesteine** precious stones, jewelry  
**eiden** *wv* to force a p. to declare upon oath  
**eigen** *adj.* 1) (held) in bondage; **eigen man** bondman, serf, vassal; **eigene diu** or **eigen diu** bondwoman; 2) own, belonging to  
**eigendiu** = **eigen diu**  
**eigenman** = **eigen man**  
**ein** one; 60 a; 132. *Used as demonstrative pron.* 144. *In addressing a person* N 294, 3  
**einander** each other; **mit ei.** together, at a time; **bi ei.** together  
**eine** alone. 60 a  
**eines** *adv.* suddenly  
**einic(g)** *adj.* only  
**einlif** and **eilf** eleven

**eischen** *stv* (VII) to ask (a question)

**eit(d)** *stm* (a) oath

**êlich** *adj.* legal

**e'llen** *stn* (a) bravery (N 101, 4; 113, 2; 129, 3; 260, 4); energy, force (N 471, 2); **mit ellen** forcibly, perforce (N 113, 4); victorious combat (N 55, 3)

**e'lle(n)boge** *wm* elbow

**elle'nde** *stn* (ja) exile (K 107, 4; 1579, 4), life in exile (K 1649, 4)

**elle'nde** *adj.* living in (coming from) a foreign country (N 1416, 3; 1430, 4), exiled, living in exile (K 85, 4; 97, 2; 108, 4; 111, 2; 150, 4; 1042, 4; 1067, 1; 1607, 2; 1647, 4)

**elle'nden** *wv refl.* to go abroad, to leave (to go away from) one's own country (H 79; W 406)

**e'llenthaft** daring, venturesome, adventurous; energetic

**empfâ'hen** *stv* (VII) to receive. 136; 162

**en-** and **en** not. 29; 83

**enbe'r(e)n** *stv* (IV) *w. gen.* to be without (a th.)

**enbi'eten** *stv* (II b) to let a p. know, to notify; to send (a message)

**enbi'nden** *stv* (III a) to free, to save

**enbizen** *stv* (I a) to take (to have) a meal; *p.p.* **enbizzen** scratched

**enbi'ten** *stv* (I a) *w. gen.* to wait for

**enbre'sten** *stv* (IV) to escape

**e'nde** *stn* (ja) 1) end; death;

2) aim (K 85, 1); **an dem ende** definitely (A 17); 3) decision, determination, judgment (D 4)

**e'ndelich** *adj.* great, immense

**e'ndelichen** *adv.* absolutely, by all means

**eng, enge** *adj.* tight

**enge'gene** *adv.* **liefen in e.** they came to meet them

**e'ngel** *stm* (a) angel

**E'ngellant** England

**enge'ten** *stv* (III b) *w. gen.* 1) to pay for, to suffer for; 2) to get the reward

**engi'ezen** *stv* (II b) to overflow the banks

**enha'nt** *adv.* in the hand

**enhe'in** any

**enhe'nde** in his hand

**empfâ'hen, enphâ'hen** *stv* (VII) 1) = **empfâhen**; 2) to accept (K 1046, 1); 3) to clasp in one's arms, to embrace (A 114)

**enpha'llen** *stv* (VII) to slip from, to fall from

**enphâ'n** = **empfâhen** 3. A 46

**enph'inden** *stv* (III a) *w. gen.* to feel

**enphli'ehen** *stv* (II b) *w. dat.* to escape from

**enphü'eren** *wv* to declare under oath that an accusation is false

**entla'den** to unload

**entri'nnen** to escape, to desert

**entri'wen!** indeed! most certainly! as true as I live!

**entsa'gen** *refl. w. dat.* to break w. a p.

**entslâ'fen** to fall asleep

**entsli'ezen** to open

**entspri'ngen** to sprout forth; to rise, to have its source

**entwe'r** back and forth

**entwe'rfen** to paint

**entwi'chen** to escape, to flee

**enwi'ht** *adj.* useless, of no use, good-for-nothing. 24, 8

**enzü'nden** *ww* (*pret.* **enzunde**)

*refl.* to become red, to blush

**er** *pron.* he. 31 d

**era'rnen** *ww* to pay for, to suffer for

**erba'rmen** *ww* to make a p. sympathetic

**e'rbe** *stn* (**ja**) inheritance, heritage. *The word is used in the sing. by W 400, but in the plur. in N 113, 3*

**erbe'iten** *ww* (*pret.* **erbeite**) to await

**erbe'izen** *ww* to get off (a horse), to dismount

**e'rben** *ww* to be hereditary, to run in the family

**erbi'ten** to obtain by entreaty

**erbi'ten** to live to see; **er. zuo** to reach a p., to get to

**erbli'chen** *stn* (I a) to pale, to fade (away)

**erbo'wen** *p.p.* of **bowen**; **wol erb.** well built

**e'rde** *wf* (N 1563, 4; D 17) *stf* (**ô.** K 71, 4; W 182) ground, soil, earth

**êre** *stf* (**ô**) 1) respectable conduct (o); 2) honorable mention, appreciation (86, 8); 3) an honorable thing, Latin *honestum* (W 2); 4) prestige, repute, great esteem, glory, praise (N 22, 3; 103, 1; 275, 2; W 40); 5) honor, distinction (131, 1; N 109, 4; 429, 4); **zen êren** (N 292, 4) as an honor, as a distinction; **an allen êren** (N 1177, 3) in every respect; 6) privilege (N 1216, 4); title to, claim to; **êre haben** *w. gen.* (N 1280, 4) to be entitled to

**êren** *ww* to respect

**erva'r(e)n** *stn* (VI) 1) to learn, to hear; 2) to go through (W 415)

**ervi'nden** to come to know; to find out, to make out; to notice;

**an etwaz ervunden werden** to get into a th. (K 1050, 4)

**ergâ'n** 1) to happen (120, 26; N 67, 2; 287, 1; 333, 2); to come about, to take place

(N 1263, 3); 2) to be done, to be effected, to be carried out

(N 306, 4; 347, 1; 395, 4); 3) to be managed (N 1010, 3);

4) to go on, to succeed (N 1571, 4); 5) **ergân ze** or **ergân w. dat.**

to be the cause of (A 22); **klageliche ergân** (K 54, 4) to be the cause of lamenting

**ergê'n** = **ergân**

**erge'tzen** *ww w. acc. of p. and gen. of th.* to make a p. forget a th., to make up for

**erhe'llen** *stn* (III b) to resound

**eri'teniuwen** *ww* to renew

**erja'gen** *ww* to slay, to kill

**erka'ten** *ww* to grow cold, icy; to become hostile

**erke'nnen** *ww* to know (K 9, 4); to get to know, to hear about, to learn about; to recognize; to identify; to verify; to see

(K 1574, 4); **erkant** *p.p.* known

**erki'esen** *stn* (II b) 1) to choose; D 25; R 62; W 252; 2) to recognize as. H 14

**erkri'mmen** *stn* (III a) to tear to pieces

**erku'nnen** *p.p.* Meaning uncertain. **der daz het erkunnen** (N 1137, 2) apparently: he who knew how to handle it; **si hete**

**wol erkunnen** (N 1418, 1): she had really brought it about (that)

**erkü'elen** *ww* to grow chilly

**erlä'n** *w. acc. of p. and gen. of th.* to let a p. off; **sich erlän** *w. gen.* to abstain from

**erli'den** to bear, to endure

**erlo'uben** *ww* to allow, to permit

**erlœ'sen** *ww (pret. erläste; p.p. erläst) w. gen.* to redeem from, to ransom

**e'rmil (= ermel)** *stm (a)* sleeve

**ermo'rden** *ww* to assassinate

**erne'rn** *ww* to save

**ero'ugen** *ww w. dat.* to bring before a p.'s eyes, to arouse in him

**erre'chen** *stv (IV) and refl.* to take revenge (for)

**erschî'nen** *stv (I a)* to become visible, to reveal o.s., to show o.s.

**erschre'cken** *ww* to frighten

**erschre'cken** *stv (IV) von* to start up with fright (at)

**erschri'en** to shriek, to yell, to cry out. 121 c.

**erse'hen** to see

**ersla'gen** *p.p. of slahen.* N 98, 1; 1000, 1

**erspre'ngen** *ww (pret. ersprancte)* to scare, to rouse

**erstæ'ten** *ww* to assure

**êrste** *adv.* now. W 249

**erstê'n** to appear. K 5, 3; 84, 4

**erste'rben** to die

**erstri'ten** to achieve by fighting

**ertœ'ren** *ww* to deafen completely

**ertre'nken** *ww refl.* to drown o.s.

**ertri'nken** to get drowned

**ertwe'ln** *ww* to stun

**ertwi'ngen** to obtain by force, to conquer; **an ert.** to conquer from

**erwa'chen** *ww* to wake up

**erwe'cken** *ww* to rouse, to stir

**erwe'ln** *ww* to select

**erwe'rben** to acquire, to win, to accomplish

**erwi'nden** *stv (III a)* to desist from, to give up

**erze'igen** *ww* to show, to demonstrate

**erzi'ehen** *stv (II b)* to bring up;

**erzogen** *p.p.*

**erziu'gen** *ww 1)* to prove (N 855, 2); *2)* to show, to display (N 844, 4)

**et** *particle* methinks, it seems, I fancy

**etelicher** *pron.* one or the other;

**eteliche** *pl.* some, a few

**eteslich** some (kind of); **eteslicher = etelicher**

**eteswenne** sometimes

**etewenne** occasionally

**etwaz** something

**êweclîchen** *adv.* in all eternity

**eyslich** *adj.* atrocious

**ez** *pron.* it. 31 d; III; II2 e; 130 a; ez was there was

## V F

**vâhen** *stv (VII; 136; 149) 1)* to catch; **bî henden** *v.* to take by the hand; **umbe** *v. mit armen* to clasp in one's arms, to embrace; *2)* **ane vâhen** to begin;

*3)* **vâhen** to take prisoner (K 130, 4), to make a p. a prisoner (H 71)

**val (valles)** *stm (a) 1)* (headlong) fall; *2)* mishap, accident, disaster

- vâlant(d)** *stm* devil
- valde** *stf* (ô) storage bag (for expensive clothes)
- valke** *wm* falcon
- vallen** *stv* (VII; 78 b) 1) to fall; 2) to fall to a p.'s share
- valsch** *stm* (a) falsehood; in **valsche** and **mit valsche** deceitfully
- valsch** *adj.* false; **valscher muot** falsehood
- vân** = **vâhen**. 125
- vanke** *wm* spark
- vâr** *stf* imminent danger
- vâren** *wv* to lay snares for a p.
- varn** *stv* (VI; 52; 77) 1) to proceed to, to betake o.s., to repair to (N 939, 2); to ride (N 66, 2); to go (W 378); to travel by boat (N 349, 1); to go on a pilgrimage or a crusade (H 66); **uz varn** to leave, (W 309); **varn von** *w. dat.* (N 1313, 1) to leave; **in varn** (W 309) to arrive; **wider varn** to return; **varn lân** to set free, to release, to let go; 2) to be doing (nicely) (32 A, 26); to behave (N 1204, 3)
- vart** *stf* (i) 1) ride; 2) journey, especially a pilgrimage or a crusade to the Holy Land; 3) *plur.* **verte** scent, track (N 940, 3)
- vartgeselle** *wm* travelling companion
- varwe** *stf* (ô) color
- vaste** *adv.* (*adj.* **veste**) strongly, seriously (N 980, 4); vehemently (Neid. 66); continuously (N 997, 2); intently, with eager attention (N 1201, 2);
- vaste behuot** strictly guarded (D 56)
- vater** *stm* (142 a) father
- vazzen** *wv* to seize, to take up
- vêhen** *wv* to behave unfriendly toward a p. (A 18)
- vehnten** *stv* (IV) to fight, to wrestle
- veic(g)** and **veige** *adj.* 1) doomed to die (N 973, 1); 2) having ceased to live, lifeless (K 96, 3)
- velse** *wm* rock
- velt(d)** *stn* field
- velwen** *wv* to decolor, to deprive of color
- venster** *stn* (a) window
- verbe'rgen** *stv* (III b) to hide
- verbe'rn** to avoid
- verbi'eten** to forbid
- ve'rchwunt(d)** fatally wounded
- verda'gen** *w. double acc.* to conceal a th. from a p.
- verde'rben** *wv* to destroy, to put to death; to ruin, to undo
- verde'rben** *stv* (III b) to perish, to be ruined, to be lost
- verdi'enen** 1) to achieve (N 305, 2); 2) to incur, to bring upon o.s. (N 101, 2; 112, 1); 3) to deserve (N 260, 2); 4) to reward (N 541, 2); 5) to earn (K 1621, 1; W 478)
- verdri'ezen** *stv* (II b) *impers. w. acc. of p. and gen. of th.* **mich verdriu'zet** **sin** I get tired of it. K 79, 4; R 42; A 92
- verdri'ngen** to keep off, to ward off
- vere'nden** *wv* to bring to an end, to accomplish; **sich verenden** to come to an end
- vervâ'hen** to help, to be of use, to aid

vervâ'n = vervâhen: ze arge ver-  
 vâ'n to take a th. in bad part  
 vergâ'n *w. acc.* to pass by a th.,  
 to pass over, to leave out (W  
 409); to flee from (R 34)  
 ve'rge *wm* ferryman, boatman  
 verge'ben to pardon  
 verge'lten *stv* (III b) to repay, to  
 compensate for, to make amends  
 verge'zzen *stv* (V) *w. gen.* to forget  
 verhe'ln *stv* (IV) to hide  
 verho'uwen *stv* (VII; *but pret. also*  
 verhou-  
 wen) 1) to batter, to smash, to  
 cut down; 2) to wound, to kill  
 verje'hen *stv* (V) 1) *w. dat. of p.*  
*and gen. of th.* to admit (N 46,  
 2), to tell (N 83, 4); 2) *w. gen.*  
 to call a p. something (N 835, 2)  
 verke'bsen *ww* to call somebody a  
 kebbe  
 verkê'ren 1) to distort; 2) to up-  
 set; 3) to withdraw, to with-  
 hold  
 verki'esen to give up, to renounce  
 (N 832, 2); v. ûf (N 1128, 3) *id.*  
 verko'ufen *ww* to sell  
 verlâ'n to leave behind (N 550,  
 2); not to do, to abstain from  
 doing a th. (N 431, 4; 845, 4);  
 in verlân (N 1250, 3) to let enter  
 verle'iten *ww* to lead astray, to se-  
 duce  
 verli'esen *stv* (II b. 149) to lose;  
 ein Wunsch v. to form a wish  
 without prospects, a hopeless  
 wish  
 verme'lden *ww* to betray  
 verme'zzen *stv* (V) *refl.* to make  
 bold  
 vermi'den to avoid  
 verne'men to learn, to hear

ve'rnogie'ren *ww refl.* to forsake  
 one's faith  
 ve'rre *adj.* 1) coming from far  
 away; 2) distant, remote  
 ve'rre *adv.* far; v. dan far away.  
*With the comparative form*  
*of adj.* much; verre sterker  
 much stronger; v. mêr much  
 more  
 ve'rren *adv.* far; von v. from far  
 away  
 ve'rren *ww* to remove  
 versa'gen to refuse (N 539, 4),  
 to refuse a request (N 1224, 4)  
 verschi'ezen to shoot off, to dis-  
 charge  
 verscho'ln *ww* (*p.p.* verscholt, ver-  
 scolt) to cause, to bring about  
 (N 129, 3; 445, 4); to deserve  
 (N 931, 4)  
 verse'hen *refl. w. gen.* to expect:  
 1) to hope for (H 8), to fear  
 (K 115, 4)  
 versi'nnen *stv* (III a) *refl.* to under-  
 stand, to realize  
 versit'zen to sit down at a wrong  
 place  
 versli'nden *stv* (III a) to devour  
 versmâ'hen *ww* 1) to appear con-  
 temptible, to displease; 2) to  
 be dishonored, disgraced  
 versni'den to wound (N 100, 4),  
 to cut (through) (N 438, 2)  
 verso'lden *ww* to reward properly  
 verso'ln *ww* (*p.p.* versolt) to de-  
 serve (N 1428, 3)  
 verspre'chen to talk against, to  
 refuse  
 verstå'n to understand; sich v.  
*w. gen.* to guess, to make out,  
 to notice  
 verste'ln *stv* (IV) to steal



**versû'men** *ww*; **an etwaz** *v.* to keep a p. away from, to rob a p. of; **sich** *v.* to wait too long  
**versu'ochen** *ww* to put (a p.) to a test, to get to know, to become acquainted with; to try  
**versü'enen** *ww* 1) to reconcile (K 131, 3); 2) to settle, to put an end to (K 1602, 3)  
**verswe'nden** *ww* to waste  
**verswi'gen** to keep a th. secret  
**verswi'nden** *stv* (III a) to disappear  
**vertri'ben** 1) to chase away; 2) to while away, to beguile  
**vertu'on** to waste, to squander  
**verwa'ndeln** *ww v. den sin* to lose one's mind; **sich** *v.* to change  
**verwâ'r** *adv.* truly  
**verwe'isen** *ww* to deprive of the protector (father, husband), to leave behind unprotected (N 1555, 3); *p.p.* **verweiset** (N 1218, 2) orphaned, deprived of the queen  
**ve'rwén** *ww* to dye, to color  
**verwi'tewen** *ww* to make (a p.) a widow  
**verwü'rren** *ww* (*pret.* **verwurte**) to estrange  
**verza'gen** *ww* to lose heart, to despair  
**verzi'hen** to refuse  
**vesperzît** *stf* (i) 6 o'clock in the evening (one of the canonical hours). Cf. N 1273, 4  
**veste** *adj.* hard, firm, strong  
**veste** *stf* (ô) stronghold  
**vetech** *stm* (a) wing  
**videlære** *stm* (ja) minstrel  
**vier, viere** four. 60 d  
**vierde** fourth; **selbe vierder** (one) with three others

**vierdehalp(b)** three and a half  
**vierzec** forty. 60 e  
**vil** 1) much, many; 2) very; **vil rôt** of a bright (deep) red (N 444, 2) Cf. 36  
**vinden** *stv* (III a) to find, to meet, to see; **dâ man den recken vant** there where the warrior was  
**vînder** *comparative of vînt*; **einem vînder sîn** to hate a p. more (N 1155, 4)  
**vinger** *stm* (a) finger  
**vingerlîn** *stn* (a) (finger)ring  
**vinster** *adj.* dark  
**vînt(d)** *stm* (a) 1) enemy (N 931, 2); 2) a person whom one hates (N 1117, 4); 3) hostile, unfriendly (K 1049, 4)  
**vîntlichen** *adv.* unfriendly, malevolently  
**vîntschafft** *stf* (i) hostility, enmity  
**visch** *stm* (a) fish  
**fiur** *stn* (a) fire; sparks  
**vlêgen** *ww* and **an vlêgen** to implore  
**vliegen** *stv* (II a; 52; 95 a) to fly  
**fliehen** *stv* (II b) to flee  
**vliesen = verliessen**  
**vliezen** *stv* (II b) 1) to flow; 2) to swim; 3) to travel, to go by ship  
**vliz** *stm* (a) care(fulness), attention; **ze vlize** certainly  
**vlizecliche** and **vlizicliche** *adv.* 1) carefully, ceremoniously; 2) politely  
**vlizen** *stv* (I a) *refl. w. gen.* to aim at, to be anxious to procure; **sich vlizen ûf** to strive hard (for)  
**vliziclichen** *adv.* 1) eagerly; 2) carefully  
**vloiten** *ww* to play on the flute  
**fluot** *stf* (i) running water, flow, current



vluot *stm* (K 138, 3) = fluot  
 vlust *stf* (i) loss  
 vluz (vluzzes) *stm* (i) running  
 water  
 flühten *vv* to flee  
 vogel *stm* (a) bird. 16 a and c  
 vogellin *stm* (a) little bird. 107;  
 110  
 vogelsanc(g) *stm* singing of birds  
 voget *stm* (a) 1) prince, protector,  
 patron, potentate; 2) despot,  
 tyrant, oppressor  
 vogt = voget  
 vol (voller) *adj. w. gen.* full (of);  
 vol tragen to fill up with  
 vol *adv.* fully  
 volc *stm* (a) people  
 volgen *vv* 1) *w. dat.* to go  
 with, to accompany; v. mit  
 to accompany, to join (a p.) in  
 an expedition; 2) *w. gen.* to  
 agree to a th.; 3) *w. dat.* to  
 listen to, to obey, to heed;  
 4) *w. dat. of p. and gen. of th.*  
 to come up to a p., to be a p.'s  
 equal (in a th.)  
 volleclich *adv.* fully. N 139, 2  
 vollecliche *adv.* to the full, abun-  
 dantly. N 272, 4  
 volleclichen *adv.* entirely. N 1543, 3  
 vollen *adv.* completely, thoroughly  
 von *prep. w. dat.* 1) (away, coming)  
 from; 2) of, about; 3) through.  
*In passive sentences:* by  
 vor *prep. w. dat.* 1) before, in front  
 of; vor (*w. dat.*) gån to lead, to  
 walk at the head, to march in  
 front of; 2) before, previously  
 to, earlier than; 3) about; 4) on  
 account of, for; 5) more than  
 vor *adv.* 1) in front (K 143, 4);  
 2) previously, earlier (K 104, 3);

3) before the proper time (Neid.  
 55)  
 vorderst: ze v. at the head  
 vorht *stf* fear  
 vråge *stf* (ð) question  
 frågen and vrågen *vv w. gen.* 1) to  
 ask, to ask questions; mære  
 vrågen to inquire (for); 2) to  
 consult (N 1226, 3)  
 vrevele *adj.* courageous  
 vrevelliche *adv.* insolently, dis-  
 respectfully  
 vreisichen *stv* (VII) to hear  
 vreislich *adj.* frightful, horrible  
 vreislichen *adv.* awfully, terribly  
 fremde and vremde *adj.* 1) un-  
 known, strange, foreign; die  
 wåren im fremde he did not  
 know them; 2) *w. dat.* removed  
 from, living far away from  
 vremden *vv w. acc.* to stay away  
 from, to keep aloof from  
 fremede, fremide = fremde  
 freude *stf* (ð) 1) happiness, joy,  
 pleasure; åne f. unhappy, in  
 sadness; 2) cheerfulness (W  
 52; 53)  
 freudelõs dismal, gloomy, mis-  
 erable  
 freudenriche *adv.* joyfully  
 freuwen *vv (pret. freute)* 1) to  
 give a p. pleasure, to give a p.  
 happiness, to make a p. happy;  
 2) to cheer up, to delight;  
 3) sich freuwen *w. gen.* to take  
 pleasure in a th., to enjoy  
 fri, vri 1) free; vri von free of; fri  
 låzen to avoid; der werke fri  
 sîn to launch out freely, to in-  
 dulge one's inclinations; 2) *with*  
*gen.* deprived of  
 fride, vride *stm* (ja) 1) peace (N

- 455, 2); 2) pardon (K 1594, 4); 3) immunity, independence (N 113, 2)
- vriedel** *stm* (a) spouse, the beloved; **ir vriedel** the one whom she loved
- vristen** *ww* to save
- friundin** *stf* beloved woman
- friunt, vriunt(d)** *stm* (a. Cf. N 534, 2) 1) friend, a person whom one loves; **die friunde sin** his friends; 2) relative
- vriuntlich** *adj.* 1) marital (N 1258, 2); 2) **vriuntlichiu triuwe** loyalty of a friend
- friuntliche** *adv.* in a friendly way (N 296, 1; 304, 2)
- vriuntlichen** = **friuntliche**. N 831, 3
- friuntschaft** *stf* (i) love (N 1256, 2)
- friwent(d)** = **friunt**
- friwentliche** *adv.* amicably, by friendly arrangement (N 55, 2)
- vrô** *adj. w. gen.* glad (of), happy, gay
- froue** *wm* advantage, profit
- frou, frow** Lady. *Abbreviated from frouwe and used as title before names. Dat.: froun Uoten* (N 277, 3) to Lady Uote. *Acc.: vroun Kriemhilden* (N 305, 4)
- frouwe, frowe** *wf* lady (of noble rank), noble-woman, mistress, queen; **diu frowe mîn or mîn frowe** My Lady, her ladyship (N 1177, 3; 1218, 2; 1222, 4)
- frowelin** *stn* (a) endearing form of **frowe** my dear little lady
- fröide** *stf* (ô) = **freude**
- vrœlich** *adj.* happy, gay; **vrœlichen muot tragen** to feel happy
- vrœliche and vrœlichen** *adv.* happily
- frömde** = **fremde**. Cf. 97 b
- vrömeden** *ww* to become estranged from a p., to avoid. 97 b
- vröude** = **freude**
- fröwen** = **freuen**
- frum** useful, helpful
- frume** *wm* advantage, profit
- frumen and frümen** *ww* (*pret. frumte*) 1) to help; 2) to do, to achieve; 3) to keep, to have; 4) to send; **widere f.** to return
- fruo** *adv.* early
- vrüege** = **früeje**
- früeje** *adv.* early; **morgen f.** tomorrow morning
- früemesse** *stf* (ô) early mass
- frümen** *see* **frumen**
- fuoder** *stn* (a) carload
- fuoge** *stf* (ô) 1) convenience; 2) gentlemanly manners (W 119)
- fuore** *stf* (ô) mode of life; **hôhiu f.** boisterous way of living
- fuoꝛ** *stm* (i) foot
- furt** *stm* (i) ferry
- füegen** *ww* (*pret. vuocete*) to procure, to give, to accomplish, to achieve, to carry out; **sich füegen** to happen
- füeren** *ww* (*pret. fuorte*) 1) to transport by vehicles; 2) to take along (with one); 3) to lead, to carry; **hin f.** to carry away; 4) to hold, to wear. 102
- fünf, fünve** five. 60 d.
- vünfte** fifth
- für, vür** *prep. w. acc.* 1) before, in front of; **für die berge** to the foot of the mountains; 2) as (K 1575, 3); 3) instead of (K 1048, 3; W 125; 462)

**für, vür** *adv.* ahead, in advance  
**vürba'z** *adv.* more. 24, 8. Cf. N 1577, 4  
**fürgebüege** *stn* (ja) breast-collar (part of the harness to hold the saddle)  
**fürhten, vürhten** *ww* (*pret.* vorhte; 103) to fear, to be afraid of  
**fürste** *wm* prince, potentate  
**fürstenbote** *wm* envoy of a prince  
**fürstenwip(b)** *stn* (a) the wife of a crowned potentate

## G

**gâbe** *stf* (ô) gift  
**gabilûn** *stn* (a) a dragon-like animal  
**gâch** (gâher) impetuous, hasty, rash; **mir ist gâch** I am in a hurry; **mir wart gâch** I started to hurry  
**gâhen** *ww* (*pret.* gâhte) to hurry, to run fast; **g. w. gen.** to hurry with a th.  
**galle** *wf* gall; malignity, falsehood  
**gân** *stw* (56; 114) to go, to come, to go to meet; **für g.** to come forward, to come out, to appear, to show up; **g. für w. acc.** to face; **g. durch w. acc.** to give up; **g. an w. acc.** to begin (with), to start; **vor g. w. dat.** to excel, to surpass, to eclipse; **nâch g.** to be inferior to, to rank below, to be below (a p., a th.); **abe g.** to be deficient, lacking; **hin g.** to pass; **wider g.** to come out again  
**ganc(g)** *stm* (a) way  
**ganz** entire, complete  
**gar** *adv.* entirely, absolutely

**garwe = gar**  
**garwen** *ww refl.* to put on (to don) one's armor  
**gast** *stm* (i) 1) guest; 2) stranger, warrior from another country. 18 a  
**gâhes** *adv.* suddenly  
**ge-** 66  
**gebâ'ren** *ww* to behave, to act in a way  
**gebæ'rde** *stf* (ô) 1) gesture, motion; 2) *plur.* behavior  
**gebæ're** *stf* (ô) behavior, appearance  
**gebe** *stf* (ô) gift. 15  
**geben** *stw* (V) 1) to give, to make presents. 165; 2) to cause (W 3)  
**gebe'nde** *stn* (ja) *coll.* ribbons, head-dress  
**ge-bern** to give birth to  
**ge-bieten** to force, to make a p. do; to summon; **g. ze w. gerund** to order, to command  
**ge-binden** to tie, to fasten (N 1562, 4); **umbe g.** to tie around o.s., to put on (N 984, 4)  
**ge-biten** to ask, to implore (N 1277, 1)  
**gebo'rn** *adj.* born; **wart g.** was born; **ist g. von** he is a native of  
**gebo't** *stn* (a) 1) command, order; 2) power, sovereignty  
**ge-brechen** *durch* to pierce, to bore through. N 468, 1  
**geb're'ste** *wm* lack; **-en hân** to be lacking, deficient, to fail  
**ge-bre'sten** to be lacking, deficient (N 105, 2); **mir gebristet w. gen.** I am free of (K 97, 1); **mir gebristet an w. dat.** I fail in . . . (N 330, 4; 434, 4)

**ge-dagen** to pass over in silence.

N 21, 4

**geda'nc** *stm* (a) thought, hope.  
108.

**ge-denken** 1) to think (of) (N 464, 1; 853, 2; 988, 4; 1272, 1; 1281, 1; 1418, 4; 1419, 1; 1419, 4); 1426, 1; 1427, 4; 1610, 2); 2) to remember (D 60); **g. an** (62, 11) to think of, to keep in mind; 3) to make up one's mind, to decide (N 261, 1); **g. ûf** and **g. an** to start to think of, to direct one's thoughts toward (N 47, 1; 123, 4); 4) *refl. dat.* to think (K 1050, 3), to believe (K 1045, 4)

**ge-dienen** 1) to serve (N 852, 1); 2) to deserve (N 874, 2; 975, 1); 3) to earn, to obtain through one's service (N 306, 3)

**gedi'gene** *stm* (ja) *coll.* the warriors

**ge-dihen** to prosper, to thrive, to get on, to turn out. 115; 125

**gedi'nge** *wm* hope, trust; **gedingen** *hân* *w. gen* to hope for

**ge-dingen** *wv* to be victorious.  
N 458, 4

**gedra'nc(g)** *stm* (a) throng, crowd

**gedre'nge** *stm* (ja) crush

**ge-dringen** to push aside, to remove

**gedu'lteclichen** patiently

**ge-vâhen** to catch

**geva'llen** *stv* (VII) to please, to appeal

**geva'r** *adj.* colored; **lieht g.** light-colored

**ge-varn** 1) **g. in** to ride, to go into, to enter. N 1573, 3; 2) **wol g.** to fare well (W 356); 3) *eine reise g.* to accomplish a trip;

(W 482); **wol g.** to get through a journey (crusade) unharmed (H 46)

**geva'ter** *wm* godfather

**geve'rte** *wm* companion

**geve'rte** *stm* (ja) *coll.* mounts, saddle-horses. N 84, 3; 1201, 2

**gevi'dere** *stm* (ja) *coll.* the feathers

**ge-volgen** 1) *w. dat.* to keep up with (N 981, 3); 2) *w. gen.* to consent to (N 879, 1; 1265, 4) 3) *w. dat.* to follow a p.'s advice, to listen to (N 884, 1)

**ge-frâgen** to ask

**ge-vreisichen** to come to know, to hear, to learn. N 51, 1; 331, 2

**gevri'unde** *stm pl.* people who are on friendly terms, kindly disposed toward each other. K 1620, 2

**ge-frumen** to relieve a p. (in distress). H 7

**ge-fûegen** 1) to allot, to give (N 15, 4); 2) to do something to a p. (N 930, 3; 1236, 3; 1423, 3); 3) to manage (to do a th.); K 1562, 3; 1619, 4; 4) **sich g.** (N 1577, 2) to happen

**gefû'gele** *stm* (ja) *coll.* fowl, birds.  
N 1542, 4

**ge-gân** to go. N 846, 4

**ge-geben** to give. 131, 8

**ge'gen** *prep. w. dat.* 1) against; **g. dem herzen** in the heart; 2) toward, in expectation of (R 9)

**ge-grûezen** *wv* (*pret.* **gegruozte**) to greet, to welcome. N 291, 3

**ge-haben** *wv refl.* to be getting on (N 1214, 2); to be, to feel (well) (R 46; 83)

**geha'z** *adj.* (used only in predicative position) hostile

**ge-helfen** *w. acc.* to help. N 877, 2  
**ge-hören** 1) to hear (N 873, 4; 983, 4; 1139, 4); 2) to be able to understand what is said (W 310)  
**gehü'nde** *stn (ja) coll.* the dogs  
**geil** *adj.* merry, gay  
**gein** *prep. w. dat.* 1) toward, against, before, in front of, opposite; 2) toward, in expectation of, about (indicating time approximately)  
**geist** *stm (a)* Holy Ghost  
**geistlich** see **orden**  
**gejä'gede** *stn (ja)* hunting-party  
**ge-jehen** to make believe (that), to convince. N 284, 3  
**ge-lâzen** to stop doing a th., to give up. N 832, 1  
**gelæ'ze** *stn (ja)* behavior  
**ge-le'ben** to live to see, to live through (a period), to experience. N 833, 3; 855, 4; 1234, 2; R 60  
**ge-legen** to lay down (to rest) (N 306, 2); **an g.** to put on (N 1574, 3); **sich g.** to stop (N 1219, 4)  
**gele'ite** *stn (ja)* safe-conduct, protection  
**geli'ch, geli'che** *adj. w. dat.* alike, equal  
**geli'che** *adv.* equally, uniformly, the same way, likewise; **g. ligen** to be considered as equal stakes; **g. w. dat.** just like  
**geli'eb** dear to each other, loving each other  
**ge-liegen** to lie  
**ge-ligen** 1) to lie down, to fall, to drop, to hit the ground; **tôt g.** to drop dead, to perish, to

lose one's life; N 70, 3; 115, 2-3; 474, 3; 1577, 3; 2) **bî g. or g. bî** *w. dat.* to lie in bed with a p. K 1043, 4; D 60  
**geli'ngen** *stv (III a) impers.:* **mir gelinget** I succeed. 62, 19; N 1232, 4  
**ge-loben** to praise  
**ge-lönnen** *w. dat. of p. and gen. of th.* to reward a p. for a th.  
**gelouben** *ww w. gen.* to believe (in); **sich g. w. gen.** to be convinced of the truth of something. N 1580, 4  
**ge-loufen** to run. N 991, 3  
**gelten** *stv (III b) 1)* to pay, to repay, to compensate for; 2) to be worth, to cost; 3) to bring in, to yield; 3) *refl.* to be compensated, to be counterbalanced  
**gelü'cke** *stn (ja)* luck, good luck, good fortune. 73; 75 c.  
**gelü'sten** *ww impers. mich gelüestet eines dinges* I feel a desire for a th. N 1262, 2  
**gema'ch** *stm (a) 1)* rest, comfort, accommodation; 2) resting-place, sleeping accommodations  
**ge-machen** to make, to bring about. 66  
**ge-mahelen** *ww* to give away in marriage (to)  
**geme'ine** *adj. 1)* joint, common, together; **al g.** all together; 2) *w. dat.* belonging to  
**geme'it** *adj. w. gen.* glad of, relieved (N 869, 4), confident, assured  
**ge'melliche** *adv.* exuberantly, boisterously  
**ge-mîden** to avoid. R 134  
**ge-minnen** to marry. N 1276, 1

**gemu'ot** *adj.* 1) disposed, humored; wol **g.** amiable; **trûric g.** cast down, low-spirited; **zornic g.** angry; **ûbele g.** ill-natured (K 58, 3); **hôte g.** proud (N 85, 4); **hôch g.** exultingly glad, jubilant (K 1562, 2); 2) wol **g.** well-advised (W 126)

**gemüete** *stn* (ja) state of mind, mental condition (H 116); nature, disposition

**gên = gân.** 56; **gêt her nâher!** come here closer! **ez gêt im an den lîp** it will cost him his life; **ûf gên** to rise, to grow; **zuo gên** to approach, to draw near

**gên = gegen, gein**

**genâde** *stf* (ô) 1) mercy (N 1006, 4); **mit genâden** mercifully (K 121, 3); 2) kindness (N 429, 1); 3) thanks (N 1220, 4); **g. sagen** to be grateful (N 62, 4); 4) graciousness, good graces (H 16)

**gena'nt** *adj.* called, named

**genæ'dic(g)** *adj.* favorable

**genæ'diclich** *adv.* kindly

**genæ'me** *adj.* pleasant, agreeable

**ge-nemen** to take (N 547, 1), to take away (N 1156, 3)

**gene'sen** *stv* (V) to come off alive, to hold one's own (N 336, 1; 350, 2; 451, 2; 1155, 3); **eines sunes g.** to be delivered of (to give birth to) a son (N 1414, 3)

**geni'eten** *ww refl. w. gen.* to grow weary of

**geni'ezen** *stv* (II b) 1) to profit from (N 973, 4; 1609, 2; 1611, 3); 2) to enjoy a th. (N 869, 1); **g. w. gen.** to enjoy the privileges (of one's position) (N 104, 3)

**geni'ste** *stn* (ja) nest, aerie

**genô'te** *adv.* eagerly

**genô'z** *stn* (a) friend of equal birth and rank; **mîn g.** my equal, my peer

**genu'oc(g)** 1) *neuter adj.* enough, very much, plenty, abundantly. Cf. 43 b; 2) *inflected plural genuoge* many

**genü'egen** *ww* to satisfy; **mich genüeget des I** am satisfied with it

**ge-pflegen** *w. gen.* to possess, to enjoy. 65 c; 66

**ger** *stf* (ô) demand

**gêr** *stn* (a) javelin. Cf. N 73, 2

**ge-râten** 1) to advise, to recommend (N 1230, 4); 2) to decide, to come to the conclusion that (N 1236, 3); 3) to turn out; **g. nâch** to take after a p. (K 23, 2)

**gêre** *wm* the lower part of a skirt (N 561, 1)

**ge-reden** to say. N 1237, 4

**gere'ht** *adj.* ready and able (to do a th.)

**gere'ite** *stn* (ja) riding-equipment (N 68, 1), harness of a saddle-horse (N 71, 3)

**ge-richen** *ww* to make rich (K 1566, 4)

**geri'hte** *stn* (ja) court, jurisdiction, judicial tribunal; trial, judicial procedure, ordeal

**ge-riten** to ride to (N 56, 3; 1235, 3; 1576, 4), to arrive (N 121, 2), to arrive on time (N 538, 4)

**ge-riuwen** to cause to regret (N 1008, 3)

**gern** *ww w. gen.* to ask for, to demand, to want, to desire

**gerne** *adv.* with pleasure, abso-



- lutely (N 109, 2), on purpose, deliberately; **g. sehen** to be glad to see; **g. sîn ze** to like to be at: **er wil gerne** he wants very much to; **gerne het ich daz erkant** I would be glad to hear about that
- gerner comparative of gerne** rather
- gêrstange wf** shaft of a lance
- ge-rûnen ww** to whisper (secretly)
- ge-ruochen 1** to care to, to wish (N 1261, 2), (*w. gen.*) to wish, to desire, to demand (N 127, 2); 2) to take care of a th.
- ge-sagen** to say, to tell. N. 129, 2; 845, 1; 1139, 4
- ge-schaden** to do harm to a p. (*dat.*)
- gescha'men ww. refl. w. gen.** to be ashamed of. N 290, 4
- gesche'hen stv (V) 1** to happen, to come to pass (76, 30; N 282, 3); to take place (N 442, 1); 2) to come true, to be realized (N 829, 4); 3) to be done (N 78, 1; 137, 1); **mir ist übel geschehen** (N 830, 4) disgrace has been inflicted upon me
- ge-schenden ww (pret. -schande)** to foil, to confound
- ge-sehen 1** to see, to notice (N 72, 4; 133, 3; 137, 2; 273, 3; 288, 4; 393, 4; 441, 4; 858, 3; 927, 2; 933, 4; 980, 3; 1117, 4; 1141, 3); **an g.** to look at (R 99); 2) to get to see (N 1247, 3; 1433, 3); 3) to visit (N 1430, 3)
- gese'lle wm 1** companion, comrade; 2) sweetheart, friend, the beloved one (A 2)
- gese'lleclîch adv.** as (her) suite, attendance (N 281, 2)
- gese'leschaft stf (i) g. leisten w. dat.** to keep a p. company, to accompany a p. W 355
- gese'zzen (p.p. of sitzen)** living, residing
- ge-sigen ww: an g. w. dat.** to defeat. N 114, 2
- ge-sîn** to be; 131, 16; N 547, 4; 924, 4; 926, 4; 927, 4; 1152, 4; 1424, 2; 1618, 4; But cf. **mohte sîn** N 2, 2
- gesi'nde stn (ja)** household, retinue
- ge-singen** to sing (N 852, 1; Neid. 45), to finish singing (mass) (N 303, 1)
- ge-sitzen 1** to sit down (N 824, 1; 1252, 1); 2) to be sitting, to sit (K 1586, 3)
- gespi'le wmf** friend. K 1632, 3; W 442; A 118
- ge-sprechen** to say. N 1117, 3
- ge-stân 1** to begin to stand (66; 71); 2) to perch, to alight (K 71, 3); 3) to stay on one's feet (N 471, 3; 996, 1); 4) to become; **vrœlich g.** to become happy (N 872, 4); **mêre g.** (N 1156, 4) to grow bigger
- geste'ine stn (ja) coll.** jewels, jewelry
- ge-strîten 1** to fight (W 386); 2) to hold one's ground, one's own (against a p.). N 97, 1
- gesu'nt(d) adj.** unharmed, alive
- ge-swîgen** to keep quiet. N 847, 2
- getân (p.p. of tuon): alsô g. and sô g.** of such a nature, of such a kind; **wol g.** beautiful, good looking
- ge'telinc(g) stm (a)** fellow, guy
- ge-tragen** to wear, to carry (N



63, 3; 92, 2; 297, 2; 837, 3; 844, 1; 1206, 4; 1617, 1); **an g.** to manage, to contrive, to achieve (N 881, 2; 1234, 3; 1247, 3)  
**ge-trinken** to finish drinking (K 101, 3)  
**getriu'we** *adj.* sincere, loyal  
**getri'welich** *adj.* sincere  
**ge-trouwen** 1) to believe firmly (N 86, 3); 2) to regard as possible (N 1122, 3); 3) to think o.s. capable of, to believe o.s. able to do (N 458, 4)  
**ge-trœsten.** Cf. 115. **sich g. w. gen.** to get over a th. (R 26)  
**ge-trûren** to grieve, to be grieved. R 21; W 88  
**ge-tuon** to do. 76, 24; N 1012, 4; 1227, 4; 1234, 3; 1236, 3  
**ge-turren** to dare. N 98, 1; 539, 4; K 77, 1  
**getwe'rc(g)** *stn* (a) dwarf  
**gewa'ldec(g)** powerful  
**gewa'ldeclîche** *adv.* with full authority  
**gewa'lt** *stn* (i) 1) compulsion, power; **mit g.** perforce; **durch g.** under compulsion; 2) authority (K 140, 3); 3) violence, outrage, brutality (W 396)  
**gewa'ltec:** **g. sîn** *w. gen.* to possess  
**gewa'lten** *stn* (VII) *w. gen.* to be master of  
**gewa'ltic** powerful  
**gewa'lticliche** *adv.:* **g. hân** to be the sovereign of  
**gewa'nt** *stn* (a) clothes, garb; armor  
**gewa'r werden** to notice  
**gewæ'fen** *stn coll.* arms, armor  
**gewâ'henen** *stn* (VI: *pret.* **gewuoc**;

but *p.p.* **gewahenet**) to mention (K 122, 4; 1637, 4)  
**gewæ'pen = gewæfen**  
**ge'wârlî'che** *adv.* carefully, cautiously (N 1606, 1)  
**gewæ'te** *stn* (ja) *coll.* the clothes  
**ge-wenden** *ww* (*pret.* **gewante**): **g. an** to turn to, to set on  
**ge-werben** to act, to proceed  
**ge-wern** *ww* 1) to grant a p.'s wish, to comply with a p.'s request; W 405; 2) *w. gen.* to prevent, to hinder a p. from. K 1603, 4  
**gewe'rp(b)** *stn* (a) courting, wooing  
**gewerren** *stn* (III b) *w. dat.* to prevent, to hinder. N 55, 1; K 96, 3  
**ge-wesen** to be. N 1155, 4; 1414, 4  
**gewi'n** *stn* (a) gain  
**gewi'nnen** *stn* (III a) 1) to win, to get, to obtain; A. **die kameren gewan** (N 98, 4) To A. the treasure-house was assigned in trust; A. was appointed trustee of the treasure-house. *Pre.* **gewa'n** often: had, possessed; 2) to bring, to take to; **an (ane) g. w. dat.** — to take away from  
**gewü'rhte** *stn* (ja) textile fabric, woven material  
**gewü'rken** *ww* to make, to finish  
**gewü'rme** *stn* (ja) *coll.* the reptiles  
**ge-zemen** 1) to be due to (a p.), to be proper; **im gezam** he was entitled to; 2) to be suited  
**gezi'mber** *stn* mansion  
**gezi't** *stf* (i) time; **in den geziten** at the time (when)  
**gezo'genliche(n)** *adv.* with good manners, respectfully, modestly

**ge-zucken** to tear away  
**giezen** *stv* (II b) to splash  
**gift** *stn* (a) 1) gift, donation; 2)  
 poison  
**gige** *wf* violin, fiddle  
**gir** *stf* (i) greed  
**gisel** *stn* (a) hostage  
**giteclich** *adj.* greedy; **giteclicher**  
**muot** greed(iness)  
**gloube** *wm* faith  
**gluot** *stf* (i) fire  
**gnædic** merciful (R 75)  
**gnædiclichen** *adv.* mercifully (K  
 74, 2)  
**golt(d)** *stn* (a) gold; golden ring  
**got** *stn* (a) God. Cf. 35; 86, 39  
**goteshûs** *stn* church, place of wor-  
 ship  
**gouch** *stn* (a) illegitimate child  
**grâ** (**grâwer**) grey  
**grab** *stn* grave  
**grâve** *wm* count  
**gram** hostile  
**gras** *stn* (a) grass  
**griez** *stn* (a) sandy shore  
**grife** *wm* griffin (a fabulous crea-  
 ture, half lion, half eagle)  
**grifen** *stv* (I a. *pret. plur.* **griffen**):  
**g. an** to begin with; **zuo gr.** to  
 accept; **gr. zuo** to take up  
**grille** *wm* cricket  
**grim** (**grimmer**) furious, fierce  
**grimme** *adv.* vehemently, terribly  
**grimmig** *adj.* ferocious  
**gris, grise** *adj.* grey. Neid. 1; 24  
**grülichen** *adv.* terribly, awfully  
**grôz** great; **in grôzen zühten** with  
 fine manners  
**grœzlich** enormous  
**grœzliche** and **grœzeliche** and  
**grœzlichen** *adv.* much, im-  
 mensely, enormously

**grunt(d)** *stn* (a) bottom  
**gruntwelle** *stf* (ô) (heavy) wash  
 (of the sea)  
**gruonen** *wv* to become green  
**gruoꝛ** *stn* (i) greeting, salutation;  
**g. bieten** *w. dat.* to greet a  
 p.  
**grüen, grüne** green  
**grüezen** *wv* (*pret.* **gruoꝛte**) to  
 greet, to welcome  
**guldin** gilded, golden  
**gunnen** or **günnen** *v* (I23) *w.*  
*gen.* 1) to wish (a p. some-  
 thing), to grant a th.; 2) to  
 allow (K 113, 4)  
**guot** *adj.* (41; 87 f; 88 a) good,  
 worthy, decent; **guoter wille**  
 firm resolution; **guoten willen**  
**hân** to be firmly resolved, de-  
 termined; **guot von** *w. dat.*  
 adorned with  
**guot** *stn* (a) property, treasures,  
 riches, fortune, blessings  
**güete** *stf* (ô) 1) virtue, excellence;  
 2) kindness  
**güetlich** *adj.* kindly; **mit güet-**  
**lichen siten** as a favor  
**güetlich, güetliche, güetlichen** *adv.*  
 kindly  
**güldin** = **guldin**  
**günnen** see **gunnen**  
**gürtel** *stn* (a) belt

## H

**habe** *stf* (ô) 1) port (K 1572, 4);  
 2) property (W 312)  
**haben** *wv* 1) to have; 2) to hold,  
 to keep. Cf. 67  
**hacke** *wm plur.* temptations, al-  
 lurements. H 53  
**haft** *stn* (i) bond, fetter, shackle

- hâhen** *stv* (VII) to hang. Cf. 136;  
149
- halp(b)** half
- halten** *stv* (VII) to hold, to keep.  
Cf. 78 b. **genædiclichen h.** to  
have mercy on a p.
- hân** *v* (81) 1) to have; 2) to keep,  
to preserve; 3) to catch hold  
of, to seize; 4) (**hâchgezît**) **hân**  
to celebrate, to arrange; 5) **hân**  
**für** to regard as
- handelunge** *stf* (ô) entertainment,  
hospitality
- hant(d)** *stf* (i) 1) hand; 2) hand-  
breadth (N 446, 2); 3) **aller**  
**hande** of all kinds; **maniger**  
**hande** (N 445, 3) in different  
ways. Cf. 153 a
- hâr** *stn* (a) hair
- harte** *adv.* 1) very; 2) impatiently  
(A 102)
- haz** (**hazzes**) *stm* (a) 1) enmity  
(N 101, 2); 2) hatred (N 851, 3);  
3) opposition (N 1238, 4);  
4) harm, evil (N 930, 3); **einem**  
**haz tragen** (N 1122, 3; 1150,  
3-4) to have evil designs upon
- hazzen** *vv* to hate
- heben** *stv* (VI; 77 e; 149) to lift;  
**sich heben** to start, to begin;  
to occur; **sich ûf heben** to rise;  
**sich widere heben** to set out for  
home
- Hegeling** Kudrun's native coun-  
try
- hei!** or **hey!** hey! Exclamation of  
admiration
- heide** *stf* (ô) heath, meadow
- heiden** *stm* (a) heathen
- heidenman** *stm* heathen
- heil** *stn* (a) salvation (of the soul)
- heilen** *vv* to recover
- heilig** holy
- heilictuom** *stn coll.* sacred relics
- heim** *adv.* home
- heime** *adv.* at home
- heimelich** *adj.* intimate, familiar
- heimeliche** *adv.* secretly
- heimlichen** *adv.* privately
- heinliche** *adv.* secretly
- heinliche** *stf* (ô) secrecy, intimacy,  
familiarity
- heiz** *adj.* hot; bitter
- heizen** *stv* (VII) 1) to call, to name;  
**er ist geheizen Gunther** his  
name is Gunther; 2) to be  
called; 3) to give (an) order, to  
order; **h. gân nâch** to send for
- helet(d)** or **helt(d)** *stm* (a) hero
- helfe** *stf* (ô) help; **einem ze helfe**  
**komen** *w. gen.* to save a p. from,  
out of
- helfen** *stv* (III b) to help; **h. der**  
**reise** to help with the prepara-  
tions for an expedition. Cf.  
52; 96
- helflich** *adj.* helpful
- helle** *stf* (ô) hell
- helm** *stm* (a) helmet
- heln** *stv* (IV) to conceal
- helt** *see* **helet**
- hemet(d)** *stn* (a) shirt
- henken** *vv* (*pret.* **hanhte**) to hang  
(one's head)
- her** *stn* (a) army
- her** Lord. When used merely as  
a title together with a proper  
name the noun **herre** was un-  
accented and, therefore, short-  
ened to **her** or even **er**
- her** *adv.* 1) here, hither; 2) up to  
the present, till now; **her nâch**  
**dirre zit** afterwards
- hêr** *adj.* 1) high, of high birth;

- 2) *w. gen.* glad of (N 1570, 3; 1574, 1)
- herberge** *stf* (ô) lodging, inn
- herbergen** *ww* to lodge, to accommodate
- hêre** *adj.* 1) = **hêr** 1; 2) arrogant, insolent (W 198)
- hereberge** = **herberge**
- hervart** *stf* (i) military expedition, campaign
- herverten** *ww* to go on a campaign, on a military expedition, to go to war
- hergeselle** *wm* fellow warrior, companion, comrade
- hêrlîch** *adj.* like a real lord, distinguished, proud, excellent
- hêrlîche(n)** *adv.* in a distinguished manner, impressively, excellently
- herre** *wm* (liege) lord, master, sir, sire; **herren unde mâge** (H 67) my lords and kinsmen
- herrenlîch** *adj.* exquisite (N 925, 2)
- herrenlîche** = **hêrlîchen**
- hêrschaft** *stf* (i) supremacy
- herte** *adj.* hard
- herte** *stf* (ô) ferocious battle
- herze** *wn* heart. Cf. 19
- herzeclîche** *adv.* = **herzenlîche**
- herzeleit(d)** *stn* (a) bitter grief, great distress
- herzelîche** *adv.* bitterly
- herzelîebe** *stf* (ô) heart-felt love, true love
- herzenleit** = **herzeleit**
- herzenlîche swære** deep-felt grief
- herzenlîche** *adv.* truly, thoroughly, deeply, dearly
- herzenlîebe** = **herzelîebe**
- herzenlîep(b)** *adj.* true
- herzenswære** *stf* (ô) bitter grief
- hie** *adv.* here; **hie vor** formerly, in former days
- himmel** *stn* (a) heaven
- himelesch** *adj.* heavenly
- hin** and **hine** *adv.* 1) away, off, forward (61 c); 2) there; **hin nider** down there; **hin über** to the other side; **hin ze** *w. dat.* toward, to
- hinder** *prep. w. acc.* behind
- hinnen** *adv.* (away) from here
- hînte** *adv.* 1) last night; 2) tonight
- hirte** *stn* (ja) shepherd. 17 B
- Hiune** *wm* Hun
- hiunisch** *adj.* Hunnic; **von hiunischen rîchen** from the Empire of the Huns
- hiur, hiure** *adv.* this year
- hiute** *adv.* today
- hôch (hôher)** *adj.* 1) high; 2) excellent, distinguished, noble; 3) proud; 4) aiming high, high-flying (N 302, 3); **ir hôhen spil** (N 441, 2) her contests with high stakes; **hôle minne** see N 47, 1
- hôchvart** *stf* (i) pride; **der hochverte pflegen** to display pride
- hôchgemuot** *adj.* 1) excited, thrilled (N 75, 1; 286, 2; 294, 1); 2) in good spirits, cheerful (A 42)
- hôchgezît** and **hôchzît** *stf* (i) festivity, festival at court, court-fete (with tournaments)
- hôchzîten** *ww* to make a feast, to feast
- hof** *stn* (a) court; **ze hove** to court; at court; **ûfem hove** in the castle-yard
- hovevart** *stf* (i) visit at court
- hovereise** *stf* (ô) = **hovevart**

hof(e)gesinde, hovegesinde *stn*  
(ja) retinue  
hofscheit *stf* (i) respects, atten-  
tions, courtship (paid to the  
ladies by the knights)  
hōhe *adv.* 1) high (up); 2) in a  
high-aiming (lofty) manner  
(N 445, 4); hōhe stân *see* stân  
hōhgeboren *adj.* of high birth  
hōhgemüete *stn* (ja) high spirits  
hol *adj.* hollow  
hol *stn* (a) cave  
holn *ww* 1) to go to get; 2) to  
catch and throw (away) (K  
135, 3)  
holt(d) *adj.* kindly disposed, well-  
meaning, friendly; holder wille  
friendliness, fondness; holt sîn  
*w. dat.* to be fond of, to like;  
ich bin im holt I love him; mîn  
holde the one I love; holden  
hân *w. acc.* to have (a p.) as a  
friend, to keep up friendly re-  
lations with a p.  
holz *stn* wood  
honec(g), honig *stn* honey  
horn *stn* (a) horn  
hort(d) *stn* (a) treasure  
hose *wf* long stocking  
houbet and houbt and haupt *stn*  
(a) head  
hōhen *ww* to heighten, to raise, to  
increase, to improve  
hōnen *ww* 1) to insult; 2) to jeer  
at  
hōren *ww* (*pret.* hōrte) to hear.  
Cf. 99; 102  
hulde *stf* (ô) good-will; *plur.:*  
favor; ze hulden bringen to  
become kindly disposed toward  
hundert hundred  
hunger *stn* hunger

hunt(d) *stn* (a) dog  
huobe *wf* hide (of land)  
huot *stn* (i) hat  
huote *stf* (ô) 1) supervision, con-  
trol, custody, imprisonment;  
2) protection, chaperonage,  
chaperoning; h. hân *w. gen.* to  
guard, to protect  
hûs *stn* (164) house, home; ze  
hûse home(ward)  
hûsfrouwe *wf* hostess  
hût *stf* (i) skin  
hûbsch handsome  
hüeten *ww* to guard, to watch over

## I

ich *pron.* I. 31 a  
ie *adv.* always; ever  
iedoch sô even so, nevertheless  
iegelicher *pron.* each one  
iegeslicher *pron.* each one  
ieglich *pron. adj.* each; any  
ieman and iemen *pron.* anybody  
iemer *adv.* always; for ever; ever,  
at any time; iemer mêre for  
ever  
iender *adv.* somewhere  
ieslich *pron.* each, every, any  
ieslicher each one  
ietweder each one (of two)  
iht *stn* (a) something. *Used as*  
*adv.* at all (N 296, 1). *In sub-*  
*ordinate clauses:* not (e.g.,  
N 101, 2; 274, 3); iht *w. gen.*  
a certain amount of, a certain  
number of (N 347, 3)  
flen *ww* to hurry  
immer *adv.* = iemer; immer mêre  
for all times  
in *prep.* in, to. Cf. 20  
inder anywhere

**ingerber** *stm* (a) ginger  
**ingesinde** (ja) 1) *stn coll.* retinue, household; 2) *plur.* servants  
**innân** *adv.* on the inside  
**inne**: **inne bringen** *w. gen. of th.* to convince a p. of a th.; **inne werden** *w. gen.* to notice, to become aware of  
**inneclich** *adj.* true  
**innecliche** *adv.* heartily  
**inneclîchen** *adv.* truly, thoroughly, indeed, deeply  
**innen** *adv.*: **innen bringen** *w. acc. of p. and gen. of th.* to let a p. see a th.; **innen werden** = **inne werden**  
**inre** *prep. w. dat.* within  
**intheitzen** *ww* to become warm  
**ir** *pron.* 31 c-e  
**irre**: **irre gën** *w. gen.* to be in doubt about a th.  
**Îrriche** *stn* (ja) Ireland  
**irtwingen** = **ertwingen**  
**is** *stn* (a) ice  
**isengewant** *stn* (a) iron armor, coat of mail  
**iteniuwe** *adj.* entirely new. Cf. N 327, 1  
**itewize** *stn* (ja) reproach; **itewize hân** to be blamed  
**itewizzen** to reproach, to blame  
**iuwer** *pron.* your. 31 b and e

## J

**jà** 1) *interj. and adv.* indeed; 2) *conj.* for, as, because, since  
**jagen** *ww* to hunt; to chase  
**jagtgeselle** *wm* member of a hunting-party  
**jâmer** *stm* (a) bitter grief, great distress

**jâmerhaft** *adj.* distressed, grieved  
**jâmerlich** *adj.* full of grief  
**jâmerlîchen** in a pitiable state  
**jâmern** *ww* to long for  
**jár** *stn* (a) year  
**jár lanc** *adv.* from now until next year, for a whole year  
**jâgere** *stm* (ja) hunter  
**jâgermeister** *stm* (a) experienced hunter  
**jâmerlich** *adj.* causing grief  
**jâmerliche** and **jâmerlîchen** *adv.* in bitter grief (N 1008, 2); deplorably (W 451); **dar an ez jâmerlîchen stât** (N 1219, 2) they are in a sad plight  
**jehen** *stv* (V): *pres.* **gihe, gihet, gihet, jehen, jehet, jehent** 1) to talk, to say; **jehenan** to reproach (K 1047, 4); 2) *w. dat. of p. and gen. of th.* to tell about a p., to praise a p. for; 3) *w. gen. of p.* to call a p. something; **eines ze einem kinde j.** to recognize a child as one's own (K 147, 4)  
**jener** *pron. adj.* that  
**jenhâlp**(b) on the other side  
**joch** 1) however (W 479); 2) *in* N 85, 4 *intensifies the adv.*  
**swannen**  
**juden** *stm* (W 280) Jew  
**jugent**(d) *stf* (i) youth  
**junc**(g) young  
**juncfrouwe** *wf* maiden of noble birth, young lady. Accent: **ju'ncfro'uwe** in N 45, 3; 49, 1; 273, 4; **juncvro'uwe** K 106, 3; 1634, 1  
**jungest** last; **unz an ir jungest tage** till the last day of her life; **ze jungest** *adv.* finally, ultimately, eventually



## K

**kâle** *stf* (ô) torture  
**kalt** cold  
**kamerære** *stm* (ja) chamberlain  
 (a court-official); treasurer  
**kamere** *wf* treasure-house  
**kanzwagen** *stm* (a) (heavy) goods-  
 van  
**kapelân** *stm* (a) chaplain  
**kapelsoum** *stm* (a) pack contain-  
 ing liturgical effects  
**kapfen** (*wv*) **an** to stare at  
**kappe** *wf* cope, a liturgical garment  
 (long mantle) of the clergy  
 (Latin *cappa*)  
**karch** strong  
**kärkære** *stm* (ja) dungeon  
**kebse** *wf* concubine  
**kebsen** *wv* to make a p. one's  
 concubine (or: to call her a  
 concubine)  
**kein** *pron.* any; no. Cf. 22 a; 128  
**keiser** *stm* (a) emperor. 137 a.  
**keiserlich** imperial  
**kele** *wf* throat  
**kelte** *stf* (ô) cold weather  
**kemenâte** *wf* ladies' bower, bou-  
 doir, a lady's sitting-room  
**kennen** *wv* (102) to know; *p.p.*  
**bekant** and **erkant**  
**kenpfe** *wm* professional fighter (a  
 dishonorable profession)  
**kêren** *wv* to turn; **umb k.** to turn  
 around; **ez kêren ze** see W 351  
**kib** *stm* (a) abuse, vituperation  
**kiel** *stm* (a) big boat, vessel  
**kiesen** *stv* (II b) 1) to see, to recog-  
 nize; **kiesen lân** to show; 2) to  
 choose, to elect  
**kindel** *stm* (a) child  
**kindelin** *stm* (a) child

**kindesch** childish  
**kint(d)** *stm* (a) child: 1) youth,  
 son, boy; 2) daughter, girl,  
 young lady; *plur.* **diu kint** the  
 young people; **von kinde** from  
 childhood  
**kirche** *wf* church  
**kiste** *stf* (ô) chest, coffer, clothes-  
 box  
**kiusch, kiusche** chaste, modest  
**klâfter** *stf* fathom  
**klage** *stf* (ô) grief (causing com-  
 plaint); lament, the expression  
 of grief, wailing  
**klagede** *adj.* complaining, lament-  
 ing  
**klageliche** see **ergân**  
**klagen** *wv* to complain (about a  
 th.), to lament (over). Cf. 155  
**klâwe** *stf* (ô) claw. 126  
**klê** *stm* (*gen.* **klêwes**, *dat.* **klêwe**)  
 clover  
**kleiden** *wv* to dress  
**kleine** *adj.* unimportant, insignif-  
 icant. *Neuter (w. gen.):* little,  
 not much; not many  
**kleit(d)** *stm* (164 a) clothing,  
 clothes  
**klôsenære** *stm* (ja) hermit  
**klûs** *stf* hermitage  
**knappe** *wm* squire, armor-bearer  
 or attendant on a knight  
**kneht** *stm* (a) 1) = **knappe**; 2) serf  
**knie** *stm* knee  
**kocher** *stm* (a) quiver  
**kocke** *wm* a certain type of ship  
**koln** *wv* to cause distress  
**komen** *stv* (IV) 1) to come; 2) to  
 arrive; 3) to come back, to  
 return; 4) to turn out, to come  
 out, to become; **ze rehte komen**  
 to turn out right. Cf. 70



**koufen** *ww* to gain, to acquire  
**krâ** *stf* crow. Cf. 125; 126  
**krach** *stm* loud, sudden sound;  
 blast  
**krachen** *ww* to crash  
**kraft** *stf* (i) strength. Cf. 18 b  
**kranc** *adj.* weak  
**kreftic(g)** strong  
**krefticliche** and **krefticlich** *adv.*  
 with strength, powerfully  
**kreneche** *wm* crane. W 241  
**krenzelin** *stn* (a) small wreath  
 (symbol of maidenhood)  
**kriechen** *stv* (II a) to creep, to  
 crawl  
**Krist** Christ, God  
**kristen** *stm* (a) a Christian  
**kristenheit** *stf* (i) the Christian  
 people, Christendom  
**kristenlich** *adj.* Christian  
**kristenwip(b)** *stn* (a) Christian  
 woman  
**kriuze** *stn* (ja) cross  
**krône** *stf* (ô) crown  
**krœnen** *ww* to crown  
**krût** *stn* (a) herb, plant. K 72, 2;  
 83, 1. Cf. 164  
**kuche** *wf* kitchen  
**kuchen** *stf* = kuche  
**kumber** *stm* (a) sorrow  
**kumberliche** *adv.* in a wretched  
 way; **kumberliche stân** to cause  
 worry (R 118)  
**kumberlichen** *adv.* full of trouble  
**kûme** *adv.* hardly, with difficulty;  
**vil kûme erbeite** S. (N 303, 1)  
 S. could hardly wait; **kûme**  
**truoc** (N 446, 4) could hardly  
 carry; **entran vil kûme** (N  
 995, 4) narrowly escaped. Cf.  
 H 74  
**kunder** *stn* (a) (fabulous) monster

**kundic(g)** *adj.* known  
**kunft** *stf* (i) arrival  
**kunne** *stn* (ja) *plur.:* relatives,  
 kinsmen  
**kunnen** *v* (33 b; 80) to know how.  
 Cf. 24, 6  
**kunst** *stf* (i) erudition  
**kunt(d)** *adj.* 1) known; **im wart**  
**kunt** he learned about; **im ist**  
**kunt** he knows; **kunt tuon** *w.*  
*dat. of p.* to notify a p., to make  
 a th. known to a p., to show;  
 2) native (N 1417, 1)  
**kurz** *adj.* short; **in kurzen tagen**  
 in a few days  
**kurzewile** *stf* (ô) 1) pleasure, joy;  
 2) entertainment, knightly  
 games  
**kurzewilen** *ww* to enjoy o.s.  
**kurzwile** = **kurzewile**; **durch k.**  
 for amusement, to pass away the  
 time  
**kûcken** *ww* (*pret.* **kuhte**) *refl.* to be  
 roused, to be stimulated  
**kûele** cool  
**kûelen** *ww* (*pret.* **kuolte**) *refl.* to  
 cool off, to refresh o.s.  
**kûene** bold, brave  
**kûnde** *adj.* known  
**kûnde** *stf* (ô) knowledge, informa-  
 tion; **k. hân** *w. gen.* to know;  
**k. gewinnen** *w. gen.* to become  
 acquainted with, to make a p.'s  
 acquaintance  
**kûnden** *ww* to announce; to let  
 (a p.) know  
**kûndic(g)** *adj.* well known  
**kûnec(g)** and **kûnic(g)** *stm* (a)  
 1) king; 2) prince (K 1048, 1)  
**kûnegin** *stf* queen  
**kûniginne** *stf* (ô) 1) queen; 2) prin-  
 cess

**künigriche** *stn* (ja) kingdom  
**künne** *stn* (ja) royal family, house; dynasty  
**künsteclich** *adj.* skilful  
**küntliche** *adv.* clearly, understandably  
**kürzen** *ww* to shorten -  
**küssen** *ww* (*pret.* kuste) to kiss  
 Kissing is part of the welcome held out to an honored guest. In Germany they used to kiss a person on his cheeks or eyes, and only for special distinction on his lips. In France they kissed also nose, chin, and neck

## L

**lachen** *ww* to laugh; to chuckle;  
**an l.** to greet with a laugh  
**laden** *ww* to invite, to attract  
**laden** *stv* (VI) to load  
**lân** *stv* (VII) (*pres. t.:* 32 B. *pret.* lie, liez; *plur.* liezen) 1) to allow, to let; 2) to approve of; 3) to leave behind, to renounce; **lât wesen!** abandon! give up! drop! **den lip lân** to perish, to lose one's life; **wider lân** to return; 4) to abstain from (doing a th.)  
**lanc(g)** *adj.* 1) tall; 2) long (a long time)  
**lange** *adv.* long, for a long time;  
**langer** *compar.* longer  
**langen** *ww* to hand over  
**lant(d)** *stn* (a) 1) land, country; 2) shore, bank  
**la'ntgrâ've** *wm* landgrave (with two accents!)  
**laster** *stn* (a) 1) shame; 2) (mark of) infamy, stigma

**lâzen = lân**  
**lære** *adj.* empty  
**leben** *ww* (Cf. 99) 1) to live, to be alive; 2) *w. acc.* to live through, to experience, to enjoy; 3) *w. gen.* to live on a th.  
**leben** *stn* (a) life  
**le'bendig** alive  
**ledic(g)** *adj. w. gen.* free of  
**legen** *ww* to lay, to put. Cf. 127 b; **dan l.** to put down, to put aside; **sich an l.** to dress; **l. an sich** to put on  
**leger** *stn* lair  
**leide** *stf* (ô) grief; **vor leide** (N 452, 4) from worrying  
**leide** *adv.* sadly; **im geschach leide** he had a tragic experience  
**leiden** *ww* 1) to belittle (N 51, 4); 2) to become unpleasant, displeasing (K 128, 4; W 30); **sich leiden** to become hateful to (K 1650, 3); 3) *impers.* **mir leidet bi** (K 24, 3) I don't like to be with (a p.)  
**leider** *adv.* alas! unfortunately; I am sorry to say. See also **leit**  
**leie** *wm* layman  
**leinen** *ww* to lean, to prop against  
**leisten** *ww* (*pret.* leiste) 1) to render; **triuwe l.** to show loyalty; 2) *w. acc.* to comply with  
**leit(d)** *stn* (a) 1) wrong, harm; 2) pain, sorrow; **leit hân nâch** (N 1416, 4) to long for, to ache for. See also **leide**  
**leit(d)** *adj.* painful, unhappy; **mir ist leit** I am sorry; **im was leit** he was not pleased (was sorry), he regretted; **im wirt leit** he gets sorry. *Comparative:* **leider** (N 855, 4)

- leiten** *ww*: **abe leiten** to divert
- leitesterne** *wm* pole-star, lodestar, guiding star (a guide for the seamen)
- leng** *stf* (ô) length
- lenger** *adv.* (any) longer
- lêre** *stf* (ô) instructions; advice
- lêren** *ww* to teach
- lernen** *ww* to learn
- lesen** *stv* (V) to read
- leste** *adj.* last
- lewe** *wm* lion
- liden** *stv* (I a) to suffer. Cf. 52; **lide, leit, liten, geliten.** Cf. 149
- lieb** see **liep**
- liebe** *adv.* in a pleasing, delightful way
- liebe** *stf* (ô) 1) love, affection, tender attachment; **durch der wæte liebe** for the sake of her clothes; 2) delight, joy. Cf. 59
- lieben** *ww impers.:* **mir liebet bi** I like to be with (a p.)
- liegen** *stv* (II a) to lie
- lieht** *adj.* 1) bright, shining; 2) translucent, allowing the passage of the light; 3) pale
- liep** *adj.* 1) dear, beloved, lovely, agreeable; **im was l.** he was glad; 2) amorous (N 295, 3)
- liep** *stn* (a) 1) joy, happiness; 2) love (H 112); 3) sweetheart, beloved person; **ze liebe hân** to like
- liepliche** *adv.* warmly, heartily
- ligen** *stv* (V) to lie, to rest, to lie in bed; **bî ligen** *w. dat.* to lie in bed with (a p.). Cf. 52; 117; 127 a.
- lihen** *stv* (I b) to lend. Cf. 121 b
- lihte** *adv.* 1) easily, possibly, perhaps; 2) probably, apparently (Neid. 68)
- linde** *wf* linden (tree)
- lintrache** *wm* dragon
- lip(b)** *stm* (a) 1) body; 2) person (Cf. 129); 3) life
- lise** *adv.* 1) inconspicuously (K 88, 4); 2) slowly; **lise treten** to march in a solemn, dignified way (W 257)
- list** *stm* (a) 1) prudent way of acting (W 38); 2) remedy against (**für**) (H 3); 3) *plur.* skill, cunning, ruse, trickery, ability, capability; **von listen** through a ruse, by means of a trick
- listic(g)** *adj.* skilful, cunning
- liuhten** *ww* (*pret.* **lûhte**) to shine, to sparkle; 1. **an** to shine at. Cf. 101 b; 102
- liut** *stn* crew (K 86, 1)
- liut** and **liute** *stm plur.* people
- lobebære** *adj.* 1) covered with glory, famous; 2) deserving praise, praiseworthy (K 105, 3)
- lobelich** *adj.* praiseworthy
- lobeliche** *adv.* in a perfect way, perfectly
- loben** *ww* 1) to praise; 2) to promise; **ez loben** (N 1238, 4) to accept a proposal (of marriage). Cf. 50; 99
- lobesam** *adj.* praiseworthy
- lôn** *stm* reward; **ze lône geben** to grant
- lônen** *ww* 1) *w. dat.* to reward a p.; 2) *w. gen.* to repay for
- lop(b)** *stm* or *stn* (a) 1) praise; 2) reputation, repute
- losen** *ww* to listen
- loufen** *stv* (VII) (*Pret.* **liuf** or **lief**,

*plur.* liefen or luffen; *p.p.* geloufen and geloffen) to run; to go; **an l.** to run against; **nâch l.** to run after; **ze wette l.** to race each other, to run a race  
**lougen** *ww* to flash (N 468, 2)  
**lougen** *ww w. gen.* to deny; **sin l.** (N 863, 3) to clear o.s. of an accusation  
**loup(b)** *stn* foliage, the leaves  
**loesen** *ww* (*pret.* lôste) to untie; **ûz den banden l.** to set free, to release  
**luft** *stm* (i) air  
**lût** and **lûte** *adv.* loud, sonorous, noisy. Cf. 112 e.  
**lûter** *adj.* clear; shiny  
**lûterliche** *adv.* bright, clear  
**lûtertranc** *stm* (a) clear red wine  
**lûge** *stf* (ô) lie, untruth; **lûge jehen** to tell a lie  
**lûsten** *ww* (*pret.* luste) *impers.:* **mich lûstet** *w. gen.* I feel a desire for a th.  
**lützel** and **lützil** *adj.* little, small. *Neuter:* little, not much; **ein l.** a little, somewhat. Cf. 43 b; 88 a.

## M

**mac** see **mugen**  
**machen** *ww* 1) to make; 2) to cause  
**mâge** *stm* (a) *plur.* relatives, kinsmen  
**magedin** *stn* (a) maiden  
**maget** *stf* (i) maiden, girl. Cf. 155  
**magetuom** *stm* maidenhood  
**mahelen** *ww w. dat.* to marry to  
**maht** *stf* (i) power, force, strength  
**man** (34) 1) man, warrior, soldier; 2) liege-man, vassal, retainer;

*plur.* die man the retinue;  
 3) husband  
**man** *pron.* = G. man. *Very often this pronoun is to be translated:* "they, the people" or even "we"  
**mâne** *wm* moon  
**manec** and **manic(g)** *adj.* many a  
**manen** *ww w. gen.* to remind a p. of  
**manheit** *stf* (i) manliness  
**manicvalt** manifold  
**manneglich** everyone  
**marcgrâve** *wm* margrave  
**marke** *stf* (ô) 1) country, land (N 391, 2); 2) half a pound (N 1136, 3)  
**mart** *stm* bargaining  
**mâze** *stf* (ô) 1) moderation, decorum, propriety; **mâze** is the medieval ideal of gentlemanlike behavior corresponding to the *kalokagathia* of the ancient Greek. Cf. S. Singer, *Germanisch-Romanisches Mittelalter* (1935), p. 98; **âne mâze** exceedingly, immensely; 2) good shape, good condition (K 91, 4)  
**mære** *adj.* 1) dear, worthwhile, agreeable; **mir ist als m.** it is just the same to me, I do not care at all; 2) worthy (K 6, 2; 1574, 3)  
**mære** *stn* (ja) mostly used in the plural 1) matters, business; 2) message, news, story, announcement, declaration, information; **niuwe m.** something new; **sunderbære m.** strange things; **mir was gesaget m.** I was told  
**mässe** *stf* (ô) a bulk of certain weight (used to weigh metal)

**mê** *adv.* more; henceforth; **nien** **mê** nobody else; **nimmer** **mê** never again

**meidin** *stn* = **magedin**

**meie** *wm* = **meije**

**meige** *wm* = **meije**

**meije** *wm* (month of) May

**mein** *stm* (a) treacherous intention

**meinen** *wv* 1) to mean, to refer to;  
2) **wol** **meinen** to love

**meinliche** *adv.* in a treacherous way

**meiste** the greatest

**meister** *stm* (a) (great) master;  
**m. sîn** (**über**) to be in command, to control; **an etwaz den** **meister hân** to be surpassed (excelled) in a th.

**meisterschaft** *stf* (i) 1) masterly skill; 2) supreme command, control; **m. halten** to keep under control; 3) victory, championship

**meit(d)** *stf* (i) maiden, girl. Cf. 155

**menege** *stf* (59) multitude

**menigîn** *stf* (59) = **menege**

**menschlichen** *adv.* as a man, like unto man

**mensche** *wm* man

**mer** *stn* (a) the sea; **über mer** across the sea

**mêr** and **mêre** *adv.* 1) = **mê**; **nimmer** **mêr** never again; **mêre** **nie** at no other time; **deheiner** **mêre** no other; **niht** **mêre** and **nihtes** **mêre** nothing else; **nien** **mêre** nobody else; 2) in the future

**mêren** *wv* to increase, to add to;  
**sich** **mêren** to increase, to grow

**merewip(b)** *stn* (a) water-nix

**merken** *wv* 1) to notice, to know;  
2) to remember, to bear in mind

**merker** *stn* person who watches, spy, moralist

**merkind(d)** *stn* (a) = **merwunder**

**mermilstein** *stn* (a) marmor-stone

**merwunder** *stn* (a) fabulous sea-nymph, half woman and half animal

**messe** *stf* (ô) mass

**messezit** *stf* (i) the time when mass was celebrated (early forenoon)

**mete** *stn* (ja) mead (a fermented liquor of honey, water, and spices)

**mettine** *stf* (ô) lauds (a canonical hour for prayer: 3 o'clock in the morning); **mettine** from Latin **matutina**

**mezzen** *stv* (V) to consider

**mezzer** *stn* knife

**michel** *adj.* big, great, intense. Cf. 37 c; 88 a

**michel** *adv.* very

**mîden** *stv* (I a) to avoid. Cf. 52; 53; 149

**mies** *stn* (a) moss

**miete** *stf* (ô) remuneration, reward

**mîle** *stf* (ô) mile (equalling about five American miles)

**milt** and **milte** *adj.* liberal, open-handed, bountiful, generous

**milte** *stf* (ô) open-handedness, liberality, bounty, generosity

**milteclîche** *adv.* liberally, generously

**mîn** *pron.* my. Cf. 31 a and e; 84 b

**minne** *stf* (ô) 1) love(-affair), love-making, courting; **hôhe** **m.** cf. N 47, 1; **nidere** **m.** cf.

- 76, 8 and N 47, 1; 2) marriage; 3) the beloved one (A 96); **ze minne hân** to have somebody as a lover, to be somebody's sweetheart
- minne** *wf* spouse, wife (N 49, 4; 447, 4)
- minneclîch** *adj.* 1) lovely, graceful, charming, amiable; 2) tender, loving; **minneclîche freude** happiness of love, bliss caused by love
- minneclîche** *adv.* 1) worthy of love, deserving to be loved; 2) fascinating (N 136, 3); 3) attractively (N 278, 4; 284, 2); 4) cordially (N 259, 3); 5) kindly (N 290, 2); 6) amorously (N 305, 4)
- minneclîchen** *adv.* amiably, in a kind manner
- minnen** *ww* 1) to love, to make love to; 2) to marry
- minnesinger** *stm* (a) troubadour
- minniclichen** *adv.* tenderly (K 1649, 2)
- missebieten** *stv* (II b) *w. dat.* to oppose
- missediennen** *ww* to offend
- missenhagen** *ww* to displease
- misselingen** *stv* (III a) *impers.:* **mir misselînget** I fail, I miss the mark
- missesagen** *ww* to make a false statement, to tell a falsehood
- missetân** *adj.* wrong
- missewende** *stf* (ô) atrocious crime
- mit** *prep. w. dat.* with, in addition to; both...and. Cf. 20; N 541, 2; N 841, 1
- mite** postposition = **mit**
- mitten** in right in
- môr** *stm* (i) horse
- morgen** *stm* (a) morning
- morgen** *adv.* tomorrow
- morgengâbe** *stf* (ô) gift of the bridegroom to his bride on the morning after the nuptials
- morgenrôt** *stm* dawn
- mortlich** *adj.* bloodthirsty, cold-blooded
- mugen** and **mügen** *v* (33 e; 133): **ich mac** 1) I can, I am able to, I may; 2) I have reason to do a th. (W 412); **du möhtest gerner** (W 296) you should rather; 3) *Pret.* **er mohte** (N 303, 2) he wanted to, he intended to. Cf. 85 a
- mugge** *stf* (ô) gnat
- munt(d)** *stm* (a) mouth, lips
- muome** *wf* aunt (mother's sister)
- muot** *stm* (a) 1) mind, mood, disposition; **in sinem muote** in his mind; **wiser muot** wisdom; **hôher muot** cheerful disposition, high spirits; **in hôhem muote sîn** to be of good cheer; **ellenthafter muot** daring nature; **ir muot** (N 473, 1; 847, 1; R 148) = **si**; 2) (point of) view (W 34); 3) intention; **muot hân** *w. gen.* to contemplate (doing) a th., to have a th. in view, to intend to; **einen muot hân** (N 394, 1) to agree upon (to have a uniform intention); **des en ist mir niht ze muote, daz...** I don't want that
- muoten** *ww w. gen. of th. and dat. of p.* to demand (K 133, 2; 134, 1)
- muoter** *stf* (142 b) mother
- muoz** *see* **müezen**



**muoze** *stf* (ô) leisure  
**mûre** *stf* (ô) stone wall  
**müede** *stf* (ô) weariness  
**müejēn** and **müēn** *ww* (*pret.* **müete** and **muote**) to trouble, to afflict. Cf. 102; N 832, 4  
**müelich** *adj.* difficult  
**müeterlīn** *stn* (a) dear mother  
**müēzen** *v* (33 f; 79): **ich muoz** I must, I have to. Cf. 63; 82 d  
**müēzic**(g) idle, lazy  
**mügen** see **mugen**  
**münster** *stn* (a) cathedral

## N

**nac** (**nackes**) *stm* (a) neck  
**nâch** *adv.* 1) near, close(ly); **nâher** closer; 2) **nâch** and **vil nâch** almost  
**nâch** *prep.* *w. dat.* 1) close to, near; 2) according to, in agreement with; 3) after; **dar nâch** (W 325) *conj.* after; 4) after the death of; 5) for, in hope for, in expectation of, for the purpose of obtaining, with the intention to get  
**nâchgebûre** *wm* neighbor  
**nâhe** *adv.* near, close(ly); **n. gân** to be hard on (R 116)  
**nâhen** *adv.* = **nâhe**  
**nâhen** *prep.* *w. dat.* near, close to  
**nâhen** *ww* to come nearer, to approach  
**nâher** *adv.* closer  
**naht** *stf* (i) night. Cf. 153 b; **eines nahtes** (N 1427, 1) one night  
**nahtegal** *wf* nightingale. Cf. 119  
**name** *wm* name  
**naz**(**nazzer**) *adj.* wet (*w. gen.* from)

**nâhste** *adj.* nearest, next  
**-ne** *negative particle* 83  
**nehe'in** any. 128  
**nehtint** *adv.* last night  
**neigen** *ww* to bend, to incline, to lower; **sich n.** to make a bow as a sign of thanks and reverence  
**nein:** *After a negative question or a negative statement:* yes! certainly!  
**neinâ!** certainly not! you are wrong!  
**nemen** *stv* (IV) to take; **n. w. dat.** to take (away) from; **an sich n.** to acquire; **n. . . für w. acc.** to prefer (a th.) to (a th.); **den tôt n.** to suffer death. Cf. 52; 53  
**nennen** *ww* (*pret.* **nante**; *p.p.* **genant**) 1) to call, to name; 2) to tell the name of  
**neru** *ww* to keep alive  
**nest** *stn* (a) nest  
**nīden** *stv* (I a) *w. dat. of p. and acc. of th.* to envy  
**nidene** *adv.* down  
**nider** and **nidere** *adv.* down, downward  
**nie** *adv.* never, at no time  
**nieman** and **niemen** *pron.* nobody; **niemen mēre** nobody else  
**niemer** *adv.* never, at no time  
**niēnder** *adv.* nowhere  
**niene** *adv.* not (emphasized)  
**niēner** *adv.* nowhere  
**niewan** = **niwan**  
**niezen** *stv* (II b) 1) to avail o.s. of, to make use of (N 1152, 4); 2) to eat (N 940, 2); 3) *w. gen.* to enjoy (A 96)  
**nīgen** *stv* (I a) to thank with a



bow; **sich** *n.* to make a bow, as in salutation  
**niht** nothing; not; 29; **nihtes** *mêr* nothing else  
**ni mêre** at no other time  
**nimmer** never; never again  
**ninder** and **nindert** nowhere  
**nît = niht**  
**nît(d)** *stm* hostility  
**niun, niune** nine  
**niut = niht**  
**niwan** *adv.* only, but, except  
**niwe, niuwe, niu** *adj.* new. Cf. N 87, 1  
**niuweclîche** *adv.* new-fangled  
**noch** *adv.* 1) nor; 2) still, even; **noch nie** never yet  
**nôt** *stf* (i) 1) need, necessity; **âne nôt** unnecessarily, needlessly; 2) cogent reason; **ze nôt** urgently; **in was der reise nôt** they were in a hurry for their trip; 3) danger (N 68, 2; 70, 4; 96, 2; 995, 4); 4) distress, plight, distressed situation (K 97, 4); 5) agony (K 68, 2); 6) trouble, suffering, pain (N 14, 4; 283, 2; 979, 1; 997, 3; 1008, 1), pain caused by longing for a p. (N 1115, 4); **nôt haben** to be depressed; **mir ist nôt nâch** I feel a great desire for, I long for, I ache for  
**nôtig** *adj.* poor, indigent  
**nu** and **nû** 1) *adv.* now; 2) *conj.* since

## O

**ob** *prep. w. dat.* on, above; **ob dem tische** at the head of the table  
**ob** and **obe** *conj.* if, whether

**obene** *adv.* above  
**oder** *adv.* otherwise, else, or  
**offenliche(n)** *adv.* in public  
**ofte** *adv.* often  
**ôheim** *stm* (a) uncle (mother's brother)  
**orden** *stm* (a) order; **geistlich o.** ecclesiastical order, clergy  
**ordenunge** *stf* (ô) arrangement, order  
**ôre** *wn* ear. 19  
**ort** *stn* (a) point, pointed end  
**ouch** *adv.* also, furthermore  
**ouge** *wn* eye. 19  
**ougenblic** *stm* (a) glance  
**ougenweide** *stf* (ô) delightful sight  
**ouwe** *stf* (ô) rich pasture-land, low-lying meadow-land (especially near water)  
**ouwê = owê**  
**ouwen** *ww* to be carried away by the current  
**owê** and **ôwê = wê**  
**owen** *see* **ouwen**

## Œ

**œdelichen** *adv.* in a silly way

## P

**palas** *stm* (a) the hall (main part of a castle)  
**pantel** *stn* (a) panther  
**pensel** *stm* (a) (painter's) brush  
**per** *wm* bear  
**permint** *stn* (a) parchment, parchment manuscript (with miniature painting)  
**pfaffe** *wm* priest  
**pfant(d)** *stn* (a) pledge  
**pfat(d)** *stn* (a) path

**pfâwe** *wm* peacock  
**pfelle** *stm* (ja) an expensive kind of silk  
**pfellel** *stm* (a) = pfelle  
**pfienstmorgen** *stm* (a) Whit-Sunday morning, Pentecost morning  
**pflege** *wf* guardianship, care  
**pflegen** *stv* (V) *w. gen.* 1) to take care of, to have charge of; 2) to be engaged in, to do (something); **man pflicht, daz...** it is customary that...; **grüezen pflegen** = **grüezen**; **triuten pflegen** = **triuten**; **werfene pflegen** = **werfen**; **weinens pflegen** = **weinen**; 3) to possess, to have  
**pfunt(d)** *stn* (a) pound  
**phellerin** *adj.* made of fine silk  
**phluoc(g)** *stm* plow  
**phose** *wm* a bag fastened to the belt  
**pilgerin** *stm* (a) crusader  
**pirsen** *stn* (a) hunt, hunting-expedition, shooting-party  
**pirsgewant** *stn* (a) hunting-garb  
**plân** *stm* (a) common, green, grass-plot  
**po'isûn** *stm* (a) (magic) love-potion, philter  
**porte** *wm* (woven) ribbon  
**porte** *stf* (ô) gate  
**pouc(g)** *stm* (a) bracelet  
**priester** *stm* (a) priest  
**pris** *stm* (a) the highest distinction, highest honors  
**prisen** *wv* 1) to praise (K 4, 3); 2) to call (a p.) happy (A 60)  
**prüeven** *wv* to arrange, to prepare  
**punt** see **bunt**  
**pusûne** *stf* (ô) trombone

## Qu

**queln** *wv* to torture

## R

**râ** (**râwer**) raw, not cooked  
**ragen** *wv* to stick out  
**râme** *stf* (ô) goal, the object of one's desire  
**rant(d)** *stm* (a) rim (of the shield); **schildes rant** shield. Often **rant** alone = **schilt**  
**rât** *stm* (i) 1) deliberation; **nâch râte senden** to call a meeting; **ze râte werden** or **ze râte gân** to take counsel; **mit gemeinem râte** after deliberating together, upon a joint decision; 2) information, advice, suggestion; **ez möhte sin werden rât** It might be possible to help him; 3) supply, provisions; **einem den rât füegen** to procure (sufficient) means; 4) abandonment; **rât haben** or **rât hân** *w. gen.* to abstain from, to give up, to renounce, to forego, to deny o.s. a th.; **eines dinges ze râte tuon** to put an end to; **eines dinges mac werden rât** a thing can be avoided; 5) perfidy, treachery  
**râten** *stv* (VII) 1) to deliberate on, to resolve; 2) to instigate, to plan; 3) to give an order (N 840, 1); 4) to give advice, to advise, to make a suggestion (suggestions), to recommend; **daz rât ich iu** I give you this advice  
**rechen** *stv* (IV) to avenge; **sinen**

- zorn r.** to wreak one's vengeance; **sich rechen** to take vengeance; **gerochen werden** to get satisfaction
- recke w<sub>m</sub>** knight-errant (a knight who went in quest of adventure, to show his chivalry)
- recken w<sub>v</sub>**: **dar recken** to hold out
- rede st<sub>f</sub>** (ô) talk, what one says; **rede vermiden** to keep silent; **rede tuon** to speak; **wan einer rede** in unison, conformably, uniformly
- reden w<sub>v</sub>** to speak, to say. Cf. 158
- reht adj.** right, true, real, regular, proper, well done; **r. sagen** to say the truth; **rehte sinne** sound mind; **ze rehter messezite** at the regular time of mass
- reht st<sub>n</sub>** (a) right, law, justice; **von rehte** or **mit rehte** justly; **ze rehte** by rights, according to the law, lawfully (W 231); **etwaz ze rehte vinden** (K 148, 3) to find out the truth about a th.
- rehte adv.** the right way, rightly, correctly, really
- reie w<sub>m</sub>** = **reige**
- reien w<sub>v</sub>** to dance the **reige**
- reige w<sub>m</sub>** a certain kind of dance (danced outdoors in spring and summer), suggesting a march, in form of a ceremonial procession (cf. "polonaise" and "grand march")
- rein** and **reine adj.** pure, chaste, sinless, without sin
- reise st<sub>f</sub>** (ô) 1) journey, trip; 2) campaign, expedition
- rêren w<sub>v</sub>**: **ûz rêren** to strew about, to sow
- rich** and **riche adj.** 1) rich, wealthy; **r. w. gen.** or **r. von w. dat.** rich in; **tugende (gen.) rich** excellent; 2) precious, valuable; 3) pompous, luxurious, expensive; 4) mighty; **got der riche** God Almighty
- riche st<sub>n</sub>** (ja) kingdom, empire, realm
- richliche adv.** abundantly
- riechen st<sub>v</sub>** (II a) to be full of vapor (smoke)
- rieme w<sub>m</sub>** strap
- riezen st<sub>v</sub>** (II b) to shed tears
- rihen st<sub>v</sub>** (I b) Cf. 121 b
- rihten w<sub>v</sub>** to declare upon oath; **ûf rihten** to raise
- rimpfen st<sub>v</sub>** (III a) *refl.* to be withering (with pain)
- Rin st<sub>m</sub>** Rhine river
- rinc(g) st<sub>m</sub>** (a) 1) ring, arena; 2) meeting-place of a court, court-meeting; 3) mail
- ringen st<sub>v</sub>** (III a) 1) to long for; 2) to wrestle; **mit dem tôde r.** to be in the grip of death; **ringen umbe** to strive for; 3) to labor, to take pains
- ringen w<sub>v</sub>** to ease, to appease
- rîs st<sub>n</sub>** (a) twig
- rise w<sub>m</sub>** giant
- rîten st<sub>v</sub>** (I a) to ride (on horseback)
- ritter st<sub>m</sub>** (a) knight
- ritterlich adj.** knightly; **r. gewant** knight's garb
- ritterlich adv.** like a knight
- ritterschaft st<sub>f</sub>** (i) spirit of chivalry, knightly manners
- riwe** and **riuwe w<sub>f</sub>** grief, sorrow

**riuwen** *stv* (II a) (cf. 166 a) to aggrieve; **mich riuwet daz** I regret this, I feel sorry for (my action); **er riuwet mich** I regret him, I am stricken with grief on account of his death

**rock** *stm* (a) coat

**rôr** *stn* (a) reed, reed-plot

**ros** (rosses) see **ross**

**rôse** *wf* rose

**rôsenvar** (-rwer) *adj.* rosy, rose-colored

**rôsenrôt** *adj.* rosy red

**ross** *stn* (a) horse; **ze rossen** on horseback, mounted

**rôt** *adj.* red

**rouben** *wv* 1) to rob a p. of a th. (D 48); 2) to obtain by looting, plundering (K 1567, 1)

**roup**(b) *stm* booty

**rucke** *stm* (ja) back

**rucken** *wv* to move; **den tisch r.** to rise from the table

**rûmen** *wv* to leave

**ruochen** *wv* to care to, to deign to

**ruofen** *stv* (VII) and **rüefen** *wv* (*pret.* **ruofte**) 1) to call, to shout; 2) *w. dat.* or **r. nâch** *w. dat.* to summon, to call for, to shout to. Cf. 78 b

**ruowe** *stf* (ô) rest

**ruowen** *wv* to rest

**rüefen** see **ruofen**

**rüemen** *wv refl. w. gen.* to boast of

**rüeren** *wv* (*pret.* **ruorte**; *p.p.* **gerüert**) to touch

**rüetelin** *stn* (a) magic rod, fairy wand

## S

**sâ** *adv.* soon; **sâ zehant** immediately afterwards

**sage** *stf* (ô) hearsay; **von s.** from what I have been told

**sagen** *wv* (127 c) to say, to tell, to decide; **si sageten im rehte die reise** they told him the truth about the trip

**sal** *stm* (building consisting of one) hall

**salwen** *wv* to become dirty

**sam** *adv.* likewise, the same, just so; **sam ob** as if

**sam** *conj.* just as, as if

**sâme** *wm* seed

**samene** and **samne**: **ze samene** and **ze samne** together

**sân** *adv.* promptly, immediately

**sanc(-ges)** *stm* song, singing

**sanfte** *adv.* 1) well; **mir was s.** I was well; **s. tuon** to do good, to give pleasure to . . . ; 2) gently, quietly, peacefully; 3) easily

**sanfter** *comp. adv.* 1) rather; 2) better

**sant(d)** *stm* (a) sands, bank, shore

**sant** *prep. w. dat.* with

**sât** *stf* seeds, crop sown

**satelen** *wv* to saddle the horses

**sælde** *stf* (ô) 1) supreme happiness, salvation; 2) *plur.* good fortune, good luck

**sælic(g)** *adj.* 1) lucky; favored by God; 2) blessed, of blessed memory (R 73)

**sælicliche** *adv.* luckily, with God's blessing

**schachære** *stm* (ja) robber

**schade** *wm* damage, harm, injury, loss; **ir schade** what she had lost, suffered; **einem schaden tuon** to make a p. suffer, to put a p. at a disadvantage

**schaden** *wv* to do harm

- schaffen** *stv* (VI) 1) to make ready, to arrange, to establish; **sch. zuo ze** to give to, to assign to; 2) to order; 3) **ez schaffen** to behave
- schaft** *stm* (i) 1) shaft of a lance; 2) lance
- schal** (-les) *stm* (a) 1) jubilation, noisy merriment; 2) noise; **ze schalle werden** to get talked about; 3) singing
- scham** *stf* sense of shame
- schameliche** *adv.* ignominiously
- schamen** *wv refl.* 1) to feel embarrassed; 2) *w. gen.* to be ashamed of
- schamlichen** *adv.* blushing with shame
- schande** *stf* (ô) disgrace, dishonor
- schaperûn** *stm* (a) hooded cloak
- schar** *stf* (ô) 1) troop; 2) crowd, gang
- scharf** and **scarpf** *adj.* sharp; smarting
- schate** *wm* (113, 15) or *stm* (Neid. 15) shade
- schatz** and **schaz** (**schatzes**) *stm* riches
- shedelich** *adj.* disastrous
- scheiden** *stv* (VII) 1) to separate, to exclude, to ostracize; 2) to deliver, to free of; 3) to settle (a dispute), to decide; 4) to leave, to depart; **scheiden dannen** to leave, to depart; **scheiden von** *w. dat.* to leave (behind); **mit urloube scheiden** to take leave; *p.p.* **hin gescheiden** deceased, dead; 5) **scheiden von** (*intransitive*) to be freed of; 6) **sich scheiden** to scatter, to separate. Cf. 78 b
- schelden** *stv* (III b) to belittle, to make depreciatory remarks about (a p.)
- schelten** *stv* (III b) 1) to blame, to reprimand; 2) to disdain, to scorn; 3) to insult; *p.p.* **bescholten**
- schenden** *wv* to disgrace, to bring shame upon
- schenke** *wm* cup-bearer
- schenken** *wv* to pour (a drink), to give to drink
- scherm** *stm* (a) protection
- schiere** *adv.* 1) soon; **vil schiere** at once; 2) immediately, right away (A 46); 3) so soon, already (D 34)
- schiezen** *stv* (II b) 1) to shoot, to throw; 2) to shoot at, to hit; 3) to kill (with a shot)
- schif** and **schiff** *stn* (a) ship, boat
- schiffelin** *stn* (a) boat
- schifliute** *stm pl.* sailors
- schifman** *stm* master (of a vessel), skipper
- schilt**(d) *stm* (a) shield
- schiltvezzel** *stn* (a) shield-strap (to hang the shield on the shoulders)
- schimphen** *wv* to play
- schîn** *stm* (a) 1) shine, light, splendor, luster; **der sunnen schîn** the sunshine; **mit schîne liuhten** to shed a luster; 2) appearance; **schîn tuon** to show; **schîn werden** to appear, to become manifest, to reveal o.s.
- schinden** *stv* (III a) to skin
- schinen** *stv* (I a) to be visible, to be manifest, to be in sight, to appear, to manifest o.s., to look; **schinen ab** *w. dat.* to contrast

with, to stand out against;  
**schinen lân** to show  
**schirmen** *ww* to parry (a thrust), to ward off (a blow)  
**schône** *adv.* (of **schœene**) nicely, beautifully  
**schönen** *ww* to demonstrate a th. in all its beauty, to show the beauty of a th.  
**schopf** *stm* the hair on the head  
**schouwen** *ww* to fix one's eyes on, to view, to inspect, to examine, to judge, to look on at, to watch;  
**lâzen schouwen** to show, to display  
**schœene** *adj.* beautiful, handsome  
**schœene** *stf* (ô) beauty, good looks.  
 Cf. 59  
**schœenen** *ww* to make beautiful  
**schrâwaz** *stm* goblin, kobold  
**schrien** *stv* (I) to scream, to yell.  
 121 c.  
**schrift** *stf* (i) Scriptures  
**schrin** *stm* (a) chest, large box  
**schrôten** *stv* (VII) to smash, to break to pieces  
**schulde** *stf* (ô) 1) guilt, fault; 2) (good) reason; **âne schulde** without cause, without reason; **von schulden** justly, for good reason(s); **von welhen schulden** for what reason; **von wâren schulden** as in duty bound; **von dinen schulden** on account of you; **von ir schulden** on account of her, because of her  
**schuo** *wm* shoe  
**schuoch** (**schuohe**) *stm* (a) shoe  
**schuz** (**schuzzes**) *stm* (i) shot  
**schütten** *ww* (*pret.* **schutte**) to shake  
**sê** *stm* (*gen.* **sêwes**, *dat.* **sêwe** and

**sê**, *acc.* **sê**) lake, sea; **an den sê** to sea. The distinction between **G. der See** "lake" and **die See** "sea" came into use only during the 18th century.  
**sedel** *stm* (a) seat  
**segel** *stm* (a) sail  
**sehen** *stv* (V) to see, to glance, to look; **an sehen** to look at; **umbe sehen** to look around  
**sehs, sehse** six. Cf. 60 d. *With gen.* in N 258, 2  
**sehste** *adj.* sixth  
**sehstehalp**(b) five and a half  
**sehzec** and **sehziç**(g) sixty  
**seine** *adv.* slowly; late  
**selbe**: **selbe vierder** together with three others; **selbe zwelfte** together with eleven others  
**selde** *stf* (ô) *plur.* royal residence  
**sêle** *stf* (ô) soul  
**selp**(b) (the) same, (my)self. 106  
**selten** *adv.* rarely, never. Cf. 43 b  
**seltsæne** peculiar  
**sende** = **senende**, see **senen** *ww*;  
**sende nôt** pain caused by longing (for a p.); **sende sorge** sorrow caused by longing  
**senden** *ww* to send. Cf. 99 c  
**senede** = **senende**, see **senen** *ww*  
**seneliche** *adv.* pathetically  
**senen** *ww refl.* to be tortured by longing; **senende sorge** (nôt) grief (pain) caused by longing  
**senen** *stn* (a) longing  
**senfte** *adj.* agreeable, gentle  
**senften** *ww* 1) to diminish, to be eased, assuaged; 2) to calm down, to quiet  
**senken** *ww* (*pret.* **sancte**) to drop (into the water)  
**sêr** *stn* (a) 1) pain; 2) grief



**sêre** *adv.* vehemently, very much, severely, strongly, energetically; **ze sêre** too much; **sêre wunt** seriously injured, fatally wounded

**setzen** *ww* (*pret.* **saste** and **sazte**)  
1) to set, to put; **ûf setzen** to put on a p.'s head; 2) to establish. 131, 3

**si, sî** *pron.* she; they. 31 d; 75 a

**siben** and **sibene** seven

**sibende** seventh

**si'benhu'ndert** seven hundred

**si'benze'hene** seventeen

**sic(g)** *stm* (a) victory

**sicher** sure, certain

**sicherheit** *stf* (i) parole; a pledge of honor by a prisoner that he will not seek to escape, will not serve against his captors, and will be at their disposal

**sicherlichen** *adv.* certainly

**sichern** *ww w. dat. of p. and gen. of th.* to give a p. assurance of, to promise solemnly (by shaking hands)

**sîde** *wf* silk

**side** *conj.* since

**sîdeln** *ww* to find a resting place for somebody, to let him encamp

**sider** *adv.* since, later

**sîdîn** *adj.* of silk

**siech** sick

**sieden** *stv* (II b) to boil. 149

**sige** *stm* (ja) = **sic**

**sigenunft** *stf* (i) victorious campaign

**silber** *stn* (a) silver

**sin** *stm* (a) 1) *sing.* sound mind, senses; 2) *plur.* **sinne** senses, sound mind, intelligence, judg-

ment, understanding; **niht der sinne hân** to be entirely unsuspecting

**sîn** *pron.* his; 31 c and e; 84 b

**sîn** *v* (25; 105) 1) to be; 2) Cf. 160

**singen** *stv* (III a) to sing; 104; **messe singen** to say mass

**sinnen** *stv* (III a): **s. nâch** to consider

**sint** *adv.* since, later

**sît** *adv.* since, later, afterwards, then, since that time, ever since

**sît** *conj.* because, as, since; **sît daz** id.

**site** *stm* (ja) 1) **in vroelichem site** in a happy mood; 2) *plur.* **site** habit, habits, customs

**site** *wf* side, hip

**sitzen** *stv* (V. Cf. 52; 117) to sit (down); **saz** (N 1113, 3; K 8, 4) lived; **sâzen** (N 332, 1) were sitting

**siuften** *ww* to sigh

**slac(g)** *stm* (i) blow. 18

**slâf** *stm* (a) sleep

**slâfen** *stv* (VII) to sleep. 52; 78 b

**slahen** *stv* (VI) 1) (*p.p.* **geslagen**) to strike, to hit; **kreftelich sl.** to strike a powerful blow; **an slahen** to whip; 2) to chop off; 3) (*p.p.* **erslagen**) to slay; **tôt sl.** to put to death, to kill, to slay; 4) (*p.p.* **geslagen**) to use (iron) when forging a th.; (N 450, 2). Cf. 125; 149

**slahte** *stf* (ô) kind, sort. 30

**sleht** smooth

**slîchen** *stv* (I a) 1) to go (somewhere) while keeping under cover; to come, to approach unnoticed, without being seen; 2) to have a humble gait, to



- walk with bent head; **nâch slîchen** to follow with a modest demeanor
- slieden** *stv* (II a) to slip
- sliezen** *stv* (II b) 1) to close, to lock; 2) to build (N 1113, 1)
- slüzzel** *stm* (a) key. 16
- slüzzelîn** *stn* (a) little key. 16; 107
- smæhe** contemptible
- smiegen** *stv* (II a) to press
- smielen** *wv* to smile
- smit(d)** *stm* (a) (gold)smith
- snê** *stm* snow
- snêblanc** white as snow
- snel (sneller)** energetic, vigorous, fast
- snîde** *stf* (ô) edge
- snîden** *stv* (I a) to cut; **abe s.** to cut off; **enzwei s.** to cut in two, to cut through. 149
- sô** *adv.* 1) so; **sô stolz** so proud; 2) thus, therefore. Cf. 86, 35; N 333, 3; 3) on the other hand; 4) In a concluding sentence: then. But often not to be translated. Cf. 32 A, 16; 58
- sô** *conj.* 1) if, when; 2) as, like; 3) as soon as
- sol** see **suln**
- solch** and **solh** such (a). 90
- solden** *wv* (*p.p.* **gesolt**) to make donations to
- soldenære** *stm* (ja) mercenary soldier
- solt(d)** *stm* (a) pay, payment
- sorclîchen** *adv.* with worries, in a state of worry (N 842, 4)
- soreclîche** *adv.* in a state of alarm (N 463, 4)
- sorge** *stf* (ô) sorrow, grief, uneasiness, worry, apprehension, anxiety; **sorge hân** to worry
- sorgen** *wv* to worry, to be worried
- soum** *stm* (a) load of a pack-horse
- soumære** *stm* (ja) pack-horse
- soumen** *wv* to convey (send) on pack-horses; **ûf s.** to put (a load) on a pack-horse
- spange** *wf* metal strap, metal band
- spanne** *wf* span
- spât** and **spâte** *adv.* late
- spehen** *wv* to see
- sper** *stm* (a) spear, lance
- sperrén** *wv* (*p.p.* **gespart**) *w. gen.* to prevent from something
- spiegel** *stm* (a) mirror
- spil** *stn* (a) knightly contest
- spilen** *wv* to engage in knightly contests, in tournaments
- spîse** *stf* (ô) food
- spîsen** *wv* to feed
- spor** *wm* spur. 119
- spot** *stm* (a) 1) jest; **spot üeben** to make fun of; **sunder spot** seriously; 2) scorn, contempt; 3) target for mockery, laughing-stock
- sprechen** *stv* (IV) 1) to say; 2) *w. acc.* to talk to; 3) *w. dat.* to speak of; 4) to summon; **einen tac sprechen** to call a court-day
- springen** *stv* (III a) 1) to jump; **wite springen** to make a long jump; **den reigen sp.** to dance the reige; 2) to run; 3) to spurt; 4) to fly forth, to scintillate
- spruch** *stm* (i) talk, talking
- sprunc(g)** *stm* (i) jump
- spürhant** *stm* (a) bloodhound
- stahel** > **stâl**. 125
- stahelherte** *adj.* (as) hard as steel

**stahelzein** *stm* (a) small staff of steel

**stâl** *stm* (a) steel

**stân** *stv* (71; 77 f) to stand, to be standing. Cf. 66; **nider stân** to descend, to get off (a horse), to dismount; **stân vor** *w. dat.* to excel, to surpass, to eclipse; **stân von** to get off (a horse), to dismount (N 1206, 2); to get up from, to leave (N 941, 3; 1215, 1); **lobeliche stân** *w. dat.* to be a credit to a p.; **ez stât im hôhe** he has to pay dearly for that

**starc** strong, firm; heavy, great; enormous, gigantic; serious. 74 a

**stat** *stf* (i) place; city. 152 d

**stat** (-des) *stn* shore

**staten: einem ze staten komen** to give a p. pleasure

**stæte** *adj.* 1) permanent, lasting, persevering, persistent, faithful; 2) binding (K 1043, 3); 3) firm, unyielding (W 35); **stæter site** stubbornness, obstinacy (K 1045, 1)

**stæte** *stf* (ô) 1) steadfastness, perseverance, constancy; 2) faithfulness, fidelity

**stætekeit** *stf* (i) faithfulness, fidelity

**stætelôs** *adj.* fickle

**stechen** *stv* (IV) to prick, to puncture

**stecke** *wm* stick

**stecken** *wv* to be firmly implanted, to be stuck fast; **st. lân** to leave

**stegen** *wv* to lead to (**ze** *w. dat.*), to show to

**stein** *stm* (a) stone, rock

**steinwant(d)** *stf* (i) rocky shore

**stelen** *stv* (IV) to steal

**stellen** *wv* (*p.p.* **gestalt**) **an** *w. dat.* to practice on a p.

**stên = stân.** 71

**sterbe** *stm* (ja) death

**sterben** *stv* (III b) to die

**sterke** *stf* (ô) strength. 59

**sterne** *wm* star

**stic(g)** *stm* (a) path

**stich** *stm* (a) stab, thrust

**stieben** *stv* (II a) to scintillate, to flash

**stigen** *stv* (I a) to rise

**stille** *adj.* still, quiet

**stôle** *stf* (ô) stole; an ecclesiastical vestment, namely, a narrow band worn by the priest (hung around his neck with the ends falling down in front) while officiating. It is a symbol of priestly power, of authority, and of the yoke of obedience.

**stolz** proud

**stôzen** *stv* (VII) to push. 78 b

**stoeren** *wv* (*pret.* **stôrte**) to destroy

**strâfen** *wv* to punish

**strâl** *stm* (a) arrow

**strâze** *stf* (ô) street, road

**strichen** *stv* (I a) to hurry, to speed

**stricken** *wv* (*pret.* **strihte**) to knit

**strit** *stm* (a) fight, combat

**strîten** *stv* (I a) 1) to fight. Cf. 94; **strîten ab** *w. dat.* to conquer from; 2) to lay claim to (W 403)

**stritgewant** *stn* (a) armor

**strozze** *wf* throat, windpipe

**strûchen** *wv* to stumble

**stunde** *stf* (ô) time, occasion; **tûsint stunden** a thousand times;

- in aller stunde** always; **under stunden** sometimes  
**stunt** = **stunde** (140 c): **zeiner stunt** once, one time; **zaller stunt** all the time; **bî der stunt** at that occasion  
**stuol** *stm* (i) chair; **der stuol ze Rôme** the Holy See. W 265  
**sturm** *stm* (i) battle  
**stücke** *stn* (ja) piece  
**suln** and **sûln** *v* (33 d; 122 A): **ich sol** I shall, I must; **solde** or **solte** was (supposed) to, had to. Cf. 63; 93; 99 c  
**sumber** *stm* (a) drum  
**sûmen** *ww* 1) to be tardy, to be slow; 2) to stay  
**sumer** *stm* (a) summer. The warm season in contrast with the cold season (winter), therefore, including "spring."  
**sumerlich** *adj.* during the summer  
**sumerwunne** *stf* (ô) pleasure and happiness emanating from the summer activities  
**sumerzit** *stf* (i) summertime  
**sun** *stm* (i) son  
**sunder** *prep.* *w. acc.* without; **sunder scheiden** to separate  
**sunderbære** peculiar, strange  
**sundernôt** *stf* (i) extraordinary danger  
**sundersprâchen** *ww* to have a private talk  
**sunne** *wf* sun  
**sunnenheiz** sun-warm  
**suochen** *ww* 1) to seek, to go in search of; 2) to visit, to come to visit  
**suon** *stm* (i) = **sun**  
**suone** *stf* (ô) reconciliation, conciliatory attitude  
**sus** *adv.* so, like this. N 14, 3  
**süenen** *ww* to settle (a conflict); **ez süenen** to come to an amicable arrangement  
**süeze** 1) mild; 2) melodious; 3) dear, charming  
**sûln** see **suln**  
**sünde** *stf* (ô) sin  
**sündig** sinful  
**swâ** *conj.* wherever; **swâ sô** id.  
**swach** 1) insignificant, trifling; 2) lowly, of mean birth; 3) evil, bad  
**swachen** *ww* to degrade  
**swann** whenever, every time when  
**swannen** and **von swannen** from wherever  
**swar** in whatever direction  
**swarz** black  
**swaz** *pron.* 1) what(so)ever; 2) *w. gen. sing.* as much as; 3) *w. gen. plur.* as many as. Cf. 91 b  
**swære** *adj.* heavy, hard; **swære tragen** to carry heavy loads  
**swære** *stf* (ô) 1) weight; 2) trouble; 59  
**sweben** *ww* to hover  
**sweder** *pron.* which one of two, the one (of two) who  
**sweigen** *ww w. gen.* to quiet, to reduce to silence  
**sweim** *stm* (a): **ze sweime** in a swaying, wavering gait  
**swelch** (**swelher**) whatever; who-(so)ever  
**swenn** and **swenne** *conj.* anytime, every time when; whenever  
**swer** *pron.* who(so)ever. 91 b  
**swern** *stv* (VI) to confirm by oath, to promise upon oath; **eide swern** *w. gen.* to swear, to take

oaths upon; to promise upon oath. Cf. 77 e  
**swert** *stm* (a) sword  
**swester** *stf* (142 b) sister  
**swestersuon** *stm* (i) nephew  
**swichen** *stv* (I a) *w. dat.* to fail a p., to be wanting  
**swie** *conj.* 1) in what way so ever; **swie du wilt** any way you want it; 2) although; **swie vil** as many as, as much as  
**swigen** *stv* (I a) to be silent, to keep silence, not to talk  
**swimmen** *stv* (III a) to swim  
**swimmen** *stn* (a) swimming  
**swin** *stn* (a) wild boar  
**swinde** *adj.* vehement  
**swinde** *adv.* terribly, bitterly  
**swinden** *stv* (III a) to disappear, to vanish  
**swingen** *stv* (III a) to toss, to hurl; **sich swingen** to throw o.s.  
**swint(d)** *adj.* terrible

## T

**tac(g)** *stm* (a) day; 16 a; **des tages** on that day  
**tagen** *wv impers.:* **ez taget** the day is breaking, the day is dawning  
**tal** *stn* valley; **ze tal** down, downstream, downwards  
**tan** *stm* (a) forest  
**tanz** *stm* (i) dance  
**tanzten** *wv* to dance  
**tar** see **turren**  
**tarnhût** *stf* (i) = **tarnkappe**  
**tarnkappe** *wf* magic hood  
**tägelichen** *adv.* any day, at any time  
**teil** *stm* (a) 1) part; 2) share,

portion; **ein teil** very much; **ze teile werden** to fall to a p.'s share; **mîn teil** (R 57) = **ich**  
**teilen** *wv* 1) to divide; 2) to assign; 3) to arrange; 4) to share; **mir mite teilen** to share with me  
**tief** *adj.* deep  
**tievel** *stm* (a) Satan  
**tievelinne** *stf* (ô) she-devil, devil of a woman  
**tier** *stn* (a) animal  
**tisch** *stm* (a) table  
**tiufel** *stm* (a) devil, Satan  
**tiure** *adj.* 1) valuable, precious, of high personal value; Cf. 74 c; N 833, 2; 2) distinguished (K 115, 3)  
**tiure** *adv.* for a high price (W 303)  
**tiuren** *wv:* **getiuret werden** to win prestige  
**tiutsch** *adj.* German  
**tiwer** = **tiure**  
**toblische** *adv.* inflamed with rage  
**tohter** *stf* (142 b) daughter  
**tôre** *wm* fool. 19  
**tôt** *adj.* dead  
**tôt(d)** *stm* (a) 1) death; 2) killing, murder, assassination  
**touc** see **tugen**  
**toufen** *wv* to baptize  
**tougen** *adv.* 1) invisibly (W 203); 2) secretly  
**tougen** *wv* to be useful, to be good, to be of value **|| 16116 tôte**  
**tougenlich, tougenlichè, tougenlichen** *adv.* 1) invisibly (N 463, 3); 2) secretly (N 441, 3)  
**töhterlîn** *stn* (a) little daughter  
**töerschen** *adv.* like a fool, in a silly manner  
**töeten** *wv* to kill  
**trâge** *adv.* reluctantly

**tragen** *stv* (VI) (Cf. 52; 77; 127 c) 1) to carry; 2) to bring; 3) to wear; 4) **an tragen** to commit, to enact, to achieve, to bring about; 5) to suffer

**tragent** (= **tragende** *pres. part.*):  
**høhe tragent** (N 289, 3) proud

**trahen** *stm* (i) tear; *plur. trähene*

**tranc** *stm* (a) drink, potion

**traz** (**trazes**) *stm*: **ûf minen traz** in order to annoy me

**træge** *adj.* slow, reluctant

**treten** *stv* (V) 1) to step (W 201); 2) to walk (W 363); **treten abe** *w. dat.* to descend from (K 1575, 4)

**triben** *stv* (I a) 1) to drift; 2) to achieve

**triegen** *stv* (II a) 1) to deceive; 2) to lead astray, to seduce

**trinken** *stv* (III a) to drink

**trit** (**trittes**) *stm* (a) step

**triuuten** *wv* (*pret. trûte* or *trûtte*)  
 1) to caress, to fondle; 2) to be in love with; 3) to marry

**triuinne** *stf* (ô) the beloved one, spouse

**triuwe** *stf* (ô) 1) sincerity, loyalty, faith; **mit triuwen** sincerely; **mit rehten triuwen** properly, duly; **bi den triuwen** by Jove; 2) pledge of honor (H 74)

**triuwen** *adv.* indeed, certainly

**trôst** *stm* (a) consolation, comfort

**troum** *stm* (a) dream

**troumen** *wv* to dream. Cf. N 12, 1; W 435

**trouwen** *wv* 1) to think o.s. capable of, to believe o.s. able to do a th.; 2) to believe confidently; **ine trowes niht** I doubt

**trœsten** *wv* (*pret. trôste*) 1) to

console, to comfort, to cheer up. Cf. N 69, 2; 2) **sich trœsten** *w. gen.* to cheer up (on account of)

**trukken** *adj.* dry

**truhsæze** *wm* steward, one who serves the meals

**trumbe** *wf* trumpet

**trûrec(g)** and **trûric(g)** *adj.* 1) sad, depressed, unhappy; 2) *w. gen.* sympathetic

**trûreclîche** *adv.* sadly

**trûren** *wv* to grieve, to be grieved

**trûric** see **trûrec**

**trût** *stm* or *stn* (a) sweetheart; spouse

**trûtgespil** *wf* dear friend

**trûebe** *adj.* dark, sad

**trûeben** *wv* to sadden

**tûbe** *stf* (ô) dove

**tugen** *v* (161 b) = **tougen**

**tugent(d)** *stf* (i) good personal quality; *plur. tugende*: 1) decency (N 1007, 2); 2) good manners (N 987, 1); **minnelîche tugende** (N 293, 4) gracefulness, cordiality; 3) excellent character (N 1116, 2), kindness toward poor people, charity (N 1141, 4); **in ganzen tugenden sîn** to be thoroughly noble-minded, good-hearted (N 973, 3). Cf. 89

**tugenthafft** *adj.* virtuous

**tugentlîch** *adj.* graceful; **in tugentlîchen zûhten** gracefully

**tump(b)** *adj.* 1) inexperienced, new, young; 2) foolish, silly; **tumber wân** silly illusion

**tuon** *irreg. v* (28; 167) 1) to do; 2) to arrange (N 292, 4); 3) *w. dat.* to behave, to act with (a p.); **wol tuon** to give pleasure;

4) **tuon** is very often used as a substitute for a preceding verb. In English the preceding verb is to be repeated. N 137, 3; 283, 2; 283, 3; 826, 3  
**turn** *stm* (i) tower  
**turren** *v* (161 c) to dare *tuor, to rste*  
**tûsent** and **tûsint(d)** thousand (N 129, 2; 1540, 2)  
**tûsentvalt** *adj.* thousandfold, in a thousand ways  
**tûr** *stf* (i) door. 18 b  
**twerc** *stn* (a) dwarf  
**twerh** *adj.* awry  
**twingen** *stv* (III a) to press, to force

## U

**ûf** *prep.* 1) *w. acc.* on, upon, against; 2) *w. dat.* on, upon, in; **ûf jenem sal** in that hall; **ûf sînem hove** in his court; **ûf . . . obene** on top of  
**ûf** *adv.:* **ûf getân** open  
**ûfe** = **ûf**  
**ûfem** = **ûf dem**  
**ûfspringen** to jump up, to start to one's feet  
**umb** = **umbe**  
**umbe** *prep. w. acc.* 1) around, on; 2) about; 3) for, on account of; **umbe daz** for that reason, that is why  
**umbe** *adv.* around; **umbe hân** to wear  
**umbe-vâhen** to embrace  
**umbe-sliezen** to embrace  
**un-** Cf. 43 c  
**u'nbehe'nde** awkward  
**u'nbeka'nt** unknown  
**u'nberi'htet** *adj.* without arrangements

**u'nbetwu'ngen** undefeated  
**und, unde, unt** 1) and; Cf. 32 A, 18; N 839, 3; 2) however. H 81  
**unda'nc** *stm* (a) indignation; **haben unda'nc** confound them. S2 b  
**unde** see **und**  
**under** *prep. w. dat.* under, among, between  
**understân** to prevent, to intervene  
**undertân** *adj.* obedient, subject; **undertân wesen** to belong to  
**underwîlent** *adv.* in the meantime  
**underwinden** *stv* (III a) 1) *w. gen.* to get under one's control; 2) *sich u. w. gen.* to act as intermediary with a p.  
**u'neintre'chtic** *adj.* in discord  
**u'nersto'rben** still alive  
**u'nverda'get** *adj.* not concealed  
**u'nverdi'enet** *adv.* without reason, cause  
**u'nverho'uwen** *adj.* unwounded, unharmed  
**u'nverlâ'n** *adj.* not given up  
**u'nfu'oge** *stf* (ô) scandalous behavior  
**u'ngbæ're** *stf* (ô) lamenting  
**u'ngebu'nden** *adj.* unfettered, unchained  
**u'ngeva'ngen** *adj.* free  
**u'ngewêhet** (*p.p. of vêhen*) *adj.* without showing any grudge  
**u'ngefu'oc(g)** *adj.* scandalous  
**u'ngefü'ege** *adj.* 1) difficult to handle, enormous; 2) insulting  
**u'ngehi'ure** *adj.* ghostly, spectral  
**u'ngelü'cke** *stn* (ja) bad luck, misfortune. 73; 75 c  
**u'ngema'ch** *stn* (a) 1) discomfort,



- despair, agony (N 1611, 4; 1615, 2); 2) despondency (N 1277, 4)
- u'ngemu'ot** *adj.* irritated, excited, ill-humored
- u'ngemü'ete** *stn* (ja) 1) irritation, bad temper; 2) dejected mood; 3) sorrow
- u'ngenâ'de** *stf* (ô) unkindness
- u'ngenæ'dic(g)** *adj.* hostile
- unge'rne** *adv.* reluctantly
- u'ngesche'iden** *adj.* never separated
- u'ngesü'hte** *stn* (ja) bad illness
- u'ngetà'n** *adj.* not done; **ez ist immer un.** I am not going to do it
- u'ngete'ilet** *adj.* undivided
- u'ngetriu'we** *adj.* insincere, treacherous, perfidious
- u'ngetrœ'stet** *adj.* without consolation
- u'ngetru'nken** *adj.* without anything to drink
- u'ngewa'nt** *adj.* inevitable
- u'ngewe'rt** *adj.* refused, denied, declined
- u'ngewo'n** *adj.* unaccustomed
- u'ngewo'nhe'ite** *stf* (K 116, 2) unaccustomed novelty
- unku'nt(d)** *adj.* unknown, strange
- unkü'nde** *adj.* unrecognizable
- unla'nge** *adv.* 1) for a short time; 2) shortly
- unmâ'zen** *adv.* exceedingly, amazingly
- unmæ're** *adj.* unimportant
- u'nmæzli'ch** *adj.* extraordinary (K 128, 2)
- unmi'nne** *stf* (ô) the wrong kind of love
- u'nmü'ot** (with two accents) *stm* (a) ill-humor, cross mood (N 447, 2; 878, 4; K 76, 2)
- unmü'ezec** and **unmü'ezic(g)** *adj.* very busy
- unnô't** *stf* (i): **es ist unnô't** (H 69) it is not necessary
- unre'ht** *adj.* wrong
- unsa'nfte** *adv.*: **u. mir daz tuot it** does not make me feel well, I do not like this idea
- unschu'ide** *stf* (ô) blamelessness, innocence
- unschu'idic(g)** *adj.* innocent, not guilty
- unse'nfte** *adj.* 1) unfriendly; 2) oppressive
- unser** *pron.* our. Cf. 31 a and e; 84 b
- unstæ'te** *adj.* frivolous, fickle
- unstæ'te** *stf* (ô) fickleness
- unstæ'tekeit** *stf* (i) inconstancy, fickleness
- unt** see **und**
- intriu'we** *stf* (ô) treachery; **mit untriuwen** with false intentions
- untrœ'sten** *ww* to discourage
- untu'gende** *stf* (ô) fault, shortcoming
- unwe'ndig** *adj.* irrevocable
- unz** *conj.* 1) until; 2) as long as; 3) **unz an** and **unz in** *w. acc.* (un)to, into
- unze** = **unz**
- urkü'nde** *stn* (ja) sign, evidence, proof. K 5, 3
- urlo'up(b)** (N 68, 4; 259, 1; 1543, 4), **u'rlo'up** (N 534, 3), **u'rloup** (N 1215, 2) *stm* (a) 1) permission; **ze hove nâch urloube gën** to pay a complimentary visit at court; 2) leave, send-off, farewell; **ur-**



**loubes gern** to take leave, to make a farewell call; **mit guotem urloube** after a cordial farewell

**ûz prep. w. dat.** from, out of

**ûzen adv.** on the outside

**ûzer prep. w. dat.** of proper names

(K 59, 4; 1573, 1) = **ûz**

**ûzerkorn** and **ûz erkorn adj.** distinguished

**ûzerwelt** and **ûz erwelt adj.** distinguished

## Û

**übel adj.** evil, bad, wicked. 88 a

**übel stn (a)** evil, harm

**übel** and **übele adv.** badly, unfavorably, in a wicked way;

**ü. tuon** to commit a crime

**über prep. w. dat. or acc.** 1) over, above; 2) after; 3) on the other side of, beyond, across; **über sê** across the sea

**überal adv.** all over the place

**übere adv.** across, to the other side

**übermuot stn (a)** 1) bold design; extraordinary bravery, prowess, valor; 2) impertinence (K 1596, 3)

**übermüete stf (ô)** = **übermuot:** **mit übermüete** rashly, heedlessly

**übermüete adj.** 1) very brave, very bold; 2) impertinent; 3) reckless

**überwinden stv (III a)** 1) to persuade; 2) to get over (a loss), to reconcile o.s. (to a loss)

**üeben wv** to show off

**ünde stf (ô)** current (N 1606, 3)

**ünde wf** wave; *pl.* **ünden** the water (N 1134, 3)

**üppeclich adj.** 1) stupid, silly, idle; 2) extravagant

V see F

## W

**wâ adv.** where; **wâ von** why

**wâc(g) stn (a)** 1) moving water; 2) river

**wachen wv** to be awake

**wâfen** and **wâffen stn (a)** weapon;

**wâfen !** exclamation of distress: oh my! gracious!

**wâffen(en) wv** to arm; **gewâffent** armed

**wâfenhemde stn (ja)** mantling (a veil of cloth which hung from the helmet over the shoulders)

**wâffenroc stn (a)** tunic, military coat

**wagen stn (a)** wagon. 108

**wâgen wv** to stake, to risk

**wahsen stv (VI)** to grow. N 21, 1

**wal stf (ô)** election

**waller stn** pilgrim

**walt(d) stn (a)** 1) wood, forest; 2) fire-wood

**walten stv (VII) w. gen.** to be the master of, to be in possession of

**waltreise stf (ô)** shooting-party

**wan conj. and adv.** 1) only, except, but, but for, if not; 2) than;

**anders . . . wan** otherwise than; 3) because, for; 4) why not;

5) from where

**wân stn** 1) expectation; 2) illusion, unjustified hope; **sunder**

**wân** truthfully

**wand** and **wande conj.** for, because

wandel *stm* (a) flaw, fault  
 wange *wn* cheek  
 wann *adv.* when  
 wanne *conj.* when  
 wanne *adv.:* von wanne from where  
 wannen *adv.* from where  
 want *stf* partition, wall  
 wâpenen *ww* to arm  
 war *adv.* where(to); war umbe why, for what reason  
 war nemen *w. gen.* 1) to observe, to pay attention to, to look at, to inspect, to examine; 2) to look out for  
 wâr *adj.* true, real; wâr sagen to tell the truth; wâr haben to be right; für wâr truly, truthfully; von wâren schulden see schulde  
 wâre = wâr  
 wârheit *stf* (i) truth; eines dinges die rechten wârheit vinden to find the truth of a th. established  
 warnen *ww* 1) to warn; 2) to prepare; 3) sich w. gegen to make provisions for  
 warten *ww* (*pret.* warte) 1) *w. dat.* to wait for; 2) *w. gen.* to expect, to look out for  
 warumbe why, for what reason  
 waschen *stv* (VI) to wash  
 wât *stf* (i) clothing, clothes, garment  
 waz *pron.* 1) what. Cf. 91 a; 2) waz *w. gen.* how much, how many; 3) why? what for?  
 wazzer *stm* (a) 1) water; 2) river  
 wæge *adj.* friendly, kindly disposed, favorably inclined  
 wæjen *ww* (*pret.* wæte) to blow

(along), to drift; abe w. to blow off  
 wænen *ww* (*pret.* wânde) 1) to believe, to think; ich wæn or simply wæn (inserted) I believe, I think, I imagine. Cf. 102; 2) to hope  
 wærlîche and wærlîchen *adv.* truly, indeed, really  
 wætlich *adj.* pretty, good looking, attractive, handsome, stately; wætlicher *comparative*  
 wê exclamation of pain: oh my! gracious! mir was wê I felt a pain; mir ist wê I suffer; mir ist wê nâch I long for, I burn to see; mir wirdet wê I feel lonely, homesick; wê tuon to cause pain, to hurt; wê dir! woe be to you! wê im! woe betide him!  
 wec(g) *stm* (a) way; under wegen lâzen to abstain from  
 wecken *ww* to awaken, to rouse (from sleep)  
 wegen *ww* 1) to move; 2) einem w. für to help a p. against  
 weine *stf* (ô) weeping, shedding of tears  
 weinen *ww* 1) to weep, to cry; 2) to bewail, to mourn for, to weep over the loss of; 3) to wail  
 weise *wm* orphan  
 wel *adj.* round  
 welch and welh *pron.* which. 90  
 wellen *v* (27; 92) to want to. Cf. 63; 99 c  
 weln *ww* to choose  
 welt = werlt  
 wenden *ww* (*pret.* wante and wande, *p.p.* gewant) 1) to turn, to direct, to address; w. an to

set on; 2) to hinder, to prevent, to avert; 3) to tuck up (sleeves); 4) to change  
**wê nec** and **wê nic(g)** little, not much. 43 b  
**wenken** *ww*: **wenken lân** to direct  
**wenne** *adv.* when  
**wer** *pron.* who. 91 a  
**wer** *stf* (ô) means of defense. Cf. 72  
**werben** *stv* (III b) 1) to strive hard, to try to get, to act, to be active, to engage in business, to transact business, to achieve, to accomplish; **waz ir werbet ze Wormez** what business brought you to Worms, on what business you are in Worms; 2) to court, to woo, to sue  
**werde** *adv.* of wert  
**werdecliche** *adv.* justly, deservedly  
**werdekeit** *stf* (i) 1) nobleness, nobility; 2) prestige  
**werden** *stv* (III b) 1) to appear, to come; 2) to be given, to fall to a p.'s share or lot; 3) to become; 4) **werden in w. dat.** to get into; 5) Cf. 160; Cf. also 68  
**werfen** *stv* (III b) 1) to throw; 2) to sow  
**werlt** (**werlde** and **werlte**) *stf* (i) 1) world; 2) people  
**wern** *ww* 1) to last; 2) *w. acc. of p. and gen. of th.* to grant, to reward, to pay for; **ûbele gewert werden mit** to fare ill with, to come off badly; 3) to hinder, to resist  
**wert(d)** *adj.* worth, worthy  
**wert** (-des) *stm* (a) value; **nâch vollem werde** deservedly, justly

**wert** (-des) *stm* (a) (low-lying) meadow-land near some water  
**wes** why  
**wesche** *wf* washerwoman, laundress  
**wesen** *irreg. v* (25; 105) 1) to be; 2) Cf. 160  
**weter** *stm* (a) *plur.* weather  
**wîchen** *stv* (I a) to withdraw;  
**wîchen von den wegen den minnedlichen vrouwen** to clear the ways for the charming ladies  
**wider** *adv.* 1) back; **wider unde dan** back and forth, to and fro, hither and thither; 2) again  
**wider** *prep. w. acc.* 1) to, toward, against; 2) compared with (to), in comparison with  
**wider** *stm* (a) ram  
**widere** *adv.* back  
**widervarn** *stv* (VI) to happen (to a p.)  
**widervart** *stf* (i) return home  
**widerrâten** *w. acc. of th.* to dissuade a p. from a th., to warn against  
**widerreden** *w. acc.* 1) to speak against, to warn against; 2) to refuse  
**widersagen** *w. dat.* 1) to talk a p. out of (an idea) (N 1236, 1); 2) to sever peaceful relations with a p., to declare a feud, to hurl defiance at a p. (N 116, 4; 877, 4; 1154, 4); 3) to declare war (N 882, 4)  
**widersprechen** to oppose, to speak against a th.  
**widerstân** to be opposed to  
**widerwart** *stf* (i) return  
**widerwegen** *stv* (V) to counter-balance

wie *how*

wigant(d) *stm* (a) warrior, hero

wihen *ww* to consecrate, to bless

wilde *adj.* wild, untamed, savage

wile *stf* (ô) time, while; eine wile for some time, for a while; noch deheine wile any longer; under wilen sometimes; die wile 1) in the meanwhile, meantime; 2) while, as long as

wilen *adv.* formerly

wilent = wilen

wille *wm* 1) will, resolution, intention, plan; mit willen eagerly; sin wille what he wanted; durch . . . wilien for the purpose of; durch den willen min for my sake; durch dinen willen for your sake; durch der schœnen willen for the sake of the beautiful one; nâch sinem willen as much as he likes; 2) liking for (W 77; 78)

willeclich *adj.* 1) eager; 2) of his own will

willecliche and willeclichen *adv.* eagerly

willekomen welcome. Cf. N 428, 3

willic(g) eager, willing (to do a th.)

willicliche *adv.* willingly

wilt(d) *stn* (a) wild animals

wîn *stm* (a) wine

winden *stv* (III a) to wrap

winder = winter

wine *stf* (ô) spouse, mate

winken *ww* to beckon

wint(d) *stm* (a) wind

winter *stm* (a) winter

wîp(b) *stn* (a) 1) woman in general (in contrast to man); 2) wife

wir *pron.* we. 31 a

wirde *stf* (ô) honor conferred on a p.

wirden *ww* to honor

wirren *ww w. dat.* to cause worry

wirt *stm* (a) sovereign, ruler of the country

wis *adj.* wise

wischen *ww* to wipe

wise *adj.* = wis

wise *stf* (ô) 1) tune, melody; 2) manner

wisen *ww* to direct (to some place)

wisent(d) *stm* (a) bison, buffalo

wisheit *stf* (i) wisdom

wislich *adv.* in a wise way

wit and wite *adj.* vast

wite and witen *adv.* far, far away

witewe *wf* widow

witwe = witewe

witze *stf* (ô) intelligence

wiz *adj.* 1) white; vil wiz of a dazzling white; 2) clean

wizen *ww w. dat.* to reproach, to blame

wizzen *v* (33 a; 161 a) to know. Cf. 24, 6

woche *stf* (ô) week

wol *adv.* (of *guot*) 1) well, in a proper way, beautifully, really, certainly, indeed; wol tuon to do something useful; 2) easily; 3) much; vil gar wol absolutely; 4) as much as; wol hundred as many as a hundred; wol drifer hende dicke as thick as three handbreadths; 5) nevertheless; 6) = G. doch (French si!) after a negative statement or question: yes, too (N 86, 3; 828, 1). Cf. nein; 7) *emphatic interjection*: wol ûf! well then! come on! (W 247); get up!

(W 292); 8) *w. dat. or acc.:* *interjection of praise for a p. or a th.* good for, blessed be; **wol mich!** good for me! happy I (that)! **wol dir!** oh, well for you! good for you!  
**wolgeborn** *adj.* of gentle birth  
**wolgemuot** and **wol gemuot** *adj.* amiable  
**wolgetân** and **wol getân** *adj.*  
 1) beautiful, good looking;  
 2) excellent  
**wolken** *stn* (a) cloud; *plur.:* sky  
**wonen** *ww* 1) to live (somewhere);  
 2) **bî wonen** to render assistance to, to wait on a p. (*gen.:* with a th.)  
**wort** *stn* (a) 1) word; 16 b;  
 2) *plur.:* reputation  
**wortræze** *adj.* sharp-tongued  
**wunde** *wf* wound  
**wunder** *stn* (a) 1) miracle; 2) marvelous, amazing thing, wonderful feat; **den kunic hete wunder** the king was astonished; 3) curiosity; **wunder mich des hât I** wonder; **mich nimt wunder I** wonder  
**wunderalt** *adj.* extremely old  
**wunderküene** *adj.* amazingly bold  
**wunderlich** *adj.* magic  
**wundern** *ww impers. w. acc. of p. and gen. of th.* to be amazed at, to be curious, to wonder; **mich wundert dirre mære I** would like to know  
**wunne** *stf* (ô) bliss, happiness, great pleasure  
**wunneclîch** *adj.* delightful  
**wunneclîch** *adv.* delightfully. 118  
**wunsch** *stm* (i) 1) wish, desire;  
 2) perfection, ideal; **ze wunsche**

to perfection, wonderfully;  
 3) thing wished for, the most precious thing one could wish (N 1137, 1)  
**wunt(d)** *adj.* wounded, injured  
**wuofen** *stv* (VII) to wail  
**wurf** *stm* (i) throw, cast  
**wurze** *wf* root  
**wüeste** *stf* (ô) wilderness  
**wûlpinne** *stf* she-wolf  
**wünne** *stf* (ô) = **wunne**  
**wünneclîch** *adj.* delightful  
**wünneclîche** *adv.* delightfully  
**wünschen** *ww* (*pret.* **wunschte**) to wish  
**würken** *ww* (*pret.* **worhte**, *p.p.* **geworht**) 1) to work, to do;  
 2) to weave

## Z

**zage** *wm* coward  
**zagelîch** *adj.:* **zagelîche nôt** cowardice  
**zam** *adj.* docile, gentle  
**ze** 1) *prep. w. dat.* to, at; as. Cf. 124; 152; **ze himel** in heaven; **ze miete** as reward; **ze (eime) trûte** as a spouse; **zeinem vriunde** as a friend; 2) *particle:* too; **ze vil** too much; **ze gâch** too hasty; **ze rîche** too rich  
**ze-bresten** to go to pieces, to smash  
**zaha'nt** *adv.* immediately  
**zehen** and **zehene** ten. 60 d  
**zeichen** *stn* (a) 1) badge; 2) premonitory sign  
**zeigen** *ww* to show  
**zein** *stm* (a) cast metal stick. Cf. **stahelzein**  
**zellen** *ww* (*p.p.* **gezalt**) to award

**zemen** *ww* (*pret.* zamete) to tame  
**zemen** *stv* (IV) to be becoming, to appear decent, to be suited; **dir enzimt niht** you are not qualified (to . . .)

**zepter** *stn* (a) sceptre

**zer-brechen** to break into pieces

**zer-bresten** to be destroyed, to be wrecked (vessels)

**zer-gân** to disappear, to vanish;  
*p.p.* zerga'ngen gone by, past

**zeri'nnen** *stv* (III a) to vanish

**zer-slahen** to destroy

**zer-tragen** to tear into pieces

**zer-werfen** to make enemies of each other, to become hostile to each other

**zesa'mene** *adv.* together

**zestu'nt** *adv.* promptly

**ziehen** *stv* (II b) (Cf. 95 b; 149)

1) to pull; **sich hôhe ziehen** to have ambitious plans; 2) to take away; **ziehen von** to take off; 3) **ûf ziehen** to bend the bow and to put on (an arrow); 4) to bring up, to raise, to educate; **wol gezogen** well-bred

**ziere** *adj.* handsome

**zieren** *ww* 1) to adorn, to beautify;

2) to dress (in fine clothes), to dress beautifully

**zierlich** *adj.* handsome

**zihen** *stv* (I b; Cf. 121 b) *w. gen.* to accuse of

**zimberliute** *stn pl.* carpenters

**zinne** *stf* (ô) battlement

**zins** *stn* (a) tribute, rent

**zinsen** *ww* to lay down in the shape of tribute

**zît** *stf* (i) time, season; **manige**

**zîte** many times, often; **zallen**

**zîten** every time, all the time;

**alle zîte** every time, always;

**bi mînen zîten** in my lifetime, as long as I lived; **an der zît** in time

**zol** *stn* tribute

**zorn** *stn* (a) rage, fury, anger

**zorneclîche** *adv.* furiously, angrily

**zornic(g)** *adj.* angry, furious

**zouber** *stn* (a) charm, spell

**zoum** *stn* (i) bridle, rein

**zucken** *ww* (*pret.* zuchte or zuhte)

1) to pull, to tug; 2) to jerk up

**zuht** *stf* (i) good breeding; 18 b;

*plur.* zûhte good manners; **mit**

**zûhten** properly, respectfully, respectably

**zunge** *wf* tongue. 19

**zuo** *prep. w. dat.* 1) to, at; **zuo ze**

*w. dat.* toward, with regard to;

2) in addition to. Cf. 152 a

**zûhtecliche** *adv.* = **mit zûhten**, see **zuht**

**zûhtelôs** *adj.* improper, shocking

**zûrnen** *ww* (*pret.* zurnde) 1) to be

angry, furious; 2) to get angry

**zwâre** indeed. 152 a

**zweien** *ww refl.* to be estranged, to fall out with one another

**zweinzec** and **zweinzic** twenty. 60 d

**zwelf, zwelve** twelve. 60 d

**zwelfte** twelfth

**zwêne, zwô, zwei** two. 60 b

**zwî** *stn* (a) twig

**zwiu** why, for what purpose

**zwîvel** *stn* (a) doubt





# INDEX

---

Plain figures refer to sections of the grammar but figures preceded by capital letters to the footnotes to the selected readings and to the appendices. The following abbreviations are used: A = Anonymous Songs, Ap = Appendices, D = Dietmar von Eist, H = Hartmann von Aue, K = Kudrun, N = Nibelungenlied, R = Reinmar der Alte, V = Heinrich von Veldeke, W = Walther von der Vogelweide.

- a*: Umlaut caused by it 55 b  
Abgesang Ap 31  
Abstract nouns: ending in *-e* 59;  
ending in *-unc* 140 c  
Accent, secondary 6 b; 6 c; 107;  
in verse 43 a; 75 a; 138  
Accentuation 6; 43 c  
Adjectives 37; ending in *-el*, *-er*,  
*-em*, *-en* 37 c. Monosyllabic  
adj. ending in *-l*, *-r* 37 c.  
Comparison 74. Irreg. compari-  
son 88 a. Neuter adj. 112 e;  
134. Use of strong and weak  
forms 38; 39. Use of unin-  
flected or inflected forms 40;  
41. Adj. used attributively  
41. Adj. used in predicative  
position 40. Adj. used as sub-  
stantives 38  
Adverb 61 c. Formation 87; 118.  
Comparison 87 e. Irreg. com-  
parison 88 b. Adv. with *ze*  
152 b. Adv. in place of neuter  
adjective 112 e  
Alemannic forms 2 d; 3 g; 9;  
32 B; 59; 75 c; 97 a; 97 b;  
98 b, 1; 110; 112 b; 125; 134 b;  
152 d  
Alliteration 151 c  
Anacrusis Ap 29  
Analogy 55 d; 108; 137 d; 153 b  
Article, definite 12 b; 39; 159;  
N 448, 2. Art. + possessive adj.  
N 63, 4  
Article, indefinite N 445, 2; W 270  
Article, lack of 85 b; 112 c; 145;  
152 c; 156 b  
Aspects 66; 115  
Assimilation 162  
Assonance Ap 14-15  
Attributive position 41  
Bavarian forms 2 d; 121 c; 155;  
157  
Binnenreim Ap 20  
Blunt expressions avoided 43 b  
Botenlied R No. 5  
Capital letters 7  
Cases 11; 37  
Cesura 43 a; 138  
Collective nouns N 548, 3

- Command, indirect 82 b; 82 d; 93  
 Command, insistent or impatient  
 A 101  
 Comparative W 383  
 Comparison 74. Irregular 88  
 Compensatory lengthening 136  
 Completion of action 148  
 Conjugation: *mi*-conj. 46; *ō*-  
 conj. 46. See also *Verbs* and  
*Tenses*  
 Consonants 3. Doubled 116 b.  
 Interchange of voiced and voice-  
 less cons. 4. Double consonants  
 simplified 5; 116 d. OHG con-  
 sonant shift 116 b  
 Contrary to fact 82 a  
 Couples 134 b
- d*: Loss of intervocalic *d* 158  
 Dative 22 b  
 Declension 13. Strong and weak  
 14. Strong 140 b; 140 c; A 100.  
 Weak 19; 140 a. See also *Stems*  
 Declension of adjectives 37  
 Dietmar von Eist Ap 3; 30; 32  
 Differences between MHG and  
 modern German 137  
 Diminutives 107; 151 d  
 Diphthongization 107; 137 b  
 Diphthongs 2 d-f; 137 a; 137 c  
 Dissimilation N 87, 1  
 Dissyllabic words 6 b  
 Double expressions 24, 6  
 Double relationship 146; N 50, 3;  
 N 110, 3-4; W 54  
 Durative aspect 66; 115
- e*: Loss of *e* 16 c; 37 c; 54; 61 b;  
 72; 101; 109; 119; 130 c;  
 157; Ap 25  
*e* > *ō* 137 f  
 Emphasis 24, 6; 43 a; 66; 75 a;  
 85 a; 122 B b; N 109, 2
- Endearing forms 151 d  
*er*- 115
- Family names 151 a; 151 c  
 Foreign words 75 c  
 Formal subject 111  
 Future tense 63
- g*: Loss of intervocalic *g* 127; 155  
*ge*- 66; 115  
 Gender 11; 14; 37; 130 b; N  
 288, 2; Neuter 134  
 Genitive 85 b. Attributive 156 b;  
 N 448, 2. Partitive 36 a. After  
*wan* N 825, 2; N 876, 2  
 Geographical names 141; 152 d  
 German 13  
 Germanic 13. See *Primitive Ger-*  
*manic*  
 Gerund 124  
 Gestures 43 b  
 Grammatical attraction A 12  
 Grammatical Change 121 b; 149
- h* between vowels lost 125  
 Hartmann von Aue Ap 6; 35  
 Heinrich von Veldeke Ap 4; 33
- i*: Changes caused by it 116 d;  
 117  
 Imperative: 2nd sing. A 101;  
 W 197  
 Imperfective. See *Durative*  
 Impersonal passive constructions  
 K 67, 1; D 6  
 Impersonal sentences. See *Sen-*  
*tences*
- Indeclinables 36 a  
 Indirect discourse 82 e  
 Individual names 151 a-b  
 Indo-European. See *Primitive*  
*Indo-European*

- Infinitive 124  
 Influence of Latin syntax 147  
 Ingressive aspect 66; 122 B b  
 Intensification of meaning. See  
     *Emphasis*  
 Irony 43 b
- j*: Changes caused by it 116; 117  
 Juxtaposition 58
- Kanzleisprache 144  
 Kettenreim Ap 22  
 Körner R 16; W 64  
 Kreuzlied H Nos. 2 and 4; W  
     Nos. 18 and 19  
 Kudrunstrophe Ap 27  
 Kürenberg Ap 2; 28
- Literary language 75 c
- Material, Designation of N 448, 2;  
     N 858, 1  
 Meaning 10. Changed 97 c.  
     Hidden 43 b  
 Metrical patterns Ap 29-37  
 Middle Franconian: Selected  
     Readings XI.  
 Middle High German developed  
     from Old High German 13  
 Monophthongization 95 b; 121 a;  
     137 c  
 Monosyllabic words 16 c; 37 c  
 Moods 48 d
- n* lost 136  
 Names: Formation 151 b; 151 c.  
     Names of persons 140; 151; of  
     countries 141  
 Nasals 137 e  
 Negation 29; 66  
 Negative particle 57; 83; 128;  
     148
- Neidhart von Reuenthal Ap 8; 37  
 Nibelungenstrophe 138  
 Nouns 11; 14. Compound 6 a-b  
 Numbers 11; 48  
 Numerals 60
- Object omitted 61 a; N 59, 4.  
     In form of a subordinate clause  
     N 286, 3  
 Old High German 13; 46; 55 c;  
     100; 116 b; 116 c
- Palindrome 9; A No. 13  
 Parallelism 24, 6  
 Participles 48 f  
 Passive voice 160; K 67, 1; D 6  
 Periphrastic perfect 64  
 Perfective aspect 66; 115  
 Periods in the development of the  
     German language 13  
 Pluperfect 64; N 98, 3  
 Plural forms with intensified  
     meaning N 101, 4. Plural forms  
     used in singular sense 30; 153  
 Poetry 43 a-b; 61 b. Language  
     of poetry 112 d  
 Possessive adjectives 31 e; 84  
 Predicative expressions 152 c  
 Predicative nouns in the accusa-  
     tive N 342, 3  
 Predicative position 24, 8; 40  
 Prefixes 115  
 Prepositions 20; *ze* 152  
 Preterit. See *Tenses*  
 Preterit-Presents 27 c; 33; 123 b;  
     161  
 Primitive Germanic 13; 15; 16;  
     46; 55; 116 a; 136; 149  
 Primitive Indo-European 13; 46;  
     55  
 Proclitics 29  
 Pronouns: Demonstrative 12 a;

- 143; 144. Interrogative 91 a. Personal 31. Relative 12 c; 91 b. Reflexive 31 c; (of *man*) N 925, 2. Neuter forms of pronouns 134
- Pronunciation 1
- Reduplication 78
- Reinmar der Alte Ap 5; 34
- Rhetorical cesura 43 a
- Rhotacism 149
- Rhyme 138, N 982, 2; Ap 10-15; 29. Adjacent rhyme Ap 21. Alternating rh. Ap 17. Embracing rhyme Ap 19. Grammatical rhyme R No. 7. Intensified rhyme Ap 23. Interlocking rhyme Ap 22. Internal rhyme Ap 20. "Rührender Reim" (Perfect rhyme) R 127; R 145; V 7
- Rhyme combinations Ap 16-22
- Rhyme-couplet Ap 16
- Rhythm 43 a; 75 b; 130 c; Ap 25-37
- Root 13
- Root-vowel of strong verbs 55
- Rounding 97 b; 137 f
- Rückumlaut 100; 102
- Schlagreim Ap 21
- Schweifreim Ap 18
- Sentences: of affirmation 156 a. Conditional 58; 82 a. Impersonal 111; 130 a. Relative 154. Without a conjunction 135; N 99, 1; N 103, 4. "Negativexzipierend" 57; 148. Object of verb in form of a subordinate clause N 286, 3
- Sequence of tenses 82 e
- Sex 130 b; 134
- Spelling 1; 7; 9; 45; 112 a; 137 a; 137 c. Normalized 1; 9; 45
- Stanza Ap 29; Ap 31
- Stem 13
- Stems 14; **a-stems** 16; Masculine 16 a; 16 c. Neuter 16 b-c; 164. Dat. sing. 157. Nom. acc. plur. 109. Neuter nouns with *-e* in the nom. acc. plur. A 100. Umlaut in the plural 108. With *-en* in the gen. plur. 110. **ja-stems**: Masculine 17 B. Neuter 73. **ô-stems** 15; 59; 72; 126; 140 c. With *-e* in the gen. plur. 30. **i-stems** 18. Masculine 18 a; (dat. sing.) 157; (nom. acc. plur.) 109. Feminine 18 b; 89. **-er-stems** (neuter) 164. **u-stems** 153 a. **i-stems** 59. **r-stems** 142. **ja-** and **i-stems** of adjectives 37 b
- Stollen Ap 31
- Stricker Ap 9
- Subject 111
- Subjunctive 57; 82; 93; 135; 147; N 286, 3; K 1642, 4 R; 69-70.
- Suffix 13
- Suffixes 6 b. *-el*, *-er*, *-em*, *-en* 16 c. *-lin* 107. In proper names *-gunt*, *-hilt*, *-lint*, *-rân*, *-trât*, *-burc*, *-heit*, *-rât* 140 c. In abstract nouns *-unc* 140 c
- Syllables: Closed 137 c; 137 d. Open 137 d
- Syncopy of short vowels 24. See also *e*
- Tagelied D No. 3. W 292
- Tenses 48. Present t. 49. Weak verbs 50. Strong verbs 51; 53. (*II a*) 166. Future t. 63. Pret-

- erit t.: *Weak verbs* 99; 101-103. *Strong verbs*: *I a* 94. *I b* 121. *II a* 95 a. *II b* 95 b. *III a* 104. *III b* 96. *IV* 65. *V* 65. *VI* 77; *VII* 78
- Text analysis 147; 148
- u > o*. In Primitive Germanic 104 b. MHG *u > o* 137 e
- ü > ö* 137 e
- Umlaut 18; 55 c, 2; 75 c; 77 e; 87 b; 96; 100; 104 b; 108; 116 a; 116 c-d; 142 a; 153; 164 a. Caused by *iu* 42; N 101, 4. Caused by *a* 55 b
- Verbal aspects 66; 115
- Verbs: Compound 6 a. Athematic and thematic 46. Strong and weak 47; 49. Classification of strong verbs 52. **Strong verbs**: *I* 55 a. *II* 55 b. *III a* 137 e. *III* 55 c. *IV* 55 c. *V* 55 c; 117. *VI* 117. *VII* 114 a; 136. **Weak verbs** 136. In OHG 100
- Verner's Law 149
- Versification 138. Ap 10-37
- Vowels 1; 2. Lengthened 137 d. Shortened 137 c
- w* lost 125
- Waise R 16. R No. 4
- Walther von der Vogelweide Ap 7; 15; 36
- we* lost 126
- Weakening of unaccented vowels 101
- Wechsel R No. 7
- Wish 82 b-d
- Witwenklage R No. 4; H No. 5
- Word order 57; 85 b; 156. With separable prefixes N 850, 2
- Zwischenreim Ap 18











